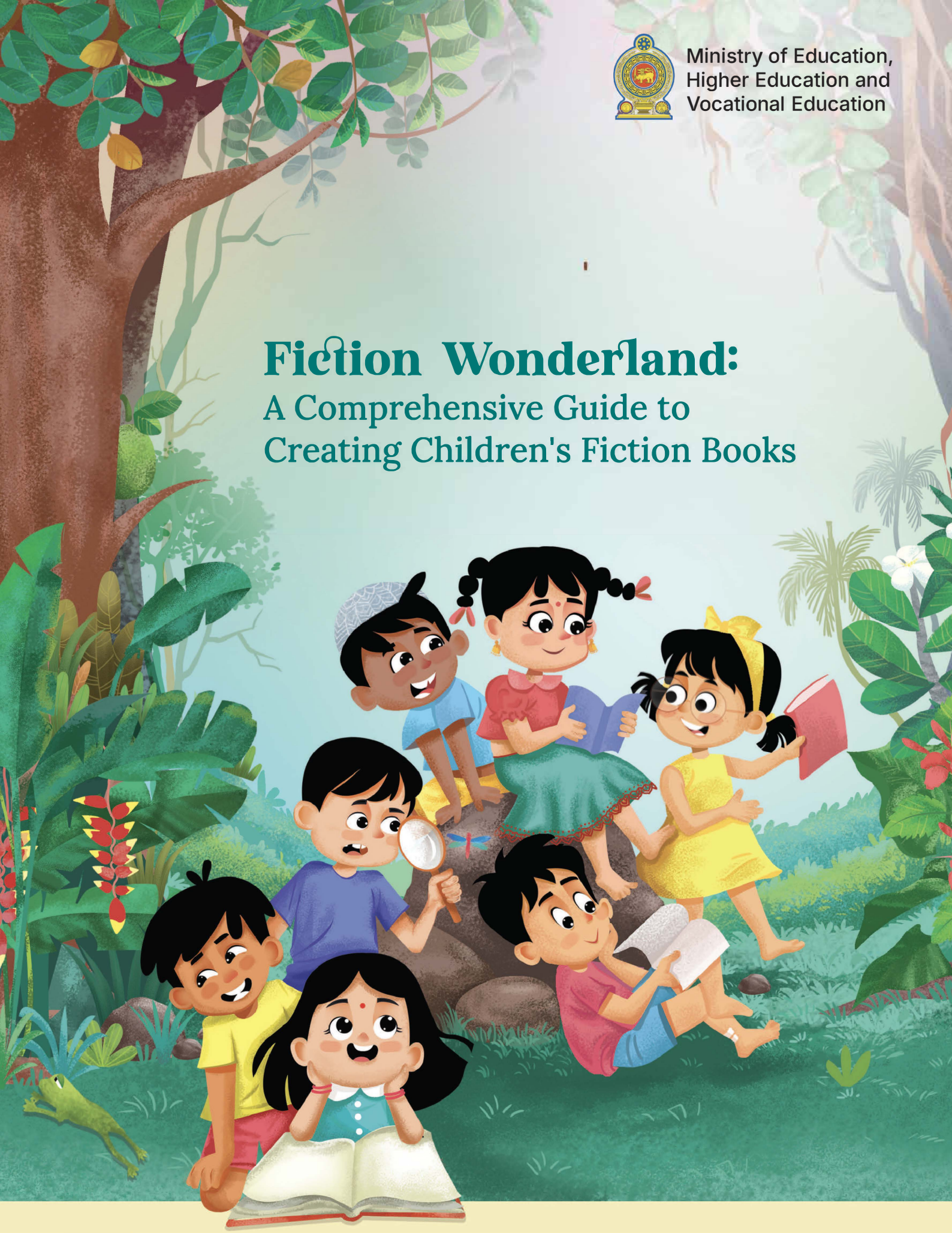
Ministry of Education,
Higher Education and
Vocational Education

Fiction Wonderland:

A Comprehensive Guide to Creating Children's Fiction Books



NATIONAL CONSORTIUM FOR CHILDREN'S BOOK

Room to Read

UNIVERSITY OF MORATUWA

ශ්‍රී ලංකා පොත් ප්‍රකාශකයන්ගේ සංගමය
ஸ்ரீ லங்கா புத்தக வெளியீட்டாளர்கள் சங்கம்
Sri Lanka Book Publishers' Association

This page is left blank intentionally

Fiction Wonderland:

A Comprehensive Guide to Creating Children's Fiction Books

This page is left blank intentionally

Fiction Wonderland:

A Comprehensive Guide to Creating Children's Fiction Books

National Consortium for Children's Books (NCCB),
Ministry of Education, Higher Education and
Vocational Education of Sri Lanka

Author — Research, Compilation and Editing

Sumanthri Samarawickrama Ph.D.

Fiction Wonderland: A Comprehensive Guide to Creating Children's Fiction Books
© 2025 National Consortium for Children's Books (NCCB)

All rights reserved. No part of this publication may be reproduced, stored in a retrieval system, or transmitted in any form or by any means — electronic, mechanical, photocopying, recording, or otherwise — without prior written permission from the publisher.

Cataloguing-in-Publication (CIP) Data Approved by the National Library and Documentation Services Board

Fiction Wonderland: A Comprehensive Guide to Creating Children's Fiction Books /
ed. Sumanthri Samarawickrama. — Room to Read, 2025.
360 p. : 29 cm.

ISBN 978-624-5651-67-2
eISBN 978-624-5651-68-9

i. 070.52095493 DDC 23 ii. Title
iii. editor

1. Children's Literature-Publishing-Sri Lanka
2. Publishers and Publishing-Handbooks, Manuals, etc.

ISBN 978-624-5651-67-2
eISBN 978-624-5651-68-9

First published in Sri Lanka in 2025
by the National Consortium for Children's Books (NCCB), Ministry of Education, Higher Education and Vocational Education, Sri Lanka.
This edition is the original English version. Sinhala and Tamil translations will be published subsequently.

Author — Research, Compilation and Editing:
Dr. Sumanthri Samarawickrama

Illustrations:
Ms. Udari Gunawardena (Lead Illustrator)
with contributions from supporting illustrators (see Acknowledgments)

Note on Availability: This guide is made available online free of charge to support the development of Sri Lanka's children's book ecosystem. Printed copies are distributed at cost, with the aim of ensuring that every children's book is created in line with the four guiding principles — *Quality over Quantity*, *The Child over Demand*, *Publishing Process for Consistency and Defined Roles for Accountability* — for the benefit of young readers.

Technical and Project Funding Supported by: Room to Read – Sri Lanka
Printing and Distribution Supported by: Sri Lanka Book Publishers' Association

Printed by: Imashi Publications, 96/A, Wanatha Road, Nugegoda, Sri Lanka.

NATIONAL CONSORTIUM FOR
CHILDREN'S BOOK

Foreword I

On behalf of the Educational Publications Advisory Board and the National Consortium for Children's Books of the Ministry of Education, Higher Education and Vocational Education of Sri Lanka, I am pleased to write this foreword to mark the launch of *Fiction Wonderland: A Comprehensive Guide to Creating Children's Fiction* Books, a timely and essential resource for advancing children's literature in our country.

For many years, the Ministry has worked with both government and non-government institutions to encourage the production of high-quality reading materials for children and to strengthen literacy. Among these contributions are the efforts of the Library Development Branch, the School Library Development Branch, the Department of Educational Publications, and the National Institute of Education, particularly in increasing the quality and availability of books purchased for school libraries. These efforts have directly raised the standards of children's literature at the national level, and the results are now increasingly evident in the works available to young readers.

The Ministry's milestones in this area include the National Book Promotion Policy (2019) launched by the National Book Development Council; the publication of a consultation manual for evaluating children's reading materials by the School Library Development Branch; the release of a consultation manual for reading rooms by the Primary Education Branch in 2019; and, most recently, the drafting of the National Policy on Children's Books (since 2023) by the NCCB. The draft policy was officially launched for public review last year at the Colombo International Book Fair, with the participation of the President of Sri Lanka, His Excellency Mr. Anura Kumara Dissanayake. The NCCB now continues to advance this work, ensuring that the National Policy on Children's Books moves from framework to practice through collaboration and coordinated action.

With the patronage of the Ministry of Education, Higher Education and Vocational Education, together with the National Institute of Education, the

Department of Integrated Design at the University of Moratuwa, the Sri Lanka Book Publishers' Association, and Room to Read Sri Lanka, this guide has been published as a comprehensive handbook grounded in the four guiding values of the National Policy: Quality over Quantity, the Child Reader at the Center, Publishing Process for Consistency, and Defined Roles for Accountability.

The authorship of this work has been undertaken by Dr. Sumanthri Samarawickrama, Senior Lecturer in the Department of Integrated Design, University of Moratuwa. Through her rigorous research, design-led approach, and unwavering commitment, she has transformed this initiative into a comprehensive academic guide on children's fiction writing. This guide goes beyond theory to provide practical application and will serve as a lasting contribution to the development of children's literature in Sri Lanka.
It is my hope that Fiction Wonderland will inspire authors, illustrators, publishers, and educators to work together in shaping books that nurture literacy, creativity, and imagination in generations to come.

Mr. Palitha Aravinda Weerakkody
Secretary,
Educational Publications Advisory Board and
National Consortium for Children's Books,
Ministry of Education, Higher Education and Vocational Education, Sri Lanka.

Foreword II

Fiction Wonderland: A Comprehensive Guide to Creating Children's Fiction Books represents a pivotal milestone in Sri Lanka's ongoing commitment to advancing children's literature and enriching the educational experiences of young readers. This guide builds on the foundation established in 2024 with the launch of the draft National Policy for Children's Books for public review. While that policy articulated a national vision and strategic direction, this guide provides a practical framework to ensure that children's fiction is conceived, developed and published with clarity, accountability and consistency.

This achievement exemplifies the transformative power of collaborative partnership. The Ministry of Education, Higher Education and Vocational Education of Sri Lanka, the National Institute of Education, the Department of Integrated Design at the University of Moratuwa, the Sri Lanka Book Publishers' Association, the National Library and Documentation Services Board, and the National Consortium for Children's Books (NCCB) have joined hands with Room to Read Sri Lanka to co-create this initiative. Their shared expertise and commitment demonstrate the extraordinary outcomes possible when leading institutions align their resources toward the common goals of literacy advancement and holistic child development.

This guide focuses on four foundational principles that shape every aspect of children's book creation and publishing:

Raising Standards of Quality: prioritizing well-crafted, developmentally meaningful books over mere quantity.
Placing the Child Reader First: ensuring that stories are engaging, inclusive, and designed for the growth and imagination of young audiences.
Building Consistent Publishing Processes: establishing clear, step-by-step workflows that support accountability and coherence across the sector.
Clarifying Roles and Responsibilities: defining contributions of authors, illustrators, publishers, educators, and reviewers to foster collaboration and shared accountability.

These principles are closely aligned with Room to Read's mission of ensuring every child has the opportunity to develop literacy skills and discover a lifelong love of reading. For over two decades, Room to Read Sri Lanka has demonstrated unwavering commitment to this mission through local publishing initiatives, book access programs, library development, and sustained teacher capacity building. This guide represents both the culmination of those efforts and a forward-looking step: strengthening a children's publishing ecosystem that is coherent, inclusive, and resilient, capable of nurturing lifelong readers and learners.

We extend our sincere gratitude to the authors, illustrators, publishers, educators, and reviewers who participated in the research process led by the author to build the National Policy for Children's Books. Their contributions provided essential insights that informed the policy and, in turn, laid the foundation for this guide.

As Sri Lanka proudly introduces its first comprehensive guide for children's fiction books, we do so with confidence that children's literature will continue to inspire curiosity, nurture empathy, and unlock the boundless potential within every child. This publication is not simply a technical reference — it is a commitment to future generations that books will remain their trusted companions on the lifelong journey of learning, discovery, and personal growth.

Mr. K. Pathmananthan,
Country Director (Acting)
Room to Read Sri Lanka.

DEPARTMENT OF
INTEGRATED DESIGN
UNIVERSITY OF MORATUWA

Foreword III

It is both an honor and a responsibility to write this foreword on behalf of the Department of Integrated Design, University of Moratuwa, for Fiction Wonderland: A Comprehensive Guide to Creating Children's Fiction Books. As an academic institution, our mandate is not only to educate but also to conduct research that contributes meaningfully to the development of our nation. This publication exemplifies that mission.

At the heart of this work is the scholarship and leadership of my colleague, Dr. Sumanthri Samarawickrama, whose approach to design-led inquiry has been central to shaping this guide. By grounding the research in design thinking, she has gone beyond surface-level observations to uncover the root causes of the challenges in Sri Lanka's children's publishing sector. Importantly, her work has revealed that solutions must be locally relevant, addressing the needs of our country rather than simply borrowing models from elsewhere.

Policy documents may come and go, often remaining at the level of theory. What makes this guide distinctive is that it moves beyond theory into practical application. It reflects the ethos of the Department of Integrated Design: integrating diverse disciplines, applying design methodologies, and demonstrating how design thinking can bridge the gap between research and implementation. This guide is not only aligned with the National Policy for Children's Books but also demonstrates how research can be translated into actionable frameworks, tools, and processes that directly serve society.

As a department, we take pride in supporting this initiative, which embodies our vision of design education as a driver of social innovation. Fiction Wonderland is therefore not only a resource for authors, illustrators, publishers, and educators but also a model of how design research can contribute to national development.

On behalf of the Department of Integrated Design, I extend my appreciation to the National Consortium for Children's Books (NCCB), the Ministry of Education, Higher Education and Vocational Education of Sri Lanka, Room to Read Sri Lanka,

for their technical expertise and funding support, and the Sri Lanka Book Publishers' Association for their contribution to printing and distribution. Their collaboration has ensured that this guide moves beyond theory into practice — a model of how design-led inquiry can shape meaningful solutions for Sri Lanka and beyond.

Ms. Ruwandika Senanayake
Head, Department of Integrated Design,
Faculty of Architecture,
University of Moratuwa,
Sri Lanka

ශ්‍රී ලංකා පොත් ප්‍රකාශකයන්ගේ සංගමය
ஸ்ரீ லங்கா புத்தக வெளியீட்டாளர்கள் சங்கம்
Sri Lanka Book Publishers' Association

Foreword IV

It is a distinct privilege to write this foreword on behalf of the Sri Lanka Book Publishers Association for this essential guidebook—an eagerly anticipated resource to advance the development of children's storybooks in Sri Lanka. Expertly researched, compiled, and edited by Dr. Sumanthri Samarawickrama, this volume marks a significant milestone in the nation's children's literature.

Our association is honored to collaborate with the National Consortium for Developing Children's Books, working alongside eminent stakeholders including the Ministry of Education, Higher Education and Vocational Education of Sri Lanka, the University of Moratuwa, Room to Read Sri Lanka, and other valued partners. Through collective effort, we remain committed to elevating the quality and creativity of literature for young readers.

Guidelines from renowned international institutions such as the United Nations Educational, Scientific and Cultural Organization (UNESCO) and International Board on Books for Young People (IBBY) play a key role in shaping national policies and publishing standards for children's books. It is our hope that this guidebook, published by NCCB, will contribute to the formulation of a robust national policy for children's literature, strengthening the future of reading and writing in our country.

To my knowledge, only a few countries have developed dedicated guidebooks for their national children's literature. In this respect, Sri Lanka takes pride in publishing this volume—overcoming local challenges—and, importantly, making it available in both Sinhala and Tamil. We strongly believe this resource can be promoted throughout Asia, increasing Sri Lanka's recognition and influence in children's literature regionally and globally.

On behalf of the Sri Lanka Book Publishers Association, I wish to extend sincere appreciation to all stakeholders whose dedication has resulted in the publication of Fiction Wonderland: A Comprehensive Guide to Creating Children's Fiction Books. We salute the vision and collaboration that made this achievement possible.

Dinesh Kulatunga
President,
Sri Lanka Book Publishers Association.

Table of Contents

Forward I i
National Consortium for Children's Books

Forward II iii

Room to Read - Sri Lanka

Forward III v
Dept. Integrated Design, University of Moratuwa

Forward VI vii
Sri Lanka Publishers' Association

Table of Contents viii
Preface xvi
Acknowledgments ixx

Introduction xxiii

Section 01 01
The Power of Children's Fiction:
Understanding its Impact, Science and Responsibility

1.1 **Children's Fiction:**
A Supportive Tool for Cognitive, Literacy, Imaginative, Emotional and Moral Growth 04

1.1.1 What is a Children's Fiction Book? 04

1.1.2 Fiction in Relation to Cognition, Literacy, Imagination, Emotional Connections and Moral Development 05

1. Fiction Supports Cognitive Development 05
2. Fiction Supports Language Acquisition and Literacy Development 06
3. Fiction Captures Children's Imagination 07
4. Fiction Encourages Emotional Connections 07
5. Fiction Enhances Psychological and Moral Development 08

1.1.3 Key Elements to Consider in Children's Fiction Books 08

a) Understanding How Children Process Stories 09
b) Enhancing Vocabulary and Reading Skills 10
c) Expanding Mental Flexibility and Problem-Solving 11
d) Fostering Emotional Intelligence and Empathy 12
e) Shaping Ethical Reasoning and Social Behavior 13

1.2 The Child Reader:
The Science Behind Fiction's Impact on Child Development 14
1.2.1 What Sciences are Behind Fiction and Storytelling? 15
a) Developmental Psychology and Cognitive Science 15
Piaget's Developmental Stages and the Role of Fiction 16
b) Literacy Studies and Language Development
Scarborough's Reading Rope Model 18
i. Word Recognition (Lower Strands) 19
Phonemic Awareness and Word Recognition
ii. Language Comprehension (Upper Strands) 19
Vocabulary Growth and Syntax Development
Reading Comprehension and Inferencing Skills 20
c) Imagination and Creativity Studies 20
Imagination Studies, Cognitive Flexibility, Divergent Thinking
d) Emotional and Affective Science 22
Theory of Mind
Social-Emotional Learning
e) Social Learning and Moral Development 24
Social Learning Theory
Theory of Moral Development

1.2.2 Contribute to a Child's World through the Power of Children's Fiction 26
1.2.3 The Development of Reading: A Skill and a Habit 32
a) Stages of Reading: A flexible Journey 32
1. Pre-Reading
2. Learning to Read
3. Independent Reading
b) Essential Reading Activities for All Learners 35
1. Read Aloud
2. Shared Reading
3. Paired Reading
4. Independent Reading

1.3 Our Responsibility:
Defining Roles in Providing Meaningful Children's Fiction 38
1. The Creative Team (Fiction Content Development) 39
2. The Publishing Ecosystem (Production and Distribution of Fiction Books) 40
3. Knowledge Dissemination (Promoting the Impact of Fiction Books on Young Readers) 41
4. Knowledge Reviewers (Assessing Fiction Books for Quality and Impact) 42

Summary of Section 01 43

Section 02 44
Quality Children's Fiction:
Inclusivity, Accessibility and Cultural Impact

2.1 Diversity and Socio-Cultural Representation:
Reflecting the World in Fiction 48
2.1.1 What is Diversity? 48
a) Diversity in Fiction
b) Why Diversity in Fiction Matters?
2.1.2 What is Socio-Cultural Relevance? 50
a) Socio-Cultural Relevance in Fiction
b) Why Socio-Cultural Relevance in Fiction Matters?

2.2 Child Emotions and Skills:
Social-Emotional Learning and Soft Skills 52
2.2.1 What is Social-Emotional Learning (SEL)? 52
a) SEL in Fiction
b) Why SEL in Fiction Matters?
2.2.2 What is Soft Skill Development? 54
a) Soft Skill Development in Fiction
b) Why Soft Skill Development in Fiction Matters?

2.3 Gender Equality in Fiction:
Representation and Breaking Stereotypes 56
2.3.1 What is Gender Equality? 56
a) Gender Equality in Fiction
b) Why Gender Equality in Fiction Matters?

2.4 Accessibility in Children's Books:
Special Needs and Ergonomic Considerations 58
2.4.1 What Are Special Needs in Book Creation? 58
a) Potential for Special Books via Fiction
b) Why Special Books Matter?
2.4.2 What is Ergonomics in Book Design? 60
a) Ergonomic Considerations in Fiction
b) Why Ergonomics in Book Matters?
c) Key Ergonomic Factors of a Children's Fiction Book

2.5 Production Quality and Global Reach:
Print Standards and Cultural Relevance 64
2.5.1 What is Print Quality in Children's Books? 64
a) Print Quality Considerations
b) Why Print Quality Matters?
c) Print Quality and Global Relevance: Economic and Global Opportunities for Sri Lankan

2.6 Global Relevance in Children's Fiction:
Expanding Stories Beyond Borders 67
2.6.1 What is a Globally Relevant Fiction Book? 67
a). Considerations for Globally Relevant Books
b). Why Global Relevance in Fiction Matters?

2.7 Sample Themes in Children's Fiction:
Exploring Universal, Culturalmand Environmental Narratives 72
2.7.1 Universally Relatable Themes 72
2.7.2 Cultural Authenticity and Respect 73
2.7.3 Translatability and Linguistic Sensitivity 74
2.7.4 Environment-Based Themes 75
2.7.5 Environmental Fiction in the Sri Lankan Context 76
2.7.6 Sri Lanka's Uniqueness: Nature, Geography and People 77
2.7.7 Sri Lankan History in Children's Fiction 78
2.7.8 Sri Lankan Culture in Children's Fiction 79
2.7.9 Themes of Global Importance 80
2.7.10 Adaptability Across Contexts 81

2.8 Practical Considerations:
Tip for Inclusive and Respectful Storytelling 82
2.8.1 Children's Fiction Books Must Not Include Patronising or Stereotyping Content 82
2.8.2 Children's Fiction Books can Reflect Diverse Family Structures 82
2.8.3 Children's Fiction Books Must Represent All Genders Equally in a Variety of Roles 83
2.8.4 Children's Fiction Books Must Depict Racial and Ethnic Diversity with Accuracy and Respect 83
2.8.5 Children's Fiction Books Must Represent Children with Disabilities in Empowering Ways 84
2.8.6 Children's Fiction Books Must Ensure Cultural Sensitivity and Accuracy 84

Summary of Section 02 **85**

Section 03 86
Shaping Stories:
Content Creation Essentials

3.1 Start with a Clear Theme and Message:
Significance of Theme and Message 90
3.1.1 What is a Theme? 90
3.1.2 What is a Message? 90
3.1.3 Importance of Theme and Messages for Children via Fiction Books 92

3.2 Choose and Create Your Plot:
Plot and Types of Plots 94
3.2.1 What is a Plot? 94
3.2.2 Importance of Understanding the Stages in a Plot 96
3.2.3 Types of Plots for Children's Fiction Books 96

3.3 Structuring Your Plot into Narrative Arc:
Plot Structures and Diagrams 114
3.3.1 What is a Narrative Arc? 114
3.3.2 Key Stages and Narrative Structures 114
3.3.3 Examples of Other Narrative Arcs: Vonnegut's Theory 122

3.4 Be Creative with the Genre:
Genres and its Effects 132
3.4.1 What are Genres? 132
3.4.2 Types of Genres and How Writers Use Them in Children's Fiction 133

3.5 Give Life to Your Characters:
Children's Perception Towards Characters 138
3.5.1 Who are Characters in a Story? 138
3.5.2 Building Blocks of a Character 140
3.5.3 Core Character Elements 142
3.5.4 How Children Perceive Characters 144

3.6 Create a World to be Immersed:
World Building, its Setting and Mood 146
3.6.1 What is World-Building? 146
3.6.2 Building Blocks of World-Building for Children's Fiction Books 146

3.7 Decide on the Language:
Order of Storytelling and Language 150
3.7.1 What is Meant by "Language" in Children's Fiction? 150
3.7.2 Elements of Language in Children's Fiction Books 150
3.7.3 Importance of Language Use for Children in Fiction Books? 154
3.7.4 Application of Language in Children's Fiction Books 155
3.7.5 Narrative Perspectives 159
3.7.6 Voice and Tone 163
3.7.7 Spelling and Grammar in Children's Fiction Books 168

Section 04
Visualizing Stories:
Visual Creation Essentials

4.1 Develop Your Characters Visually:
Purposeful Character Visualization 174
4.1.1 What Is Character Visualization? 174
4.1.2 Why Character Visualization Matters in Children's Fiction 174
4.1.3 Use Visual Research Tools to Start the Process 175
4.1.4 Components of Character Visualization 212
4.1.5 Visualize the Building Blocks of a Character 216
4.1.6 Character Reference Sheet 220

4.2 Be Creative with the World:
Visual World-Building and Setting Design 224
4.2.1 What is Visual World Building? 224
4.2.2 Why World Building Matters in Children's Fiction 224
4.2.3 Use Visual Research Tools on World-Building to Start the Process 225
4.2.4 Components of World-Building/ Story Settings 226
4.2.5 Visualize the Building Blocks of World-Building/ Story Settings 230
4.2.6 Story Setting Sheet 234

4.3 Plan the Flow of Your Story:
Narrating, Thumbnailing for Visual Rhythm and Structure 236
4.3.1 What is Visual Narrative? 236
4.3.2 Order of Storytelling in Children's Fiction Books 236
4.3.3 What is Thumbnailing? 242
4.3.4 Why Thumbnailing is Important in Children's Book Design 243
4.3.5 The Iterative Process of Thumbnailing in Children's Book Design 243

4.4 Final Visual Journey:
Refining Compositions and Reading Experience 252
4.4.1 What is Storyboarding? 252
4.4.2 Why Storyboarding is Important in Children's Book Creation? 253
4.4.3 The Storyboarding Process: From Sketch to Visual 253
4.4.4 Final Artwork: After the Storyboarding Stage 257
4.4.5 Pre-Press Layout: Integrating Words and Images 258

4.5 Experiment with Composition:
Perspectives, Layout and Angles 261
4.5.1 Visual Perspectives 261
4.5.2 Illustration Layout Styles in Children's Storybooks 267
4.5.3 Visual Angles and Framing in Children's Book Illustration 274

4.6 Power of Typography and Cover:
Placement, Legibility and Expression 278
4.6.1 What is the Role of Text in Children's Fiction? 278
4.6.2 Text Placement in Children's Books 280
4.6.3 Legibility in Typography 282
4.6.4 Expressive Typography in Children's Books 284
4.6.5 What is the Difference Between a Cover and a Title? 286
4.6.6 Cover for a Children's Book: Criteria for Success 288
4.6.7 Titling a Children's Book: Criteria for Success 289

Section 05
From Script to Shelf:
Collaborative Steps Towards Publication

5.1 Stage 01 - Ideating:
Exploring the Inspiration and Purpose Behind Creating a Children's Book 296
Key Stakeholders of the Ideating Stage 297
Key Tasks of the Ideating Stage 298

5.2 Stage 02 - Refining:
Shaping the Story and Visuals for Developmental and Cultural Relevance 300
Key Stakeholders of the Refining Stage 301
Key Tasks of the Refining Stage 302

5.3 Stage 03 - Empathizing:
Aligning the Story with Real-World publishing Requirements and Stakeholder Needs 304
Key Stakeholders of the Empathizing Stage 305
Key Tasks of the Empathizing Stage 306

5.4 Stage 04 - Prototyping:
Transforming the Story into a Tangible Book Through an Iterative Process Before Production 308
Key Stakeholders of the Prototyping Stage 309
Key Tasks of the Prototyping Stage 310

5.5 Stage 05 - Testing and Verification:
Finalizing the Book Through Real-World Review and Production Checks 312
Key Stakeholders of the Testing and Verification Stage 313
Key Tasks of the Testing and Verification Stage 314

5.6 Stage 06 - Finishing:
Final Approvals, Quality Assurance and Preparing the Book for Release 316
Key Stakeholders of the Finishing Stage 317
Key Tasks of the of the Finishing Stage 318

5.7 Stage 07 - Launching:
Bringing the Book to the Public Through Strategic Promotion, Visibility and Outreach 320
Key Stakeholders of the Launching Stage 321
Key Tasks of the Launching Stage 322

5.8 Stage 08 - Review and Feedback: Observing the Book's Real-World Impact and Using Insights to Inform Future Storytelling 324
Key Stakeholders of the Review and Feedback Stage 325
Tasks of the Review and Feedback Stage 326

Summary of Section 05 327

About Technical Script 328
How to Fill 330
Template and Sample Technical Script 336

References 350
Images References 353
Special References: Referred Children's Books for the Publication 359

Steering Committee Members 362

Preface

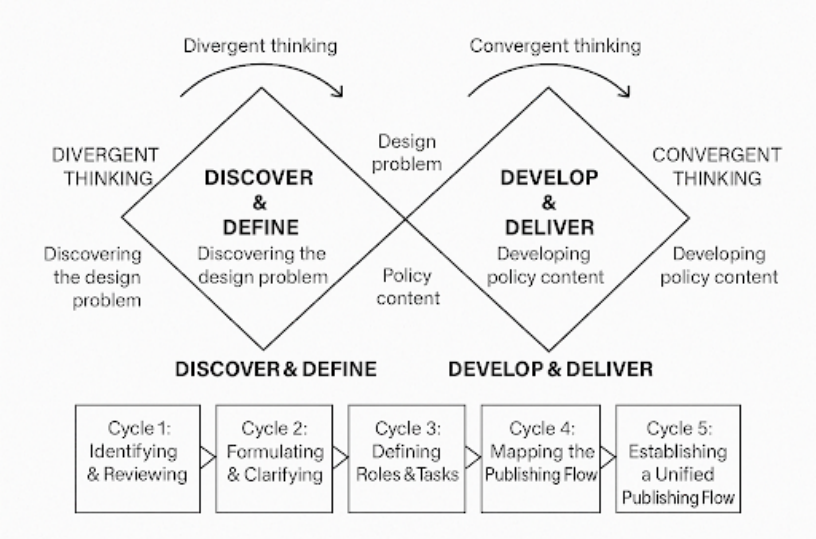
Children's books are more than stories on a page — they are a child's first encounter with imagination, learning and the wider world. They shape how young readers see themselves, understand others, and connect with culture and community. In Sri Lanka, as in many parts of the world, children's books carry the responsibility of nurturing future generations by supporting literacy, creativity, emotional intelligence, and a love of reading.

It is from this recognition that the journey toward a National Policy for Children's Books began. In 2023, the National Consortium for Children's Books (NCCB) was established to bring together stakeholders from across the publishing ecosystem, with the aim of creating a unified framework to advance the future of children's books in Sri Lanka. As a member of the NCCB, the appointed author of this book, and the Editor-in-Chief of the National Policy for Children's Books, I have had the privilege of leading this process — one built on academic research, collaborative dialogue, and design-led inquiry.

The history of book policy in Sri Lanka stretches back decades. Following UNESCO's initiatives after the Second World War, particularly its recognition of global "book hunger," the establishment of the Book Trust in 1963, and later the National Book Development Board and the National Library and Documentation Services Board, marked important milestones (National Book Development Council of Sri Lanka, Ministry of Education, National Book Promotion Policy, 2019). Over the years, many individuals and institutions have worked tirelessly toward the upliftment of children's books. These efforts explain why there is today a wide range of titles in the market. However, they often took place in isolation, without the benefit of a shared framework to connect them. Recognizing both the progress made and the systemic gaps that remained, the National Consortium for Children's Books (NCCB) was established to lead a more coordinated approach. Within this initiative, the policy content was developed through academic research and participatory design methods. Drawing on my background as a design educator, I applied the principles of design thinking — moving between divergent and convergent modes of exploration — to frame the challenges and co-create solutions. This process unfolded through a series of residential workshops that brought together a wide range of participants representing members of the Educational Publications Advisory Board, the

Educational Publications Department, the School Library Development Unit, the Primary Education Branch, the National Library and Documentation Services Board, and the National Institute of Education under the Ministry of Education, Higher Education and Vocational Education of Sri Lanka. Academic institutions were also represented, including the University of Colombo, the University of Moratuwa, and the University of Kelaniya. From the private sector, contributions came from the Sri Lanka Book Publishers' Association, commercial publishers, and self-publishers, while independent voices included writers, illustrators, printers, graphic designers, critics, and book reviewers.

The research problem was clear: although many valuable contributions were being made, Sri Lanka's children's publishing sector operated in silos. Collaboration was essential to bring coherence and shared purpose. Through an iterative process of five action research cycles — identifying, clarifying, defining, mapping, and establishing — the research developed a unified publishing flow that responded directly to the realities of the sector. This is illustrated in the figure below (Mapping the Five Action Research Cycles to the Double Diamond Framework), which captures how the process moved from discovery to delivery, from fragmentation to coherence.



Mapping the Five Action Research Cycles to the Double Diamond Framework.

The outcome was the articulation of eight goals, grounded in four guiding principles and values that now underpin both the National Policy and this guide:

Quality over Quantity
Child over Demand
Publishing Process for Consistency
Defined Roles for Accountability

The contributors to this journey not only represented existing stakeholder groups but also inspired the introduction of new professional designations — such as Art Director, Creative Consultant, and Editor — aligning Sri Lanka's practices with international standards while responding to local needs.

It has been a joy and a privilege to work with such a passionate team, united by a shared commitment to provide quality books for every child reader. Their dedication transformed this effort from a policy document into a vision for the future of Sri Lankan children's books. The names of all contributors are acknowledged in the following section, with their representative roles detailed at the end of this book. Collectively, they reflect an industry that has grown authentically without the scaffolding of a unified formal education system for children's book creation or publishing, relying instead on the dedication of individuals and groups, the transfer of tacit knowledge, and a spirit of collective resilience.

I am deeply grateful for the opportunity to contribute to this national endeavor, and for the trust placed in me to lead the development of its research and content.

Looking forward, I hope that future editions of this guide will increasingly showcase Sri Lankan children's books as core examples. This will not only strengthen the cultural relevance of the work but also celebrate the creativity and richness already alive in our local publishing landscape.

This guide, then, is not only the product of policy but also a testament to collaboration, design-led research, and the belief that every child in Sri Lanka deserves access to books that inspire, challenge, and nurture.

Sumanthri Samarawickrama, Ph.D
Senior Lecturer/ Researcher,
Department of Integrated Design,
University of Moratuwa, Sri Lanka.
sumanthris@uom.lk

Acknowledgments

This book is the result of a collective effort, and I wish to express my deepest gratitude to all who participated in the residential workshops. Your feedback and expertise were vital in shaping the research behind this guide. Participants represented the Ministry of Education, Higher Education and Vocational Education — including its advisory boards, departments, and institutes — as well as the University of Colombo, University of Moratuwa, and University of Kelaniya. The Sri Lanka Book Publishers' Association, commercial publishers, self-publishers, and independent voices such as writers, illustrators, printers, designers, critics, and reviewers also made invaluable contributions.

The following individuals contributed to this process:

Mrs. P. Rukmali Kariyawasam, Additional Secretary, School affairs, Ministry of Education, Higher Education and Vocational Education.
Mr. P. A. Weerakkody, Secretary, Educational Publications Advisory Board, Ministry of Education, Higher Education and Vocational Education.
Mr. K. D. Bandula Kumara, Director of Education (Science), Ministry of Education, Higher Education and Vocational Education.
Mrs. A. D. Balapatabendige, Deputy Director of Education, Primary Education, Ministry of Education, Higher Education and Vocational Education.
Mrs. Prageethika Jayasekara, Deputy Director of Education, Monitoring & Performance Review Branch, Ministry of Education, Higher Education and Vocational Education.
Mr. Pradeep Indunil Piyarathna, Deputy Commissioner, Educational Publications Department, Ministry of Education, Higher Education and Vocational Education.
Mr. U. L. Uwais, Deputy Commissioner, Educational Publications Department, Ministry of Education, Higher Education and Vocational Education.
Mr. P. Y. Dinesh Dhammika Kumara, Lecturer, Pasdunrata National College of Education, Kaluthara.
Mr. M. J. M. Mansoor, Principal, R/ Jeilani National School, Balangoda.
Mrs. S. N. Malaviarachchi, Additional Secretary - School Affairs (Retired), Ministry of Education.
Mr. K. A. D. Punyadasa, Chief Commissioner -Teacher Education (Retired), Ministry of Education.

Mr. K. Thajudeen, Commissioner General - EPD (Retired), Ministry of Education.
Mr. P. K. Vithanage, Secretary - Educational Publications Advisory Board (Retired), Ministry of Education.
Mrs. S. G. Subasinghe, Secretary - Educational Publications Advisory Board (Retired), Ministry of Education.
Mr. D. M. J. Pushpa Kumara, Former Deputy Commissioner, EPD, Ministry of Education.
Mrs. R. M. K. De Silva, Director, Department of Early Childhood Development and Primary Education. Department of Early Childhood Development and Primary Education, National Institute of Education.
Mr. H. Sarath Nanda Kumara, Director (Library and Museum), National Institute of Education.
Ms. Vanathi Kandeepan, Former Chief Project Officer, Department of Tamil National Institute of Education.
Dr. Chinthaka Chandrakumara, Senior Lecturer, Department of Educational Psychology, Faculty of Education, University of Colombo.
Mr. Uditha Alahakoon, Senior Assistant Librarian, National Instance of Library and Information Sciences, University of Colombo.
Mr. Uditha Gunasekara, Research Officer, National Library and Documentation Services Board.
Dr. (Mrs.) K. R. N. Harshani, Senior Lecture, Department of Library and Information Science, Faculty of Social Sciences, University of Kelaniya.
Mrs. P. G. S. D. Bandara, Director (Library Promotion, Standardization & Publications) National Library, Colombo.
Mr. Balaranjani Kandeepan, Academic and Research Officer, National Institute of Language Education and Training.
Dr. Nuwan Thotawaththa, (MBBS. MSc. MD). Public Health Specialist.
Mr. Samantha Indeewara Samarasingha, Past President, Sri Lanka Book Publisher Association.
Mr. Dinesh Kulathunga, President, Sri Lanka Book Publisher Association.
Mr. Athula Jayakody, Treasurer, Sri Lanka Book Publisher Association.
Mr. Mahesh Pathiratne, Global Advisor, Room to Read Sri Lanka.
Mr. K. Pathmananthan, Literacy Director, Room to Read Sri Lanka.
Mr. Indika Ganegoda, Senior Program Manager, Room to Read Sri Lanka.
Mrs. Manel Wickremasinghe, Senior program Manager, Room to Read Sri Lanka.
Mr. Dinesh Ranasinghe, Program Officer, Room to Read Sri Lanka.
Mrs. P. Rasika Chrishmali, Storyteller, Social Activist, Parent
Mr. M. A Nuwan Chathuranga Athulasiri, Freelancer
Ms Thanuja N. Ayagama, Director, Graphicare Publishing & Printing Pvt Ltd.
Ms. Dilshani Chathurika Dabare.
Mr. Chulananda Samaranayaka.

Mr. Hasithaka Narada Ranatunga, Founder & Director of Ceylon Academy of Art and Design, Sri Lanka.
Mr. R.C. Pradeep Kumara, Political Cartoonist/journalist/ Illustrator / contemporary Artist and Activist.
Mrs. I. M. Uthpala Madhuwanthi, Chief Executive Director, Thrimana Publications (Pvt) Ltd. / Program Manager and Lecturer, Department of Fashion Design, American College of Higher Education.
Mr. N. M. Kasun Muthukmarana, Director, Siyathra Advertising Services (Pvt) Ltd.
Mr. Dinidu Siriwardhana, Director Sun+Moon.
Mr. Saman Indika Lokukaluge, Creative Director, Giunti publishing agencies.
Mr Susantha Moonamalpe, Chartered Architect, Central Engineering Consultancy Bureau.

Steering Committee

I also wish to sincerely acknowledge the members of the Steering Committee, both past and present, whose leadership and commitment made the successful launch of this initiative possible. Their vision and dedication laid the foundation upon which this book has been built. A full list of steering committee members (both current and retired) is provided at the end of the book.

Research Team

I also extend my deepest gratitude to my research team, whose commitment, creativity, and perseverance sustained this project from its earliest stages to completion. Their contributions went far beyond routine tasks — from brainstorming ideas and gathering references, to refining research frameworks, preparing visuals, and supporting the overall production process. Each member brought unique strengths, and together they formed the backbone of this guide's development. My heartfelt appreciation goes to:

Ms. K.A. Udari Gunawardhana, for her dedication to visualization and her role as lead illustrator.
Ms. P.B.S. Deshani Ariyathilake, for her leadership in research assistance, particularly in compiling references and ensuring accuracy across sources.
Ms. A. Imalka Sewwandi, for her research contributions, especially on inclusivity, as well as her support in visualization and organization of material.
Mr. W.G.A. Sajitha Vimukthi, for his contributions to illustration and visual development.
Ms. V. Jayani Bhagya Wijerathna, for her support in illustration and assistance with creative refinements.
Ms. Jerusha Perera, for her initial research on children's picture books, contributions to illustration, and valuable research feedback.
Ms. K.I. Ramesha Kariyawasam, for her support in verifying reference accuracy and cross-analyzing research data.

I am grateful to **Ms. Mrinali Thalgodapitya**, who served as proofreader, for her careful attention to detail and commitment to accuracy.

Special thanks go to **Mr. Supun Dulanga** for his role in layout design and for providing valuable technical support that ensured this book was produced to the highest standard.

I sincerely thank **Room to Read – Sri Lanka** for their technical guidance and funding support, which made this project possible, and the **Sri Lanka Book Publishers' Association** for their contribution in coordinating printing and supporting distribution. Their efforts ensure that this book will be available at cost, making it accessible to the widest possible readership.

My appreciation also goes to the University of Moratuwa, and in particular **Ms. Ruwandika Senanayke,** the Head of the Department of Integrated Design, for the encouragement, time, and support extended to me throughout this journey.

On a deeply personal note, I wish to acknowledge my parents. To my mother, whom I lost this year, and who witnessed the development of this work through many tireless evenings — I miss her presence and encouragement profoundly. To my father, who has eagerly awaited the publication of this book and followed its progress closely even in draft stages, I remain forever grateful.

Finally, to my family, my husband, who has been my strength, my pillar of inspiration, and a constant reminder of the responsibility of this work; and my sons, Mikhail and Raphail, who sacrificed precious family time for the sake of a better future for children, while also serving as my testing ground for ideas and stories — I owe you more than words can express.

To all who contributed, I offer my sincere gratitude. This guide stands as a shared achievement, reflecting the power of collaboration to shape the future of children's literature in Sri Lanka.

Introduction

Introduction

This book is aligned with the National Policy for Children's Books and is grounded in the research carried out during the development of that policy. Since 2022, extensive consultations with individuals and organizations across Sri Lanka's children's book publishing ecosystem have informed both the policy and the contents of this book.

The four guiding principles of the National Policy are embedded throughout this guide. First, the emphasis on quality over quantity is reflected in its focus on what defines a good children's book and how the industry can collectively achieve it. Second, the recognition of the child at the center ensures that stories are developmentally appropriate, engaging, and meaningful to young audiences. Third, the call for a standardized publishing process is addressed through a clear, step-by-step framework that supports consistency across the sector. Finally, the principle of defined roles for accountability is carried through by clarifying the responsibilities of authors, illustrators, publishers, editors, educators, and reviewers, while encouraging collaboration across the ecosystem.

Building on these principles, the guide is organized into five sections and a technical script. Each part takes the values of the National Policy and translates them into practical steps, research insights, and creative tools that can be applied across the entire children's book ecosystem. This ecosystem is represented through four interdependent teams: the Creative Team (content development), the Publishing Ecosystem (production and distribution of books), Knowledge Dissemination (promoting the impact of books on young readers), and Knowledge Reviewers (assessing books for quality and impact).

Section 01 sets the foundation by defining quality in children's fiction. It explains the science behind how stories contribute to a child's cognitive, literacy, imaginative, emotional and moral development. Drawing on research in psychology, literacy studies and social learning, this section highlights the responsibility of all stakeholders in shaping meaningful books for young readers.

Section 02 places children's books within the Sri Lankan context, addressing accessibility, inclusivity and cultural representation. Sri Lanka is a multi-ethnic and socio-economically diverse nation, and children's books must reflect that reality. This section explores diversity in characters and themes, gender equality, social-emotional learning, special needs and ergonomic considerations, production standards, and the potential for Sri Lankan books to achieve global reach while remaining culturally authentic.

Section 03 focuses on the art of creating a children's book. It provides guidance on theme, message, plot structures, genres, characterization, world-building and language. This equips authors with the tools to craft stories that are engaging, imaginative and developmentally appropriate for children.

Section 04 turns to the visual dimensions of storytelling. It explores how illustrations, layout, typography, and cover design bring stories to life and create an immersive reading experience. It also emphasizes iterative processes such as thumbnailing, storyboarding, and refining compositions, ensuring that visuals are not merely decorative but purposeful in enhancing comprehension and engagement.

Section 05 outlines the step-by-step process of producing a children's book from ideation to review. Presented as an eight-stage framework, it guides authors, illustrators, publishers, and other stakeholders through ideating, refining, empathizing, prototyping, testing, finishing, launching, and reviewing. Each stage includes key questions, tasks and stakeholders, encouraging an iterative, stop-and-check approach to ensure quality outcomes.

Technical Script: Complementing the five sections of this guide, the technical script functions as a practical framework and checklist. Directly linked to the content of the guidebook, it is designed to support authors, illustrators and publishers in systematically questioning the books they are producing. The script serves as a guide to evaluate whether a book fulfills its full potential in terms of quality, inclusivity, developmental appropriateness and alignment with the needs of the child reader. It ensures that creative vision, design choices, and production processes are measured against clear criteria, allowing stakeholders to pause, reflect and refine before final publication.

Although this guide primarily addresses print media, much of its content — on storytelling, design, inclusivity, and production — can also be applied across digital and multimedia formats.

Ultimately, this book is written for the people who make up Sri Lanka's children's book ecosystem. It supports the collective responsibility of creating fiction that is high in quality, developmentally meaningful, culturally relevant, and accessible to all Sri Lankan children.

Together, these principles and core values of the National Policy — Quality over Quantity, Child over Demand, Publishing Process for Consistency, Defined Roles for Accountability — form the backbone of this guide.

Section 01

Section 01

The Power of Children's Fiction

Understanding its Impact, Science and Responsibility

Whether you are a writer, illustrator, editor, art director, publisher, educator, librarian, or parent, this section serves as a guide to understanding your role and the collective responsibility in creating meaningful and impactful children's fiction books.

Chapter 1 provides a foundational understanding of children's fiction by exploring its role as a supportive tool in cognitive, literacy, imaginative, emotional, and moral growth. It examines the science behind fiction's impact on child development, drawing on research in cognition, literacy, imagination, emotional connections, and moral reasoning. The chapter concludes by defining the responsibilities of writers, educators, publishers, and other contributors in shaping meaningful children's fiction. By engaging with this chapter, readers will gain a clear understanding of the importance of children's fiction, its developmental impact on young readers, and their role in creating high quality stories.

Contents of this Section

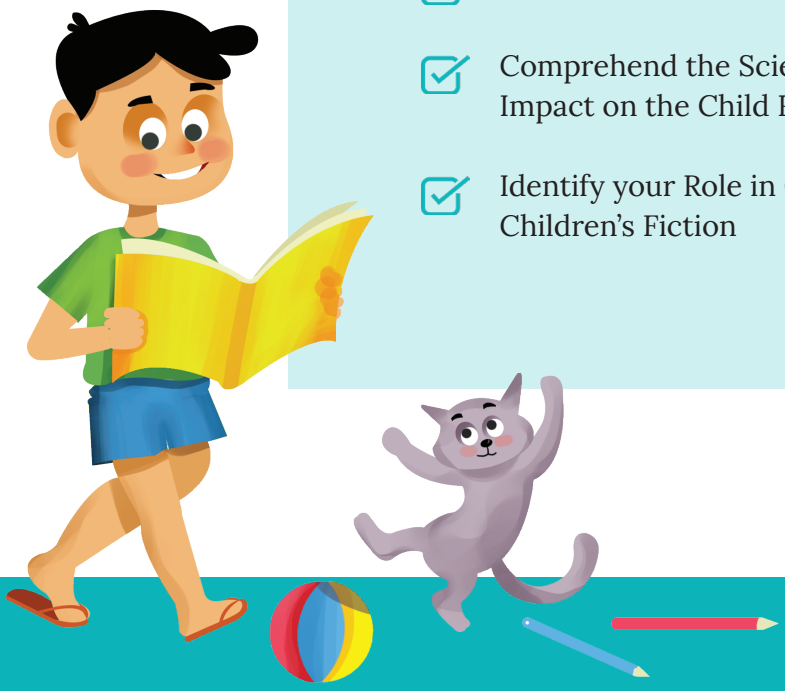
1.1. Children's Fiction:
A Supportive Tool for Cognitive, Literacy, Imaginative, Emotional, and Moral Growth.

1.2. The Child Reader:
The Science Behind Fiction's Impact on Child Development.

1.3. Our Responsibility:
Defining Roles in Providing Meaningful Children's Fiction.

At the end of this section you should be able to:

- ☑ Understand the Role of Children's Fiction
- ☑ Comprehend the Science Behind Fiction's Impact on the Child Reader
- ☑ Identify your Role in Creating Meaningful Children's Fiction



1.1 Children's Fiction

A Supportive Tool for Cognitive, Literacy, Imaginative, Emotional and Moral Growth

1.1.1 What is a children's fiction book?

Children's books play a crucial role in early education and development. Broadly, they can be classified into fiction and non-fiction, with fiction being narrative-driven and non-fiction serving as an informational resource about the natural and social worlds (Duke, 2000).

Children's fiction books are literary works specifically crafted to entertain, educate and engage young readers through imaginative storytelling. These books span various genres — fantasy, adventure, mystery, historical fiction, and more — designed to align with children's cognitive development, enhance linguistic abilities, nurture imagination, foster emotional connections, and support psychological and moral growth. Unlike adult fiction, children's fiction often integrates moral lessons, relatable characters, and accessible language to support early literacy and emotional growth. This multidimensional impact makes fiction an essential tool for shaping well-rounded, empathetic and imaginative young individuals.

Despite the educational value of both, sales of children's fiction remain approximately four times higher than non-fiction, reflecting a traditional preference for narratives in early learning environments (Milliot, 2015).

> **"If you want your children to be intelligent, read them fairy tales. If you want them to be more intelligent, read them more fairy tales"**
>
> **- Albert Einstein -**

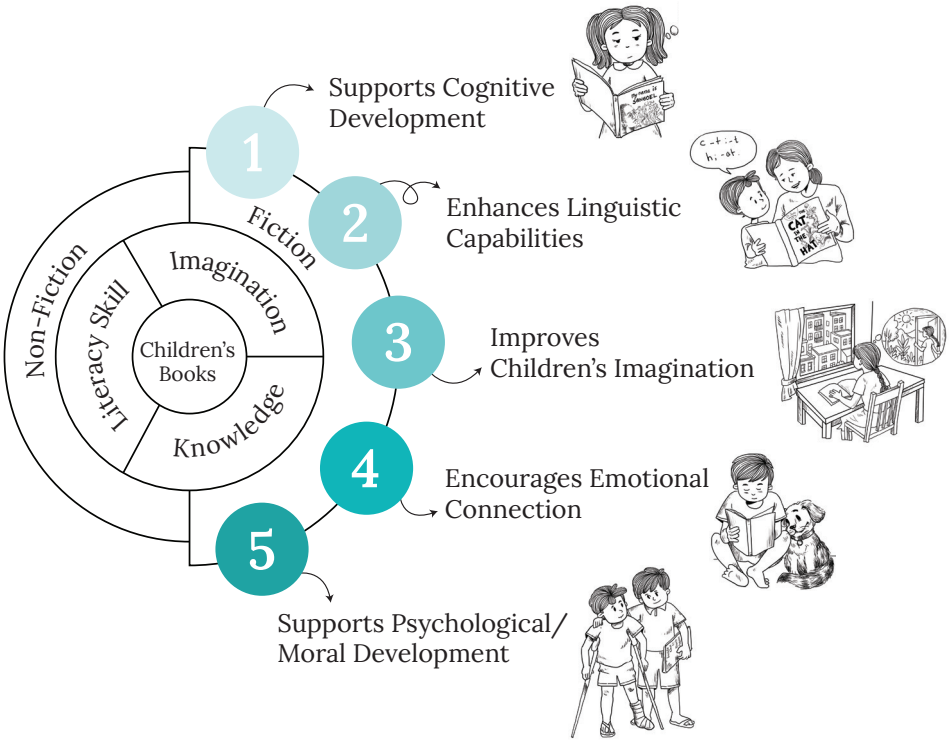


Figure 1.1 : Fiction aligns with children's cognitive development, enhances linguistic abilities, nurtures imagination, fosters emotional connections, and supports psychological and moral growth.

1.1.2 Fiction in Relation to Cognition, Literacy, Imagination, Emotional Connections and Moral Development

1. Fiction Supports Cognitive Development

Fictional stories promote higher-order cognitive skills, including memory retention, inference-making, and logical reasoning. According to Jean Piaget's Theory of Cognitive Development (1936), exposure to structured narratives helps children organize information, recognize patterns, and predict story outcomes. Books with multiple perspectives and plot twists (e.g., The Chronicles of Narnia by C.S. Lewis) challenge children to think critically and analyze cause-and-effect relationships. Studies indicate that narrative comprehension strengthens neural pathways associated with problem-solving and executive function (Mar, 2011).

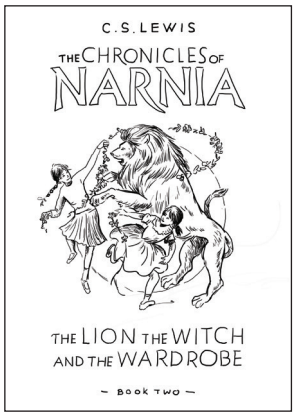


Figure 1.2 : ***The Chronicles of Narnia by C.S. Lewis:*** The protagonists face moral dilemmas, strategic battles, and personal challenges, requiring young readers to analyze decisions and predict outcomes.

2. Fiction Supports Language Acquisition and Literacy Development

Fiction is a powerful linguistic tool, shaping children's early reading, vocabulary and language comprehension skills. According to Scarborough's Reading Rope Model (2001), literacy development occurs through word recognition and language comprehension, both of which fiction strengthens.

- **Phonemic Awareness and Word Recognition**
  Rhyming stories such as The Cat in the Hat by Dr. Seuss improve phonemic awareness, a crucial early literacy skill (Ehri, 2005).

- **Vocabulary Growth and Syntax Development**
  Fictional books introduce new words in context, making them easier to remember and apply (Cain and Oakhill, 2011). E.g. Brown Bear, Brown Bear, What Do You See? by Bill Martin Jr. and Eric Carle.

- **Reading Comprehension and Inferencing Skills**
  Exposure to narrative structures helps children develop inferencing skills, a key predictor of reading fluency and comprehension (Kendeou et al., 2009). E.g. Where the Wild Things Are by Maurice Sendak.

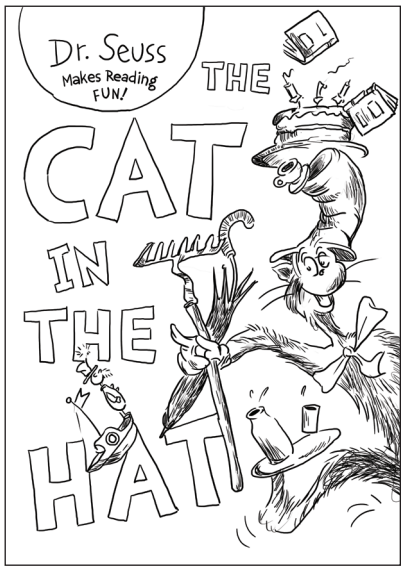


Figure 1.3 : ***The Cat in the Hat by Dr. Seuss***: Rhyming pattern/ rhyming pairs (e.g., "hat" and "cat," "play" and "day"), which help children recognize similar sound patterns in words. This exposure to rhyme strengthens phonemic awareness by making it easier for children to hear and manipulate sounds.

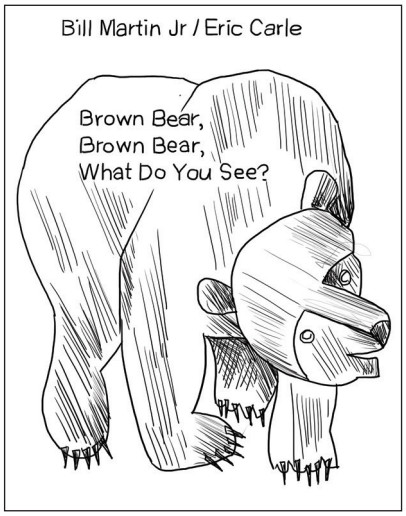


Figure 1.4 (Right mid): ***Brown Bear, Brown Bear, What Do You See? by Bill Martin Jr. and Eric Carle*** : The book follows a predictable pattern that helps children grasp sentence structure and develop an understanding of how words are ordered in a sentence.

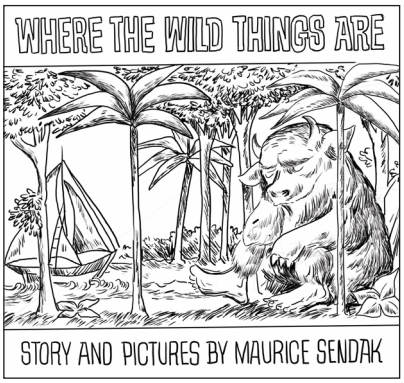


Figure 1.5 (Right): ***Where the Wild Things Are by Maurice Sendak***: Max's feelings aren't always stated directly, so children must use context clues from the text and images to understand his emotions and motivations.

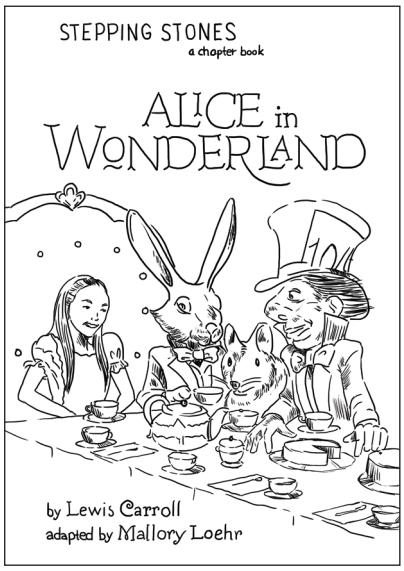


Figure 1.6 : ***Alice's Adventures in Wonderland by Lewis Carroll*** Alice encounters illogical puzzles and absurd situations, prompting young readers to think 'outside the box'. It inspires children to explore new ideas and reimagine how the world works.

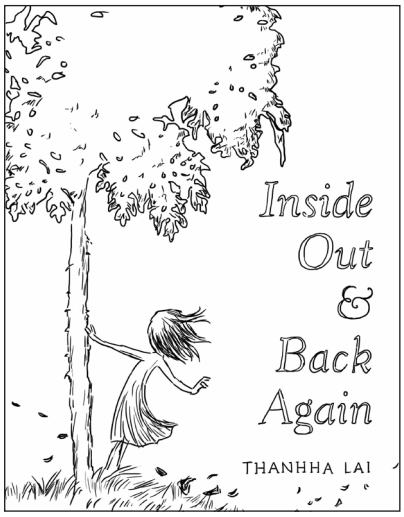


Figure 1.7 : ***Inside Out and Back Again by Thanhha Lai***: Hà is a ten-year-old girl forced to flee war-torn Vietnam and start a new life in the United States. The novel, written in free verse, captures her internal struggles with identity, loss and cultural displacement. Through Hà's journey, young readers experience emotional transitions such as fear, hope, frustration and resilience, mirroring the emotional complexities that children often face in real life.

3. Fiction Captures Children's Imagination

Fictional stories transport children into imaginative worlds, stimulating creative thinking and cognitive flexibility. Through rich narratives and vivid settings, children engage in mental simulation, which enhances abstract thinking and storytelling abilities (Goswami, 2008). Exposure to fantastical elements E.g. Alice's Adventures in Wonderland by Lewis Carroll encourages children to explore possibilities beyond reality, fostering inventive problem-solving skills. Research suggests that imaginative play and exposure to fictional narratives contribute to divergent thinking, a core component of creativity (Singer and Singer, 1990).

4. Fiction Encourages Emotional Connections

Stories create deep emotional engagement, allowing children to identify with characters, experience empathy, and process emotions. According to the Theory of Mind (ToM) research, fictional books help children understand others' thoughts, emotions and motivations (Zunshine, 2006). Emotional connections formed through relatable protagonists and moral dilemmas (e.g., Inside Out and Back Again by Thanhha Lai) provide a safe space for children to explore complex feelings. Additionally, fiction aids in emotional regulation, teaching children how to navigate challenges, process grief, and develop resilience (Nikolajeva, 2014).

5. Fiction Enhances Psychological and Moral Development

Fiction serves as an ethical framework, allowing children to grapple with moral dilemmas and explore the consequences of actions. Lawrence Kohlberg's Theory of Moral Development (1958) suggests that exposure to narratives involving justice, fairness and ethical challenges helps children progress through stages of moral reasoning. Books such as "The Sad Book" by Michael Rosen is a gentle yet profound book helping children understand and process grief, loss and sadness. It encourages emotional maturity by teaching self-awareness, empathy and healthy ways in which to cope with difficult emotions.

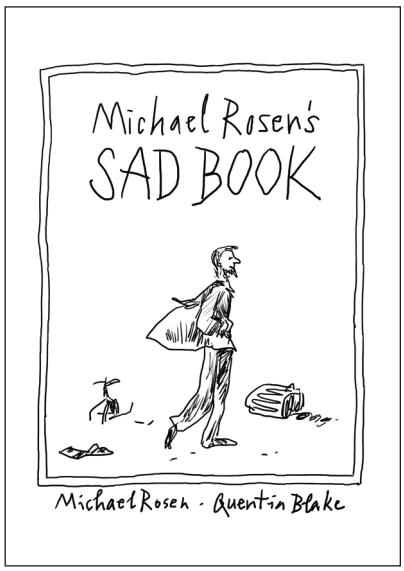


Figure 1.8 : ***The Sad Book by Michael Rosen***: The author Michael Rosen shares his personal experience of losing his son, helping readers understand that grief is a natural process. The book explores ways to cope with sadness, such as remembering happy moments, talking to others, and taking care of oneself.

1.1.3 Key Elements to Consider in Children's Fiction Books

Children's fiction plays a transformative role in cognitive development, literacy skills, imagination, emotional intelligence, and moral reasoning. When crafting fiction for children, it is essential to consider how young readers process stories, build vocabulary, solve problems, develop empathy, and shape ethical perspectives. Well-structured and engaging fiction not only entertains but also educates, empowers and inspires, helping to shape children's understanding of themselves and the world around them.

The following are some essential considerations for developing meaningful children's fiction, with relevant book examples to illustrate their application.

a) Understanding How Children Process Stories

How narrative structure influences comprehension and engagement in young readers - Discussed in detail in Chapters 03 and 04

A well-structured storyline, character development, and immersive settings help children comprehend and retain information. Fiction books designed for young readers should use clear story progressions (beginning, middle and end), repetition, and logical cause- and-effect relationships to make narratives easier to follow (Gamble and Yates, 2002).

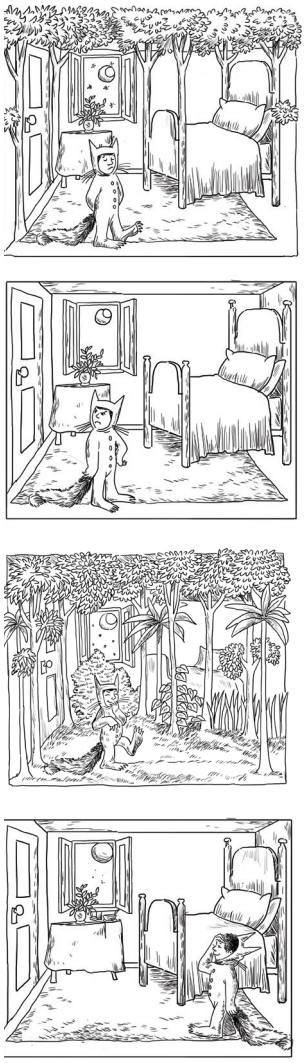


Figure 1.9 : ***Where the Wild Things Are by Maurice Sendak Sample pages*** : Illustrate imaginative world-building with emotional depth, guiding children through fantasy while maintaining narrative coherence. Max's room transforms across pages, seamlessly transporting the child reader into an imaginative world while adhering to a structured story arc.

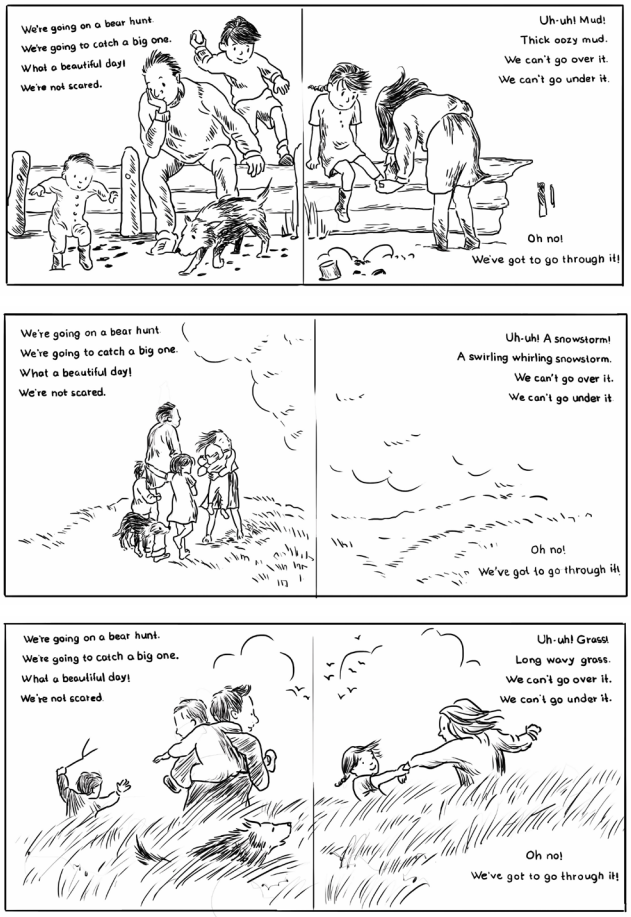


Figure 1.10 : ***We're Going on a Bear Hunt by Michael Rosen Sample pages***: Utilize repetitive text and predictable sequencing to engage young readers, encouraging active participation and memory reinforcement through rhythmic storytelling.

Key Considerations for Writers and Illustrators:

- ☑ Ensure narrative clarity with a well-defined structure.
- ☑ Use repetition and rhythmic phrasing to reinforce comprehension.
- ☑ Balance fantasy with logical sequencing to maintain engagement.

b) Enhancing Vocabulary and Reading Skills

How fiction supports literacy development and language acquisition in children - Discussed in detail in Chapter 03

Children's fiction is a crucial medium for language development, vocabulary building, and reading fluency. Stories should incorporate phonemic awareness techniques, repetitive patterns, and visual aids to strengthen early literacy skills (The Curious Economist, 2024).

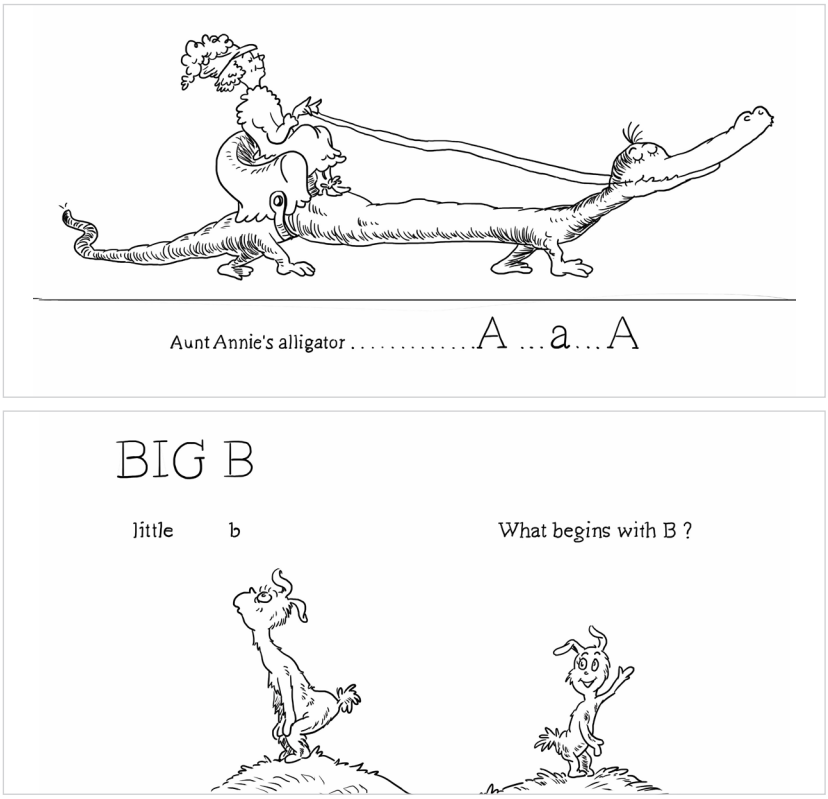


Figure 1.11 : ***Dr. Seuss's ABC by Dr. Seuss Sample pages*** : Demonstrate the use of alliteration, phonics, and rhyming patterns to reinforce letter recognition, fostering early reading confidence through playful language.

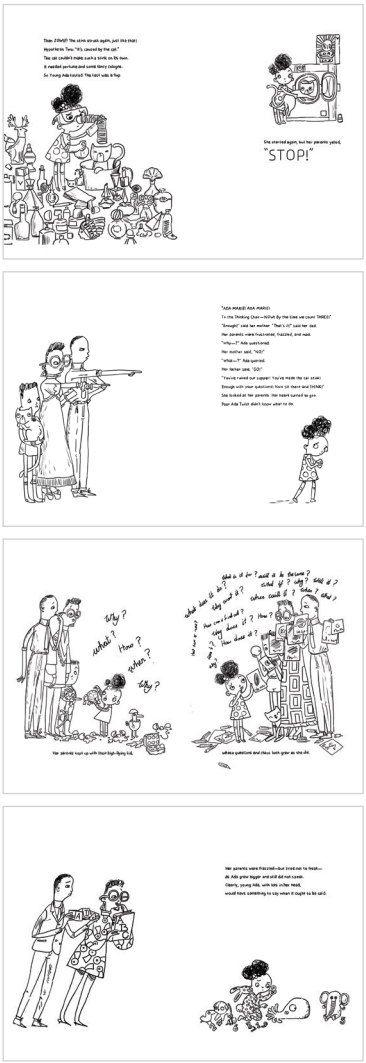


Figure 1.12 : ***Ada Twist, Scientist by Andrea Beaty Sample pages*** : Encourage questioning and verbal engagement with new words. These pages integrate advanced vocabulary within a narrative format, making STEM concepts accessible through storytelling.

Key Considerations for Writers and Illustrators:

- ☑ Use rhythmic, rhyming, and repetitive text to aid phonemic awareness.
- ☑ Incorporate contextual learning — new words should be introduced naturally.
- ☑ Pair text with illustrations to reinforce word recognition and comprehension.

c) Expanding Mental Flexibility and Problem-Solving

How fiction strengthens critical thinking, cognitive flexibility, and reasoning skills in children

Children's fiction enhances logical reasoning, problem-solving, and adaptive thinking by encouraging young readers to explore different perspectives, solve conflicts, and navigate cause-and-effect relationships (Gopnik and Wellman, 2012).

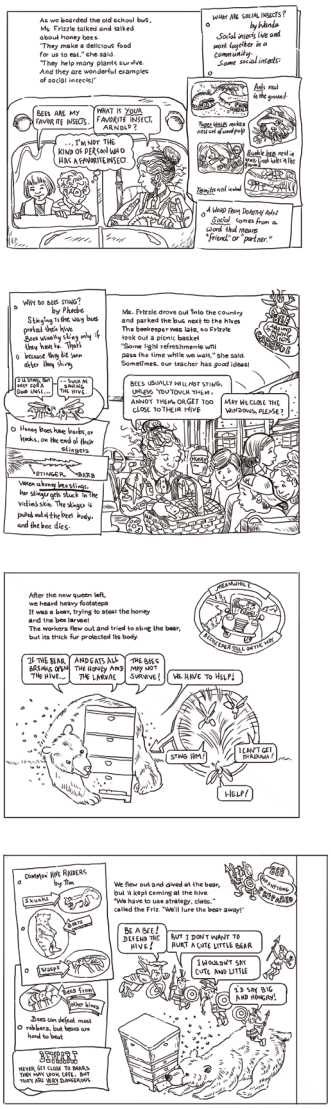


Figure 1.13 : ***The Magic School Bus series by Joanna Cole Sample pages***: A glimpse into how the bus transforms, helping children differentiate between reality and fantasy while maintaining engagement. These pages also use fictionalized learning journeys to introduce scientific concepts and reasoning.

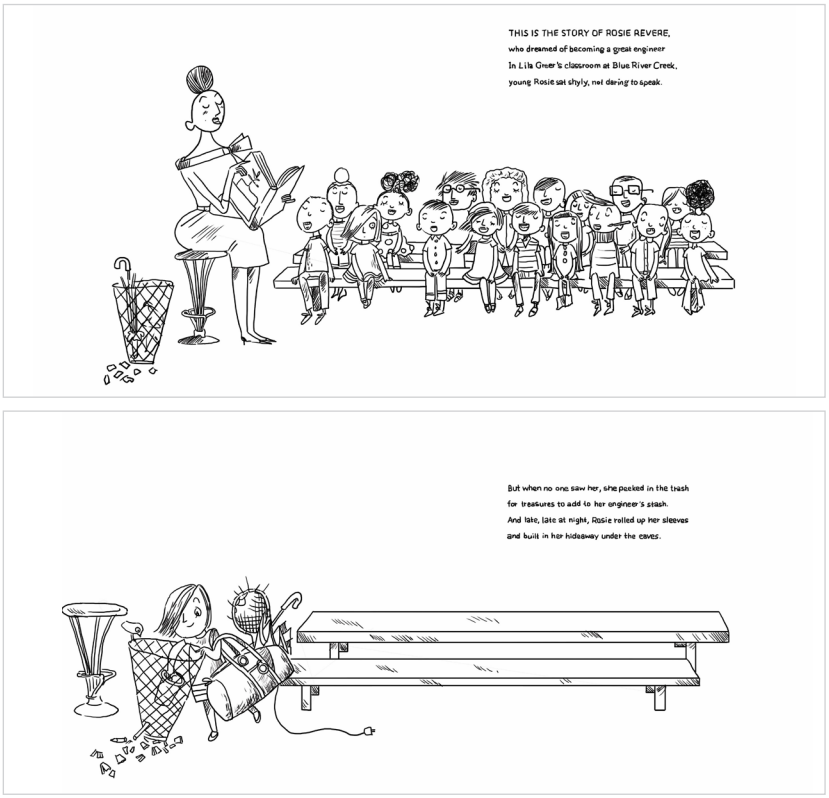


Figure 1.14 : ***Rosie Revere, Engineer by Andrea Beaty Sample pages*** : Illustrates resilience and creative problem-solving through trial-and-error learning as Rosie experiments with gadgets and gizmos. These pages also reinforce STEM thinking within a storytelling framework.

Key Considerations for Writers and Illustrators:

- ☑ Incorporate challenges that encourage critical thinking and problem-solving.
- ☑ Ensure the story includes reasoning-based elements (e.g. characters making decisions).
- ☑ Use storytelling to introduce real-world concepts while maintaining narrative appeal.

d) Fostering Emotional Intelligence and Empathy

How fiction helps children understand emotions, develop coping strategies, and connect with others - Discussed in detail in Chapter 02

Fiction provides children with a safe space to explore emotions and social interactions, helping them build empathy, self-regulation, and interpersonal skills (Kidd and Castano, 2013). Well-developed characters allow children to process complex emotions, navigate friendships, and understand different perspectives.

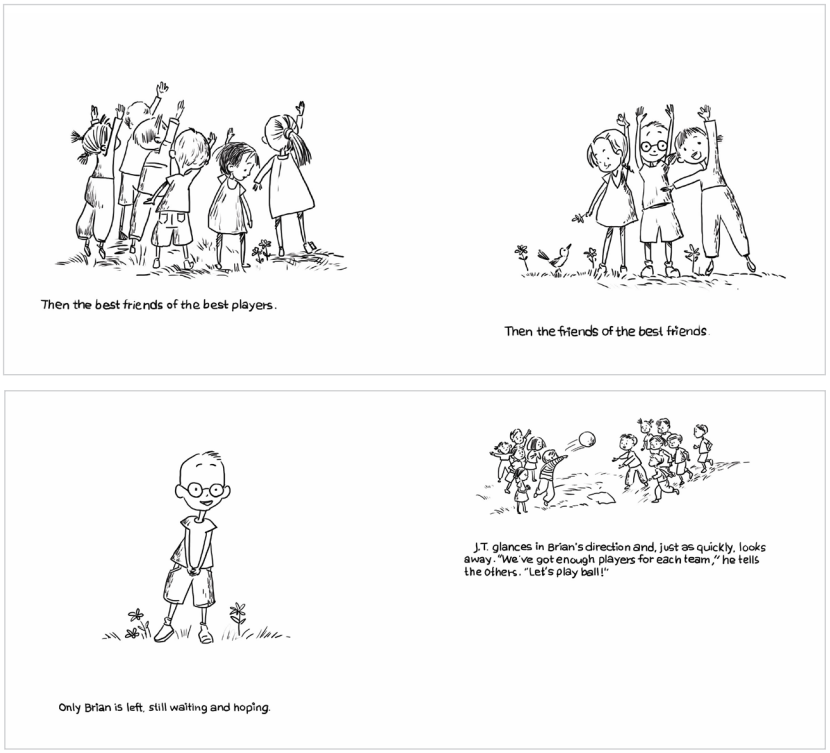


Figure 1.15 : ***The Invisible Boy by Trudy Ludwig Sample pages:*** Highlights themes of social exclusion, loneliness and kindness, helping children recognize the impact of their actions on others. It encourages empathy and perspective, as Brian gradually becomes "not so invisible after all."

Figure 1.16 : ***Ada Twist, Scientist by Andrea Beaty Sample pages*** : Encourages questioning and verbal engagement with new words. These pages integrate advanced vocabulary within a narrative format, making STEM concepts accessible through storytelling.

Key Considerations for Writers and Illustrators:

- ☑ Develop characters with authentic emotions to help children process feelings.
- ☑ Use storytelling as a tool for emotional exploration (e.g. characters facing struggles).
- ☑ Introduce narratives that promote understanding and self-expression.

e) Shaping Ethical Reasoning and Social Behavior

How fiction contributes to moral development and social awareness in children - Discussed in detail in Chapter 02

Fiction introduces ethical dilemmas, cultural values, and moral lessons, helping children form opinions, challenge biases, and understand fairness and justice (Kristensen, 2024; Denkovska, 2023). Through character-driven storytelling, children learn about integrity, kindness, and social responsibility.

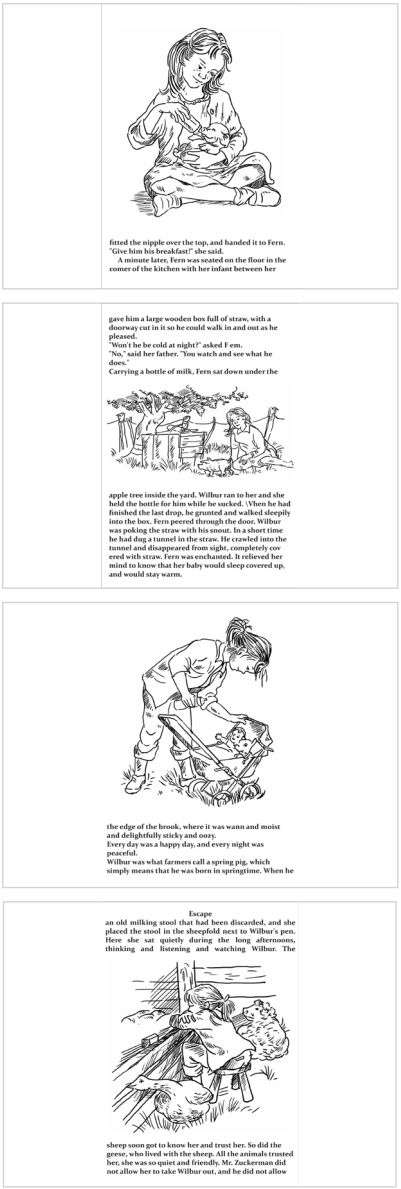


Figure 1.17 : ***Charlotte's Web by E.B. White Sample pages*** : The story teaches friendship, sacrifice and moral responsibility through animal characters. It demonstrates how ethical decisions impact relationships and society.

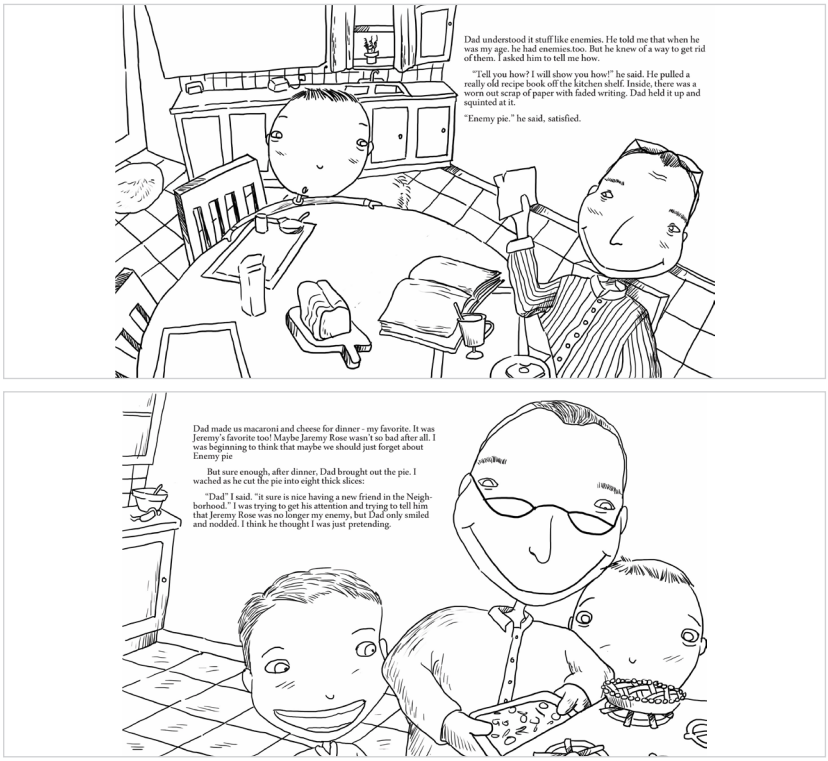


Figure 1.18 : ***Enemy Pie by Derek Munson Sample pages*** : The story demonstrates how preconceived notions about others can change through experience. It teaches children about forgiveness, perspective-taking, and the importance of giving people a chance, as a boy who initially dislikes his neighbour learns the value of friendship.

Key Considerations for Writers and Illustrators:

- ☑ Ensure stories include social values and moral learning opportunities.
- ☑ Present dilemmas where children can reflect on choices and consequences.
- ☑ Use fiction to model fair, inclusive, and ethical behavior.

1.2 The Child Reader

The Science Behind Fiction's Impact on Child Development

Children's fiction books play a crucial role in shaping a child's cognitive, linguistic, and emotional development. While fictional stories often serve as entertainment, they also hold significant educational value both within and beyond the school environment. Research suggests that under specific conditions, children can learn effectively from fiction (Fazio and Marsh, 2008). Schools incorporate fictional narratives into curricula to enhance literacy skills, social understanding, and critical thinking, making them essential tools for early education.

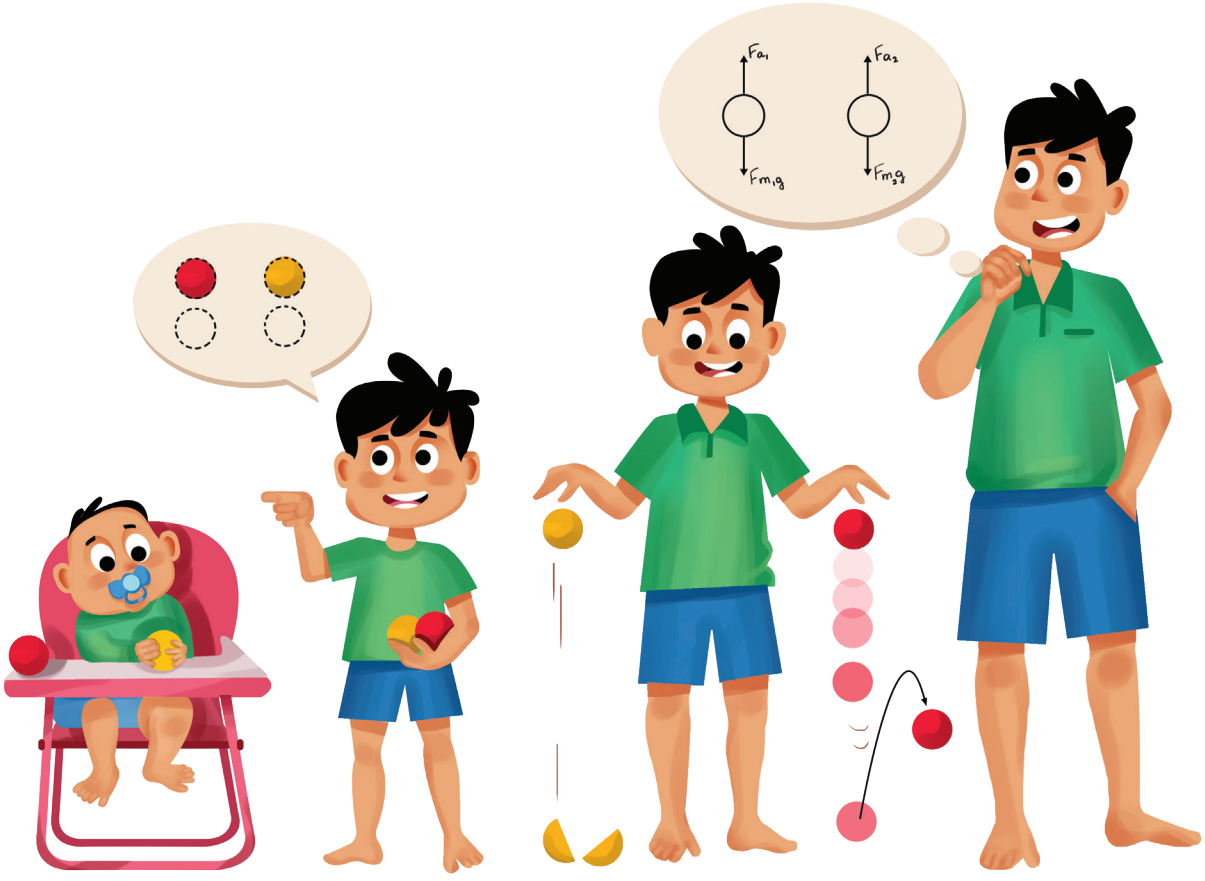
Fictional narratives, defined as decontextualized stories featuring imaginary characters and events (Pesco and Gagne, 2015), present unique challenges and opportunities for young readers. Unlike other narrative genres, fiction requires children to understand complex story conventions, maintain structural coherence, and interpret linguistic cues that link events causally and temporally (Licandro, 2016). This cognitive demand underscores the importance of introducing children to fiction in a structured manner that supports their developmental progress. The following discusses the science behind the impact of fiction on child development.

> **"Children's reading and children's thinking are the rock-bottom base upon which this country will rise. Or not rise."**
>
> **- Dr. Seuss -**

1.2.1 What Sciences are Behind Fiction and Storytelling?

a) Developmental Psychology and Cognitive Science

Children's fiction aligns with Jean Piaget's Theory of Cognitive Development (1936), which describes how children perceive, process and interpret narratives as they grow. Fictional books, through structured storytelling, encourage critical thinking, memory development, and problem-solving skills. Recent research in cognitive neuroscience suggests that reading fiction stimulates multiple brain regions, including those related to sensory processing, problem-solving, and perspective-taking (Hutton et al., 2015). Functional MRI (fMRI) studies indicate that reading fictional narratives activates the brain's default mode network (DMN), which is responsible for imagination, empathy, and memory retrieval (Mar, 2011).



Sensorimotor stage	Pre-operational stage	Concrete operational stage	Formal operational stage
Birth to 2 years	Ages 2 to 7	Ages 7 to 11	Ages 12 and up

Figure 1.19 : Piaget's Four Stages of Cognitive Development Illustrated

Piaget's Developmental Stages and Fiction's Role

2–7 Years — Pre-operational Stage

- Fiction enhances symbolic play, allowing children to engage with imaginative scenarios.
- Narrative fiction helps children connect personal experiences with fictional events, improving comprehension.
- Stories with predictable patterns and repetition strengthen memory retention.

For example ***Brown Bear, Brown Bear, What Do You See? by Bill Martin Jr. and Eric Carle.***
Repetitive patterns and colorful animal illustrations encourage children to engage in symbolic play. By recognizing and naming animals, children connect words to real-world objects, strengthening their ability to use symbols in thought.

7–11 Years Concrete Operational Stage

- Children begin to understand cause-and-effect relationships in fiction, aiding logical thinking.
- Exposure to plot twists and complex story arcs sharpens deductive reasoning.
- Fiction introduces multiple character perspectives, helping children develop social reasoning.

For example ***Charlotte's Web by E.B. White adapted by Jennifer Frantz.*** Strengthens logical reasoning, moral reflection, perspective-taking, and deductive thinking. The story encourages them to reflect on kindness, sacrifice, and friendship, particularly Charlotte's loyalty to Wilbur/pig despite receiving nothing in return.

11+ Years Formal Operational Stage

- Exposure to unreliable narrators and nonlinear storytelling strengthens higher-order reasoning (e.g., The Book Thief by Markus Zusak).
- Teens engage in metacognitive reflection, interpreting deeper themes in stories.
- Fiction fosters abstract thinking and allows young readers to explore philosophical and ethical dilemmas.

For example ***The Giver by Lois Lowry***, engages teens in abstract reasoning, hypothetical thinking, moral reflection, and self-analysis. It challenges them to question societal structures, analyze ethical dilemmas, and interpret deeper themes, all essential skills for cognitive and personal development. Questions: The nature of reality - Is Jonas's world truly "perfect," or is it dystopian?

b) Literacy Studies and Language Development

Fiction plays a crucial role in literacy development, aligning closely with Scarborough's Reading Rope Model (Scarborough, 2001). It speaks of Word Recognition (Lower Strands) and Language Comprehension (Upper Strands). This model illustrates how skilled reading emerges through the interaction of word recognition and language comprehension.

Fictional books, through their narrative structures and linguistic richness, strengthen both of these essential strands (lower and upper), supporting the development of early literacy, vocabulary, and language processing skills. Fiction provides context-rich exposure to new words, sentence structures, and storytelling techniques, reinforcing reading fluency and comprehension while fostering a deeper engagement with texts.

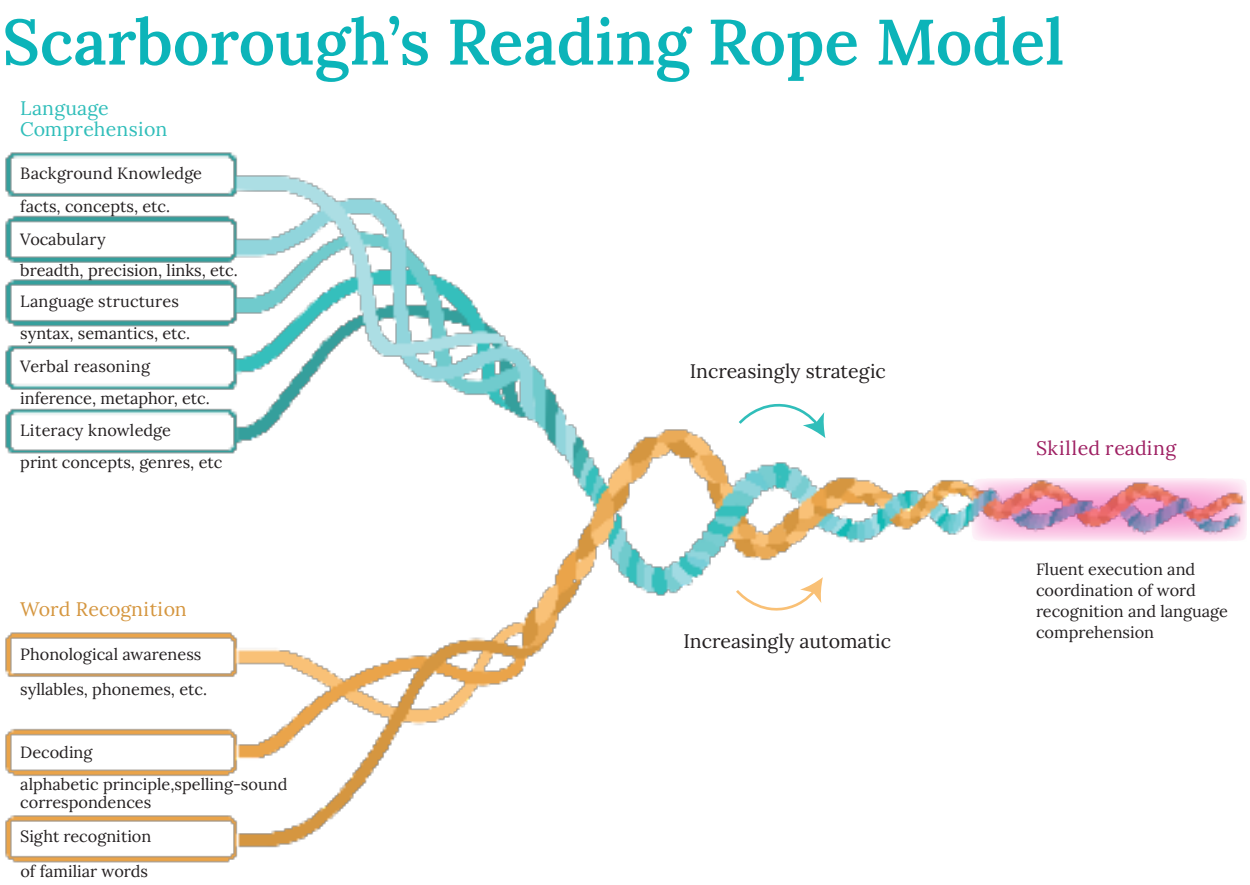


Figure 1.20 : Simplified Scarborough's Reading Rope Model Speaks of Word Recognition (Lower Strands) and Language Comprehension (Upper Strands).

> **"Fiction plays a crucial role in literacy development, aligning closely with Scarborough's Reading Rope Model."**

How fiction can contribute to these strands:

1. Word Recognition (Lower Strands)

Word recognition refers to the ability to decode words accurately and fluently, forming the foundation of reading proficiency. Fiction contributes to this process in several ways:

Phonemic Awareness and Word Recognition

- Repetitive and predictable texts reinforce sentence structure recognition, aiding children in developing automaticity in decoding and fluency.
- Phonemic awareness (the ability to recognize and manipulate sounds in spoken words) is a critical skill in Scarborough's model. Rhyming stories, such as "The Cat in the Hat" by Dr. Seuss, focuses on phonemic awareness, decoding, and sight recognition, which are essential foundational reading skills. Words like "c-at" and "h-at" encourage children to recognize onsets (beginning sounds) and rhymes (ending sounds), which are essential for spelling and early writing development.

2. Language Comprehension (Upper Strands)

Language comprehension involves understanding spoken and written text, requiring strong vocabulary, background knowledge, and verbal reasoning skills. Fiction enhances this by:

Vocabulary Growth and Syntax Development

- Fictional books introduce new words in context, strengthening background knowledge and verbal reasoning, both of which are strands in the language comprehension component (Cain and Oakhill, 2011).
- Richly descriptive narratives expose children to complex grammar structures and advanced sentence syntax, improving their overall reading comprehension and fluency.

- For example 'The Gruffalo' by Julia Donaldson, introduces descriptive adjectives, action verbs, and sensory words that expand children's vocabulary. Examples of Advanced Words: Adjectives: terrible, knobbly, poisonous, brave, cunning. Verbs: strolled, rumbled, knelt, growled, scrambled.

Reading Comprehension and Inferencing Skills

- Inference-making (predicting story outcomes and analyzing character motivations) align with Scarborough's verbal reasoning and comprehension strategies strand, enabling children to connect textual details to broader meanings (Kendeou et al., 2009).
- Interactive read-aloud sessions promote dialogic reading, enhancing active engagement and comprehension monitoring, which strengthen the language structures and meaning-making strands of reading.
- For example 'Stellaluna' by Janell Cannon, helps understand the development of a character. The story helps children to explore the development of a character by analyzing how Stellaluna changes over time: At first, she struggles to fit in with the birds. She then learns their ways but continues to feel different. Eventually, she discovers her true identity as a bat while still respecting the differences of the birds.

c) Imagination and Creativity Studies

Fiction is not only about literacy but also about expanding the boundaries of children's imagination and creative thinking.

Imagination Studies (Singer and Singer, 1990) show that narrative fiction fosters symbolic thinking and mental simulation, encouraging children to envision new possibilities beyond their immediate reality.

- For example: 'Journey' by Aaron Becker encourages children to engage in visual thinking, world-building, and open-ended interpretation. As a wordless book, it actively promotes interpretation, requiring readers to construct the story using their imagination. Each reader interprets events uniquely, aligning with theories of imagination as an interpretative, meaning-making process in creativity studies.
- This wordless picture book follows a young girl who draws a magical door with a red crayon and then steps into a fantastical world in which her imagination drives the adventure.
- Without words, children rely solely on visual storytelling, reinforcing symbolic thinking and mental simulation as they interpret the narrative.

- The book encourages open-ended creativity, as young readers construct their own version of the story, expanding their ability to mentally simulate events and problem-solve in an abstract way.

  Cognitive flexibility research (Goswami, 2008) suggests that exposure to fictional worlds builds creative problem-solving skills, as children learn to adapt their thinking to different scenarios.

- For example: 'Harold and the Purple Crayon' by Crockett Johnson serves as an exemplary model for studying cognitive flexibility, as it depicts a child actively shaping his world through imaginative drawing, problem-solving, and adaptive thinking. Harold modifies his environment in response to challenges, using his purple crayon to adapt to new situations by drawing solutions to obstacles he encounters. Rather than following external instructions, Harold self-directs his learning, reflecting real-world creativity and innovation.

- Harold, a young boy, creates his own reality using a magical purple crayon, illustrating how children adapt their thinking to different scenarios.
- The ever-changing landscapes reflect cognitive flexibility, as Harold quickly problem-solves and navigates obstacles by drawing new solutions (e.g. when he falls, he draws a staircase to climb back up).

  Divergent Thinking, and engagement with fantastical fiction (e.g. Alice's Adventures in Wonderland) have been linked to increased divergent thinking, an essential component of creativity (Walker and Gopnik, 2017).

- For example: "Coraline" by Neil Gaiman challenges both the protagonist and the reader to engage in creative problem-solving, perspective shifts, and unconventional thinking to navigate a surreal and eerie alternate world. Coraline adapts to a changing world, thinking on her feet as she encounters unexpected dangers in the Other World. Rather than relying on conventional solutions, she uses ingenuity and resourcefulness, such as using wits instead of force to outsmart the Other Mother.

- Coraline enters an alternate version of her home, where things seem perfect but gradually become eerie. She must use her wits, courage and creativity, to navigate this strange world and escape.

- The concept of parallel realities encourages divergent thinking, as Coraline must explore multiple possibilities and find unconventional ways in which to solve problems.
- The novel challenges the reader's perception of reality and imagination, making it a strong example of how fantastical fiction fosters creative thinking and problem-solving skills.

d) Emotional and Affective Science

Fiction plays a major role in emotional development, helping children navigate their own emotions while developing empathy for others.

Theory of Mind (ToM) refers to the ability to understand that others have thoughts, emotions and perspectives that may differ from one's own. It plays a crucial role in emotional intelligence, empathy, and social cognition. Theory of Mind Research (Zunshine, 2006) indicates that fictional stories improve children's ability to infer emotions and mental states of others, fostering empathy and social understanding.

- For example 'The Rabbit Listened' by Cori Doerrfeld teaches young readers about empathy, emotional processing, and perspective-taking. Taylor doesn't immediately verbalize emotions, demonstrating that people's internal states aren't always obvious. This helps children develop cognitive empathy by recognizing that someone may be feeling something even if they don't express it outwardly.
- This emotionally rich picture book follows Taylor, a child who experiences frustration and sadness when their carefully built structure collapses.
- As different animals try to "fix" the problem, the rabbit simply listens, showing that sometimes empathy and presence are more powerful than solutions.
- This aligns with Theory of Mind (ToM) research, as it helps children infer emotions, recognize others' feelings, and understand the value of emotional support.

Social-Emotional Learning (SEL) Theory (Durlak et al., 2011) focuses on the development of skills such as self-awareness, emotional regulation, empathy, relationship-building, and responsible decision-making. It highlights that engagement with fictional characters helps children develop emotional regulation skills, allowing them to process feelings in a safe environment.

- For a example “Inside Out and Back Again” by Thanhha Lai aligns with SEL research, as Hà’s journey encourages children to develop emotional regulation and resilience, helping them understand that challenges can be faced and overcome. By following her perspective, readers also practice empathy, as they step into the shoes of a character experiencing loss, adaptation, and perseverance in an unfamiliar world.
- This verse novel tells the story of Hà, a young girl forced to flee Vietnam and resettle in the U.S. during the Vietnam War.

- The book explores grief, resilience, displacement, and identity, helping children process complex emotions in a safe and constructive way.
- It supports SEL research (Durlak et al., 2011) by helping children develop emotional regulation, resilience and empathy as they follow Hà’s struggles and triumphs.
- The novel also provides psychological distance (Oatley, 1999) by allowing readers to experience strong emotions like fear, sadness and hope through Hà’s journey, preparing them for real-life emotional challenges.

Narratives provide psychological distance (Oatley, 1999), enabling children to experience strong emotions (fear, sadness, joy) in a controlled, constructive manner, preparing them for real-life emotional challenges.

- For example ‘My Name is Sangoel’ by Karen Lynn Williams and Khadra Mohammed achieves psychological distance, allowing young readers to explore complex emotions like displacement and cultural adaptation in a way that feels safe and constructive. This gradual emotional engagement helps children process change, build resilience, and develop empathy for those experiencing similar struggles.
- This picture book follows Sangoel, a young Sudanese refugee, as he and his family resettle in the United States after fleeing war. While he is physically safe, he struggles with cultural adaptation, loneliness, and identity, in his new environment.
- His greatest challenge is that no one pronounces his name correctly, making him feel unseen and disconnected from his heritage.
- It supports psychological distance theory (Oatley, 1999) by allowing children to engage with themes of migration and belonging without direct exposure to distressing realities.
- Through Sangoel’s journey, readers experience emotions like fear, frustration and perseverance, fostering empathy and emotional resilience.

e) Social Learning and Moral Development

Fiction is one of the earliest and most influential tools for teaching morality, ethics, and prosocial behavior.

Social Learning Theory (Albert Bandura, 1977) suggests that children learn social behaviours by observing characters in stories, making fiction an important tool for modeling kindness, honesty, and resilience.

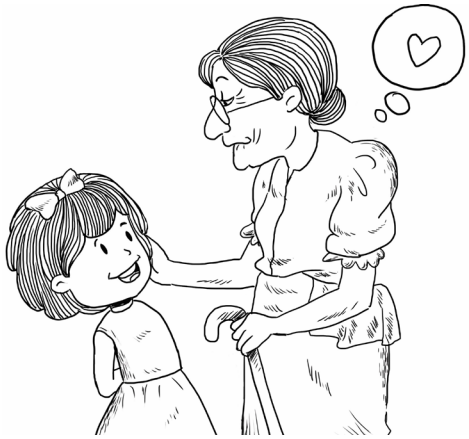
- For example 'Each Kindness' by Jacqueline Woodson Woodson is a poignant story that follows Chloe, a girl who repeatedly ignores and excludes a new classmate, Maya. Chloe dismisses Maya's attempts at friendship, and when Maya eventually moves away, Chloe realizes too late the impact of her unkindness. Through Chloe's regret, young readers observe the emotional consequences of exclusion and missed opportunities for kindness.
- The book aligns with Albert Bandura's Social Learning Theory (1977) as children observe Chloe's behavior, consequences and emotional growth, learning about kindness, empathy and social responsibility.
- It teaches children that their actions have consequences, reinforcing the importance of compassion and inclusion.

Theory of Moral Development explains how fictional stories guide children through different stages of ethical reasoning, helping them understand justice, fairness, and ethical dilemmas.

- For example 'The Empty Pot by Demi' helps young readers to sympathize with Ping's anxiety, as they understand that failing the test might have negative consequences. As other children making choices based on external reward — bringing fake plants to impress the emperor — the story unfolds. Ping struggles with his decision to tell the truth, reinforcing the importance of social honesty over personal gain.
- This story speaks of a young boy in ancient China, who is given a single seed by the emperor as part of a test to determine the next ruler. Despite his best efforts, Ping's seed does not grow, while other children present beautiful flowers.
- Instead of being dishonest, Ping brings his empty pot to the emperor, only to discover that the seeds were cooked and could not grow—meaning Ping was the only child who demonstrated honesty and integrity.
- This story explains that children progress through different stages of ethical reasoning, learning concepts of justice, fairness, and ethical dilemmas through experience and observation.

Neuroscientific research on prosocial behavior (Immordino-Yang and Damasio, 2007) suggests that emotional engagement with fictional characters strengthens moral reasoning and ethical decision-making.

- For example 'Come With Me' by Holly M. McGhee teaches that small gestures of kindness have a ripple effect, strengthening children's belief in their ability to create positive change. The simplicity of the story reinforces everyday ethical decision-making, such as choosing kindness in uncertain situations.



- A young girl is overwhelmed by fear and negativity in the world. She sees troubling news on TV about violence, division, and unkindness, making her feel powerless and uncertain about how to respond.
- Her parents gently guide her toward small acts of kindness, such as holding the door for a stranger, smiling at someone, or simply being present.
- As she witnesses and engages in prosocial behaviors, she realizes that small actions can make a meaningful difference in the world.
- The story places children in the protagonist's perspective, making them feel her uncertainty and concern about the world.
- By emotionally connecting with her, young readers experience her transformation — from fear and passivity to agency and kindness.
- Neuroscientific research shows that stories activating emotional regions of the brain enhance prosocial learning. As readers follow the girl's journey, their mirror neurons respond to her emotions, reinforcing real-world prosocial behavior.

The Science Behind Fiction – A Holistic Perspective on Children's Fiction as a multidimensional learning tool, drawing from diverse academic fields:

- Developmental Psychology and Cognitive Science (understanding how children process stories)
- Literacy Studies and Language Acquisition (enhancing vocabulary and reading skills)
- Imagination and Creativity Research (expanding mental flexibility and problem-solving)
- Affective and Emotional Science (fostering emotional intelligence and empathy)
- Social Learning and Moral Development (shaping ethical reasoning and social behaviour)

1.2.2 Contribute to a Child's World through the Power of Children's Fiction

Children's fiction books come in various forms, catering to different age groups, reading levels, and thematic interests. These books are designed to engage, educate and entertain young readers while fostering creativity, emotional intelligence, and literacy development. Each type serves a different developmental and educational purpose, from introducing early literacy through picture books to fostering imagination and critical thinking in middle-grade and YA novels. Understanding these categories helps writers, educators, and parents, select the right fiction for different reading stages, ensuring a meaningful literary experience for young readers. Following are the primary types of children's fiction books that are age bound:

Picture Books (Ages 0–6)

Picture books are highly illustrated stories where visuals play an essential role in storytelling. They are often intended for pre-readers and early readers, using simple text with engaging illustrations to help children understand the narrative.

Examples:

- **Narrative Picture Books** – Tell a story with a beginning, middle, and end (e.g. Where the Wild Things Are by Maurice Sendak).
- **Concept Books –** Teach basic concepts like numbers, colors, and shapes (e.g. Brown Bear, Brown Bear, What Do You See? by Bill Martin Jr. and Eric Carle).
- **Wordless Picture Books – Tell a story entirely through images** (e.g. Journey by Aaron Becker).

Early Readers (Ages 5–7)

Early reader books, also called beginning chapter books, are designed for children transitioning from picture books to independent reading. They feature simple sentences, repetitive vocabulary, and illustrations that support comprehension.

Examples:

- **Simple Narrative Books –** Short chapters with straightforward plots (e.g. Frog and Toad Are Friends by Arnold Lobel)
- **Phonics-Based Readers –** Books designed for early literacy development (e.g. The Cat in the Hat by Dr. Seuss).
- **Character-Based Series –** Follow recurring characters in different adventures (e.g. Elephant and Piggie by Mo Willems).

Chapter Books (Ages 6–9)

Chapter books are shorter novels with minimal illustrations, intended for independent readers who are comfortable with longer texts. They have simple sentence structures, engaging plots, and relatable characters that help build reading confidence.

Examples:

- **Realistic Fiction –** Everyday adventures of relatable characters (e.g. Junie B. Jones by Barbara Park).
- **Fantasy and Adventure –** Light fantasy with magical elements (e.g. The Magic Tree House series by Mary Pope Osborne).
- **Mystery Books –** Introduce problem-solving elements (e.g. Nate the Great by Marjorie Weinman Sharmat)

Middle-Grade Fiction (Ages 8–12)

Middle-grade books feature longer narratives, deeper character development, and more complex themes. These books introduce strong moral dilemmas, friendship dynamics, and adventure-driven plots, helping children transition into more sophisticated reading.

Examples:

- **Fantasy and Science Fiction –** Stories with magical worlds, mythological themes, or futuristic settings (e.g. Percy Jackson and The Olympians by Rick Riordan).
- **Mystery and Adventure –** Suspenseful and thrilling narratives (e.g. The Boxcar Children by Gertrude Chandler Warner).
- **Realistic Fiction –** Stories that reflect everyday challenges and social issues (e.g. Wonder by R. J. Palacio).
- **Historical Fiction –** Set in real historical periods but featuring fictional characters (e.g. Number the Stars by Lois Lowry).

Young Adult (YA) Fiction (Ages 12+)

YA fiction explores more mature themes, character growth, and complex plots. These books often feature protagonists aged 12–18, dealing with themes of identity, relationships, and self-discovery.

Examples:

- **Dystopian Fiction –** Set in futuristic or oppressive societies (e.g. The Hunger Games by Suzanne Collins).
- **Fantasy and Adventure –** Light fantasy with magical elements (e.g. The Magic Tree House series by Mary Pope Osborne).
- **Contemporary Fiction – Coming-of-age stories that reflect real-life struggles** (e.g. The Fault in Our Stars by John Green).

Fairy Tales, Folktales, and Mythology

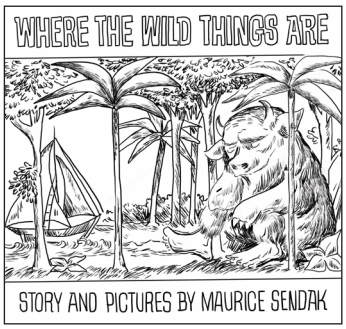
These books are often retellings of traditional stories, featuring magical elements, moral lessons, and cultural heritage. They are used to introduce children to universal themes and historical storytelling traditions.

Examples:

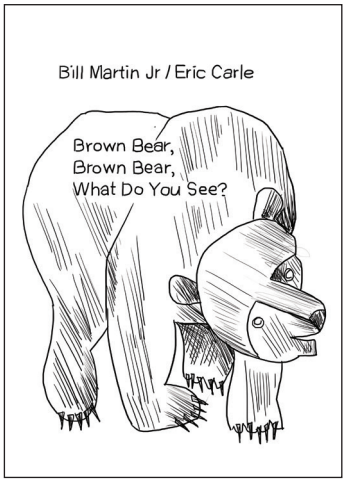
- **Classic Fairy Tales –** Timeless stories with moral lessons (e.g. Cinderella, Hansel and Gretel)
- **Folktales and Legends –** Stories rooted in different cultures (e.g. Anansi the Spider: A Tale from the Ashanti by Gerald McDermott).
- **Mythology– Inspired Fiction –** Modern adaptations of myths (e.g. Percy Jackson by Rick Riordan).

Sample Books for Different Reading Stages

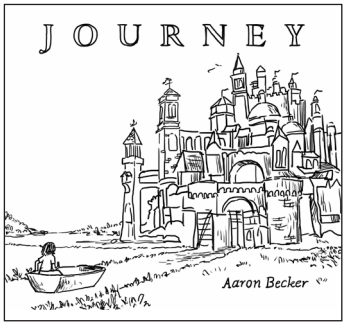
Picture Books (Ages 0–6)



"Where the Wild Things Are" written and illustrated by Maurice Sendak.

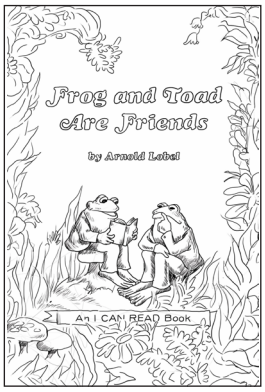


"Brown Bear, Brown Bear, What Do You See?" written by Bill Martin Jr. and illustrated by Eric Carle

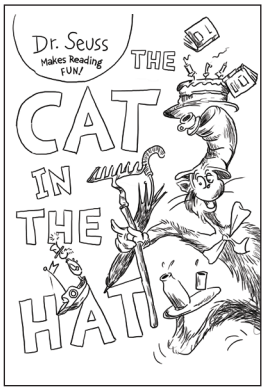


"Journey" written and illustrated by Aaron Becker.

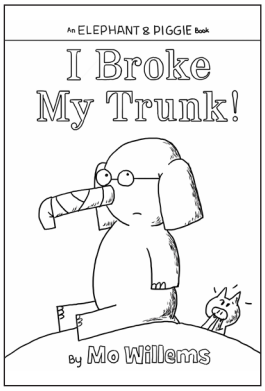
Early Readers (Ages 5–7)



"Frog and Toad Are Friends" written and illustrated by Arnold Lobel

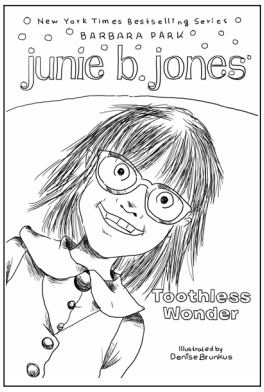


"The Cat in the Hat" written and illustrated by Dr. Seuss

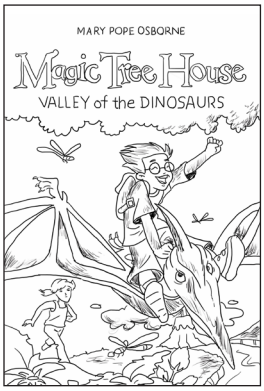


"Elephant and Piggie" written and illustrated by Mo Willems

Chapter Books (Ages 6–9)



"Junie B. Jones" written by Barbara Park and illustrated by Denise Brunkus

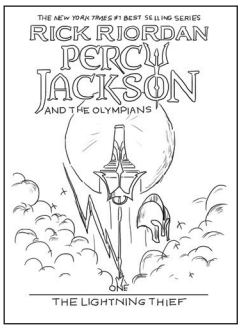


"The Magic Tree House" series, written by Mary Pope Osborne and illustrated by Sal Murdocca

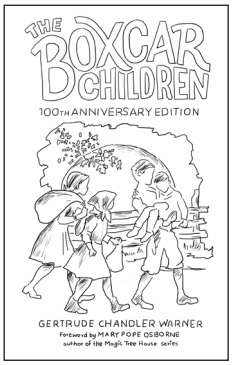
"Nate the Great" written by Marjorie Weinman Sharmat and illustrated by Marc Simont

Sample Books for Different Reading Stages

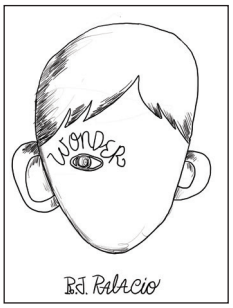
Middle-Grade Fiction (Ages 8–12)



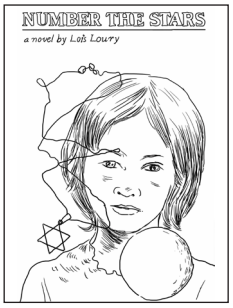
"Percy Jackson and The Olympians" by Rick Riordan



"The Boxcar Children" by Gertrude Chandler Warner

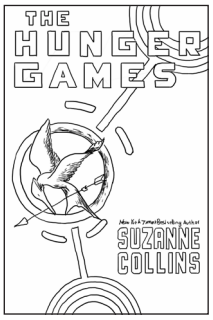


"Wonder "by R.J. Palacio

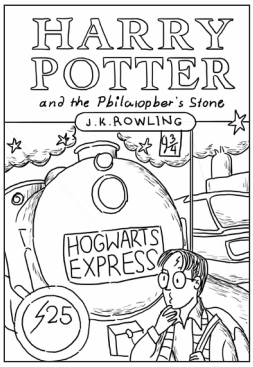


"Number the Stars" by Lois Lowry

Young Adult (YA) Fiction (Ages 12+)



"The Hunger Games" by Suzanne Collins

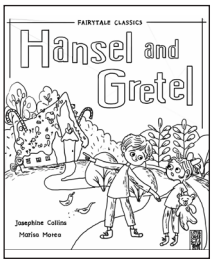


"Harry Potter" by J.K. Rowling

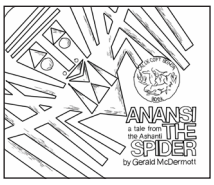
"The Fault in Our Stars" by John Green

Fairy Tales, Folktales and Mythology

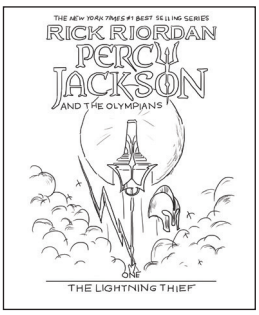
"Cinderella"



"Hansel and Gretel"



"Anansi the Spider: A Tale from the Ashanti" written and illustrated by Gerald McDermott



"Percy Jackson" by Rick Riordan

1.2.3 The Development of Reading: A Skill and a Habit

Reading is both a skill and a habit — one that requires structured development and continuous practice. The ability to read opens doors to knowledge, imagination and lifelong learning, making it a crucial component of early childhood education. Children's fiction books play a vital role in fostering both reading proficiency and a love for reading, as engaging stories captivate young readers, build comprehension, and strengthen vocabulary.

Reading as a Skill

Involves word recognition, phonemic awareness, vocabulary development, and comprehension. It requires structured practice and guidance for mastery.

Reading as a Habit

Involves willing engagement, enjoyment and consistent practice. A strong reading habit leads to better literacy, academic success and lifelong learning.

Both aspects must be nurtured simultaneously, to ensure that children not only develop the ability to read but also the motivation to continue reading independently.

a) Stages of Reading: A Flexible Journey

Reading development is often categorized into three stages:

01. Pre-Reading
02. Learning to Read
03. Independent Reading

1. Pre-Reading

Exposure to books, listening to sounds, storytelling, and letter recognition.

At the pre-reading stage, children begin developing early literacy skills through exposure to books, oral storytelling and sound recognition. This stage is crucial for building phonemic awareness, print familiarity and a curiosity for reading.

- **Enhance Language Skills –** Fiction introduces new words, sounds, and sentence structures, helping children recognize patterns in language and develop early vocabulary. Listening to rhymes, repetition and rich storytelling strengthens phonological awareness, a key skill for decoding words later on.
- **Make Reading Enjoyable –** Engaging storytelling and illustrations capture children's interest, making them eager to explore books. Exposure to colorful visuals, expressive narration, and interactive reading experiences fosters a positive emotional connection to books, encouraging a lifelong love for reading.

2. Learning to Read

Developing phonics skills, word decoding, and basic comprehension.

At the learning-to-read stage, children begin to decode words, recognize letter-sound relationships, and build basic comprehension skills. This phase requires structured reading experiences that reinforce fluency, word recognition, and meaning-making.

- **Improve Comprehension –** Fiction books with predictable patterns, repetitive text, and simple narratives help children decode words and construct meaning from the text. Engaging with stories that follow familiar structures supports their ability to predict events and understand cause-and-effect relationships, strengthening comprehension skills.
- **Enhance Language Skills –** Exposure to structured storytelling and sentence construction helps children develop fluency and a deeper understanding of syntax. By encountering varied sentence structures and expressive language, young readers expand their vocabulary and improve their ability to process written text with accuracy and confidence.

3. Independent Reading

Confident reading, interpretation, and engagement with complex texts.

At the independent reading stage, children have developed the skills to read fluently and comprehend texts with greater depth. This phase focuses on strengthening interpretation, critical thinking, and emotional engagement with literature, allowing children to read not just for skill development but for enjoyment and personal growth.

- **Support Emotional and Social Growth –** Fiction introduces diverse characters and narratives, helping children understand different perspectives and process emotions. By engaging with stories that explore empathy, relationships, and moral dilemmas, young readers deepen their social awareness and emotional intelligence.
- **Make Reading Enjoyable –** As children gain confidence in their reading abilities, fiction books fuel their curiosity and imagination, making reading a pleasurable and self-motivated habit, rather than just a learned skill. Encouraging children to explore books of their choice reinforces lifelong reading habits, and fosters a love for storytelling and knowledge acquisition.

However, these stages are not strictly age-dependent. Children learn to read at different ages and paces, influenced by factors such as exposure to books, home literacy environment, and individual cognitive development. Therefore, reading instruction should be adaptive and inclusive, allowing children to progress at their own speed.

No matter their stage, children benefit from structured reading activities that gradually build confidence and skill.

> **Reading is not strictly age-dependent, children learn to read at different ages and at their pace**

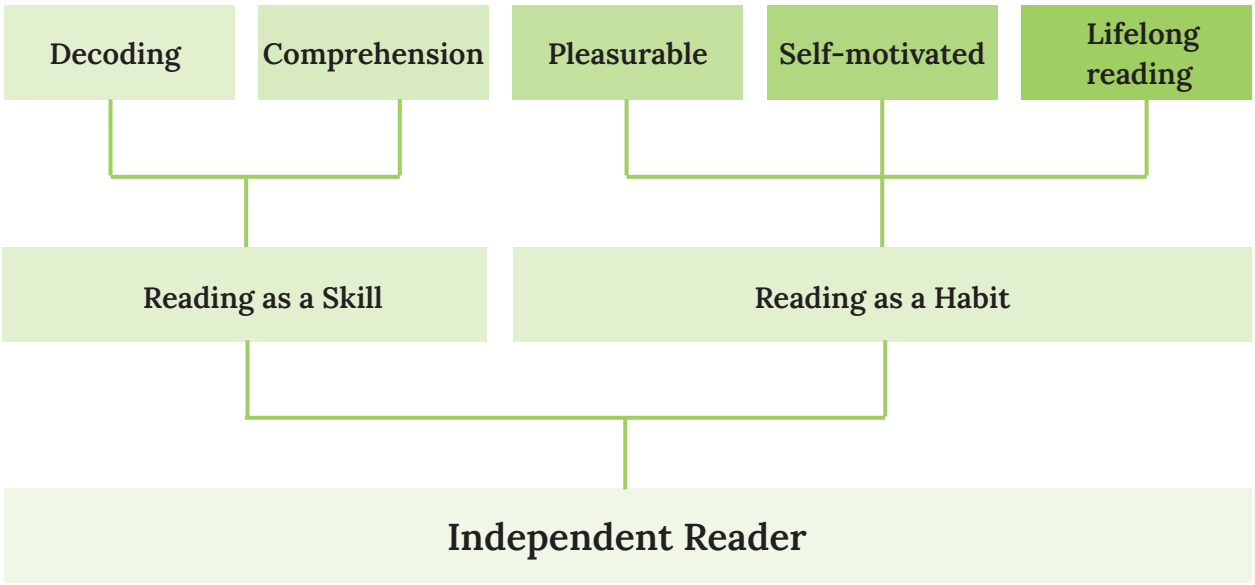


Figure 1.21 : Summary: Towards an Independent Reader (Source : Guide book for reading room)

b) Essential Reading Activities for All Learners

Regardless of a child's reading stage, structured reading activities provide the necessary support, guidance, and engagement to help them develop fluency, comprehension, and confidence. These activities create a gradual learning progression, ensuring that children move from listening and recognizing words to reading independently with full comprehension and enjoyment.

The Four Stages of Structured Reading Activities are :

01. Read Aloud
02. Shared Reading
03. Paired Reading
04. Independent Reading

01 Read Aloud

Building Listening and Language Awareness Skills

In this activity, the teacher reads a story expressively while students listen, observe, and engage with the narrative. This early literacy practice is crucial for pre-readers and early learners, as it lays the foundation for language development, comprehension and vocabulary growth.

Benefits of 'Read Aloud'

- Models correct pronunciation, intonation and expression, helping students understand how language sounds in context.
- Encourages listening comprehension, allows students to absorb sentence structures, storytelling techniques and new vocabulary.
- Fosters engagement and curiosity, as children interact with the story through predictive questioning and discussions.
- Strengthens imagination and emotional connection to literature, making reading an enjoyable experience.

02 Shared Reading

Encouraging Participation and Fluency

Shared reading involves both the teacher and students reading together, often using big books or projected text, to encourage active engagement. This method allows gradual participation, helping children develop fluency while feeling supported.

Benefits of 'Read Aloud'

- Improves word recognition and sight vocabulary, as students begin to associate written words with their spoken sounds.
- Develops fluency by allowing students to hear and practice proper pacing, phrasing and pronunciation.
- Boosts confidence, as children experience a sense of achievement by reading along with the teacher.
- Encourages group participation, creating a collaborative and interactive reading environment where students support one another.

03 Paired Reading

Developing Confidence Through Collaboration

Paired reading involves small-group or one-on-one sessions where students read under the teacher's guidance, focusing on specific reading skills and comprehension strategies. It is particularly helpful for students transitioning from basic decoding to more independent reading.

Benefits of 'Paired Reading'

- Provides individualized instruction, allowing teachers to address specific reading difficulties such as decoding, fluency and comprehension
- Enhances problem-solving skills, as students learn to self-correct and apply reading strategies.
- Encourages deeper comprehension, through guided discussions on themes, character development, and textual meaning.
- Supports different learning paces, ensuring that struggling readers receive additional practice, while proficient readers engage with more challenging texts.

04 Independent Reading

Strengthening Focus and Personal Connection

Independent reading allows children to choose books based on their interests and reading level, giving them a sense of ownership and motivation in their reading journey. At this stage, reading transforms from an academic task into a personal habit.

Benefits of 'Independent Reading

- Strengthens reading stamina, as students build the ability to focus and engage with longer texts.
- Develops critical thinking skills, as children interpret, analyze, and reflect on what they read.
- Encourages self-motivation, allowing students to explore books at their own pace and based on their personal interests.
- Fosters deeper emotional and intellectual engagement, helping students connect with characters, explore different perspectives, and broaden their worldview.

1.3 Our Responsibility

Defining Roles in Providing Meaningful Children's Fiction

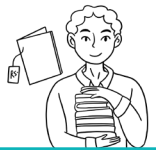
The development of meaningful children's fiction requires a multifaceted ecosystem, where various professionals contribute to crafting, publishing, disseminating and evaluating fiction books. The tables in this section outline the key players involved in this process, highlighting their distinct yet interconnected roles. The Creative Team forms the foundation of storytelling, bringing narratives to life through writing, editing, illustration and artistic direction. The Publishing Ecosystem ensures that these stories reach young readers, encompassing publishers, printers, distributors and marketing professionals. Knowledge dissemination focuses on the educational and societal impact of children's fiction, where researchers, policymakers, educators and parents, play crucial roles in promoting literacy and engagement. Finally, Knowledge Reviewers critically assess fiction books to maintain literary and developmental standards. By understanding these roles, stakeholders can collectively enhance the quality, accessibility, and impact of children's fiction in Sri Lanka, ensuring that stories continue to shape young minds in meaningful ways.

"Creating meaningful children's books is never a solitary act, it is the shared work of all involved. Through collaboration, we can offer children stories that are rich, inclusive, and lasting companions on their journey through life."

1. The Creative Team (Fiction Content Development)

Icon	Role	Responsibilities
	Fiction Writers/ Author	Crafting engaging narratives that resonate with children, using storytelling techniques that foster imagination, emotional connection and moral development.
	Editors/ Language Reviewers	Ensuring clarity, coherence, age-appropriateness and literary quality in fiction manuscripts.
	Illustrators	Bringing fictional worlds to life through compelling and imaginative visuals.
	Art Directors	Overseeing the visual direction and cohesiveness of fiction picture books, ensuring visuals complement the story.
	Creative Consultants	Advising on cultural representation, inclusivity and child engagement in fictional narratives.
	Academics and Researchers	Contributing knowledge on fiction's role in child development, including cognitive engagement, literacy acquisition, imagination-building, and the psychology of fictional storytelling.
	Educational Specialists	Ensuring fiction stories align with age-appropriate emotional and cognitive development.
	Literary Agents	Representing authors and illustrators, helping to secure publishing deals for children's fiction.

2. The Publishing Ecosystem (Production,Distribution of Fiction Books)

Icon	Role	Responsibilities
	Publishers	Facilitating the journey of fiction manuscripts from concept to publication, ensuring alignment with market needs and literary quality.
	Editors/ Language Reviewers	Refining fiction manuscripts for narrative structure, readability and engagement.
	Printers	Producing high-quality copies of children's fiction books.
	Legal Advisor/ Intellectual Property Rights Advisor	Ensures all visual and textual content comply with copyright law agreements; verifies registration and permissions; secures ethical clearances for sourced materials; and oversees legal submissions.
	Distributors	Ensuring fiction books reach bookstores, libraries and online platforms.
	Booksellers/Sales Representatives	Promoting and selling fiction books in retail and online markets.
	Marketing and Publicity Teams	Conducting market research, consumer insights and promotional campaigns for fiction books.
	Academics and Researchers	Conducting market research on fiction readership trends, storytelling impact and literacy development.
	Professional Associations	Organizations such as the Sri Lanka Publishers Association supporting fiction publishing standards, networking and industry advocacy.
	Government Publishing Units	Producing and distributing state-funded fiction books for children, supporting literacy programs.
	Translator/ Proof Reader	Translates text with accuracy and tone. Ensures the translation fits layout constraints. The proofreader conducts the final language and formatting check before printing.

3. Knowledge Dissemination (Promoting the Impact of Fiction Books on Young Readers)

Icon	Role	Responsibilities
	Academics and Researchers	Studying fiction's impact on cognitive, emotional and moral development, including how children engage with imaginary worlds.
	Policymakers/ Certifying Authorities/ Literacy Agencies	Represents local or international bodies that help secure publishing opportunities and support literacy initiatives through funding, advocacy and the promotion of storytelling in early education.
	Teachers	Integrating fiction books into classroom learning, using them to enhance literacy, imagination and critical thinking.
	Parents and Caregivers	Encouraging fiction reading at home to develop storytelling skills, empathy and a love for books.
	Librarians	Curating fiction collections that promote diverse and engaging narratives, making them accessible to young readers.
	Educational Specialists	Advising on the use of fiction books in literacy strategies and early learning.
	Government Publishing Units	Supporting fiction reading initiatives, school library networks and storytelling festivals.
	Professional Associations	Setting fiction publishing industry standards, promoting literacy programs, and advocating for diverse and inclusive storytelling. Supporting fiction reading initiatives, school library networks and storytelling festivals.
	Marketing and Publicity Teams	Expanding the reach of children's fiction by creating promotional campaigns, book trailers, merchandise, author events, and media coverage to engage a wider audience.
	Awarding Bodies / Cultural Institutions	Promoting excellence in children's fiction by recognizing and honoring outstanding literary works that contribute to literary quality, education and cultural representation.

4. Knowledge Reviewers (Assessing Fiction Books for Quality and Impact)

Icon	Role	Responsibilities
	Critics and Book Reviewers	Evaluating fiction books based on literary quality, educational value and storytelling impact.
	Academics and Researchers	Assessing fiction's role in social-emotional learning, imaginative play and literacy acquisition.
	Publishers	Reviewing fiction manuscripts for clarity, engagement and market fit.
	Art Directors	Ensuring visual storytelling effectiveness and artistic quality in fiction books.
	Policymakers/ Certifying Authorities	Evaluating fiction books for inclusivity, accessibility and alignment with literacy policies.
	Professional Associations	Collaborating to set or review industry guidelines and publishing standards for children's fiction.
	Government Publishing Units	Reviewing state-funded fiction books to ensure they align with national literacy programs and educational curricula.
	Editors/ Language Reviewers	Reviewing fiction manuscripts for clarity, engagement and market fit.
	Awarding Bodies/ Cultural Institutions	Judging and recognizing outstanding children's fiction, ensuring that award-winning books meet high literary, artistic, educational standards and caters to the set standards of this publication. Acknowledge individuals or teams in the Creative Team, and Publishing Ecosystem.

Summary - Section 01

The Power of Children's Fiction: Understanding Its Impact, Science, and Responsibility

Children's fiction is not just about storytelling; it is a fundamental element in shaping young minds, fostering literacy, emotional intelligence, creativity, and cultural identity. As this section has stated, children's fiction books serve as powerful tools for education and entertainment, helping children develop critical thinking skills, empathy and a lifelong love for reading.

The creation of high-quality children's fiction is a shared responsibility among multiple stakeholders — writers, illustrators, editors, art directors, publishers, educators, librarians and parents — each playing a vital role in ensuring that stories are engaging, developmentally appropriate and culturally meaningful. The collaboration of these stakeholders is essential in providing children with books that not only entertain but also enrich their learning experiences.

Moreover, this section directly contributes to the National Policy on Children's Books, aligning with key goals that prioritize quality, accessibility, and sustainability in children's literature. Specifically, it supports:

Goal 2.2.1 – Enhancing quality and accessibility.

Goal 2.2.2 – Aligning with global standards.

Goal 2.2.3 – Supporting child development.

Goal 2.2.5 – Encouraging lifelong reading.

Goal 2.2.7 – Building a collaborative ecosystem.

Goal 2.2.8 – Positioning Sri Lanka as a global contributor.

By integrating these goals into the broader discussion on children's fiction, this section reinforces the need for a structured, high-quality, and inclusive approach to publishing books for young readers. Whether through creating compelling narratives, curating meaningful selections, or fostering a culture of reading, all stakeholders must work together to ensure that every child has access to literature that is engaging, diverse and impactful.

Children's fiction is a powerful medium one that holds the potential to educate, inspire and transform young lives. When nurtured with care, creativity and collaboration, it becomes a lasting legacy that shapes future generations.

Section 02

Section 02

Quality Children's Fiction

Inclusivity, Accessibility and Cultural Impact

Whether you are a writer, illustrator, editor, art director, publisher, educator, librarian or parent, this section serves as a comprehensive guide to fostering inclusivity, accessibility and cultural relevance in children's fiction. It highlights the collective responsibility of all stakeholders in ensuring that children's books reflect diverse identities, promote social and emotional growth, accommodate special needs, and maintain high standards of readability, design and global relevance.

Chapter 2 expands on the foundation of children's fiction by defining quality beyond literary excellence — embracing inclusivity, accessibility and cultural impact. It explores ergonomic design, special needs accommodations, and print quality, ensuring books are physically accessible to all children. Additionally, the chapter highlights the significance of print quality and its economic potential for Sri Lanka's publishing industry, as well as the global reach of children's fiction, ensuring stories are both culturally authentic and universally resonant. Finally, the chapter presents key themes in children's fiction, from universally relatable topics to Sri Lanka's rich history, culture, and environmental narratives, concluding with practical considerations for inclusive and respectful storytelling. Writers, illustrators, publishers and educators will gain insights into their role in creating books that engage, empower and reflect the diverse experiences of young readers worldwide.

Contents of this Section

2.1. Diversity and Socio-Cultural Representation:
Reflecting the World in Fiction

2.2. Child Emotions and Skills:
Social-Emotional Learning and Soft Skills

2.3. Gender Equality in Fiction:
Representation and Breaking Stereotypes

2.4. Accessibility in Children's Books:
Special Needs and Ergonomic Considerations

2.5. Production Quality and Global Reach:
Print Standards and Cultural Relevance

2.6. Global Relevance in Children's Fiction:
Expanding Stories Beyond Borders

2.7. Sample Themes in Children's Fiction:
Exploring Universal, Cultural and Environmental Narratives

2.8. Practical Considerations:
Tips for Inclusive and Respectful Storytelling

At the end of this section you should be able to:

- Recognize the Importance of Inclusive Representation in Children's Fiction.
- Identify How Fiction Enhances Social-Emotional and Soft Skill Development.
- Evaluate Print Quality and Global Relevance in Children's Book Production.
- Explore the Power of Themes to Connect Local Culture with Universal Narratives.
- Apply Practical Guidelines for Respectful and Culturally Sensitive Storytelling.

2.1 Diversity and Socio-Cultural Representation

Reflecting the World in Fiction

2.1.1 What is Diversity?

Diversity in children's fiction refers to the representation of various racial, ethnic, cultural, linguistic, ability-based, gender, and socioeconomic identities in storytelling (Bishop, 1990). Books that embrace diversity provide inclusive narratives, ensuring that children see themselves and others reflected in meaningful ways, fostering a sense of belonging and self-worth (Sims Bishop, 1990; Botelho and Rudman, 2009).

Diverse literature is essential for promoting cross-cultural understanding and acceptance, as it exposes children to perspectives different from their own, encouraging empathy and social awareness (Ladson-Billings, 1995; Gay, 2010). When children engage with authentic and culturally responsive narratives, they develop critical thinking skills, challenge stereotypes and learn to appreciate the richness of human experiences (Nieto, 2017).

a) Diversity in Fiction

Diversity in children's fiction ensures that stories reflect a wide range of cultural, racial, linguistic and social identities. Representation in literature is essential for helping children recognize both their own experiences and those of others, fostering empathy and cross-cultural understanding (Sims Bishop, 1990).

- Fiction expands cognitive development by exposing children to multiple perspectives, worldviews and historical contexts, helping them develop critical thinking about identity, history, economic and social diversity, and representation (e.g. Last Stop on Market Street by Matt de la Peña).
- Books featuring diverse characters and settings help children navigate cultural differences and broaden their awareness of societal diversity.
- Fiction fosters imagination and identity formation, allowing children from underrepresented backgrounds to see themselves as heroes in various genres, including fantasy, adventure and historical fiction.

b) Why Diversity in Fiction Matters?

Diversity in fiction fosters inclusive storytelling, allowing children to see themselves reflected in stories while also experiencing different perspectives, cultures and histories. This broadens their worldview, nurtures empathy and strengthens their sense of belonging in an increasingly interconnected world (Sims Bishop, 1990).

- **Encourages empathy and cross-cultural understanding** by exposing children to diverse experiences and viewpoints.
- **Promotes self-identity and belonging** for marginalized groups, ensuring all children feel seen, valued and empowered.
- **Challenges stereotypes and biases** by offering nuanced representations of race, gender, ability and identity.
- **Enriches storytelling depth and authenticity,** making narratives more engaging, relatable, and representative of real-world diversity.

Example: 'Last Stop on Market Street' by Matt de la Peña, illustrated by Christian Robinson. How It Demonstrates Diversity

Cultural Representation:
The story follows a young African American boy, CJ, and his grandmother as they ride the bus through a vibrant urban neighborhood, exposing readers to different walks of life.

Economic and Social Diversity:
It highlights themes of gratitude, kindness, and finding beauty in everyday life, portraying diverse communities in a respectful and uplifting way.

Perspective and Empathy:
Through CJ's observations and his grandmother's wisdom, children learn to appreciate different perspectives, and understand that happiness and wealth are not solely material.

Illustration Style:
The book's artwork, done in a folk-art style, celebrates racial and cultural diversity, reinforcing the themes of inclusivity and representation.

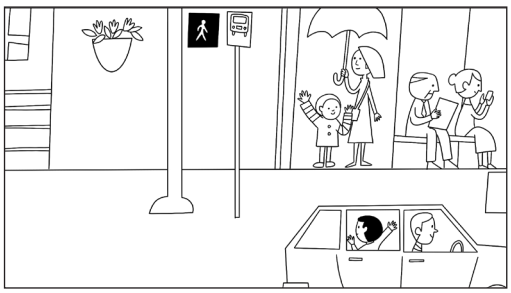


Figure 2.1: ***Last Stop on Market Street by Matt de la Peña, illustrated by Christian Robinson.*** This book aligns perfectly with "Why Diversity in Fiction Matters", as it broadens perspectives, fosters empathy, and promotes self-identity and belonging.

2.1.2 What is Socio-Cultural Relevance?

Socio-cultural relevance in fiction refers to the alignment of stories with children's lived experiences, cultural backgrounds, and societal issues (Bishop, 1990). Literature that acknowledges historical and cultural contexts allows children to connect their personal identity with broader social realities, fostering a sense of belonging, and making learning more relatable and meaningful (Ladson-Billings, 1995).

Research highlights that culturally responsive literature enhances children's engagement, motivation, and comprehension by validating their identities and experiences (Gay, 2010). When children see authentic representations of their culture, they develop a stronger sense of self, while exposure to diverse perspectives promotes intercultural understanding and empathy (Sims Bishop, 1990; Botelho and Rudman, 2009).

a) Socio-Cultural Relevance in Fiction

Socio-cultural relevance ensures that children's fiction aligns with their lived experiences, traditions and societal issues. Stories that acknowledge historical, cultural and contemporary social realities help children connect with narratives on a personal level.

- Fiction enriches language acquisition and literacy development by incorporating multicultural storytelling traditions, dialects and linguistic diversity (e.g., My Name is Sangoel by Karen Lynn Williams and Khadra Mohammed).
- Books grounded in real-world cultural experiences create meaningful learning opportunities by presenting characters, settings and themes that reflect the backgrounds of diverse readers.
- Stories rooted in cultural authenticity encourage self-reflection, identity exploration, and critical thinking about social structures.

b) Why Socio-Cultural Relevance in Fiction Matters?

Fiction that reflects real-world cultural and social contexts makes learning more relevant, engaging and relatable for children from diverse backgrounds. It helps them connect with their own heritage while fostering an appreciation for different cultures and societal values.

- **Strengthens cultural identity and heritage awareness,** allowing children to see their traditions and histories represented in meaningful ways.
- **Promotes intercultural appreciation and understanding** by introducing diverse customs, languages and perspectives in an accessible and respectful manner.
- **Provides historical and societal context** through storytelling, making complex social themes easier for young readers to grasp and relate to.
- **Encourages critical thinking about social structures and values**, empowering children to question, reflect, and engage with real-world issues through the lens of fiction.

Example: 'My Name is Sangoel' by Karen Lynn Williams and Khadra Mohammed, illustrated by Catherine Stock. How It Demonstrates Socio-Cultural Relevance

Cultural Identity and Heritage:

The story follows Sangoel, a young Sudanese refugee adjusting to life in the United States while holding onto his Dinka heritage.

Real-World Social Contexts:

It provides an authentic portrayal of the refugee experience, addressing challenges like displacement, cultural adaptation and identity.

Intercultural Appreciation:

The book encourages young readers to understand and empathize with immigrant and refugee experiences, promoting inclusivity and kindness.

Critical Thinking and Self-Expression:

Sangoel creatively finds a way to teach others how to pronounce his name correctly, showing resilience and the importance of cultural pride.

Figure 2.2: ***My Name is Sangoel by Karen Lynn Williams and Khadra Mohammed, illustrated by Catherine Stock.*** This book beautifully aligns with "Why Socio-Cultural Relevance in Fiction Matters", as it helps children connect with both their own backgrounds and the experiences of others in a meaningful way.

'Everywhere, people rushed around, speaking English very fast. The stairs in the airport moved, and mama was afraid to step in them. Doors opened by magic. Bright flashing lights made Sangoel's eyes burn, he shivered and his head ached.'

2.2 Child Emotions and Skills

Social-Emotional Learning and Soft Skills

2.2.1 What is Social-Emotional Learning (SEL)?

SEL refers to the development of emotional intelligence, empathy, self-regulation and interpersonal skills (Durlak et al., 2011). Fiction plays a crucial role in SEL by providing children with opportunities to experience a range of emotions, navigate relationships, and develop resilience through character-driven narratives (Nikolajeva, 2014). Books with strong SEL themes help young readers understand and process complex feelings such as joy, grief, fear and frustration; facilitating emotional regulation and self-awareness (Kidd and Castano, 2013).

Additionally, fiction promotes empathetic thinking by allowing children to engage with characters' emotions and perspectives. This process, known as Theory of Mind (ToM), helps young readers understand the motivations, thoughts and feelings of others, strengthening their ability to connect with people in real life (Zunshine, 2006; Mar et al., 2006). Research suggests that exposure to narrative fiction is linked to higher empathy levels, reinforcing SEL as a fundamental component of children's literature (Kidd and Castano, 2013).

a) SEL in Fiction

Fiction is a powerful tool for Social-Emotional Learning (SEL), immersing children in narratives that model emotional intelligence, empathy and interpersonal skills. Through relatable characters and engaging storytelling, young readers experience a spectrum of emotions, observe how characters navigate relationships, overcome challenges, and build resilience, and develop the social and emotional competencies necessary for real-world interactions and personal growth.

- Fiction strengthens emotional intelligence by allowing children to experience a range of emotions through characters, teaching them how to process grief, joy, fear and love (e.g. The Rabbit Listened by Cori Doerrfeld).
- SEL in fiction promotes empathetic thinking, as children learn to understand the thoughts, motivations and emotions of characters, enhancing their ability to relate to others in real life.
- Books that explore friendship, conflict resolution and cooperation, help children build interpersonal skills, fostering teamwork and social problem-solving.

b) Why SEL in Fiction Matters?

Fiction provides a safe and supportive space for children to explore complex emotions, develop empathy, and practice emotional regulation. Through engaging narratives, young readers can identify with characters' experiences, helping them build resilience and emotional intelligence in ways that translate into real-life interactions.

- **Supports emotional intelligence and self-regulation** by allowing children to recognize and process their own feelings.
- **Helps children understand and manage complex emotions** through relatable characters and real-world challenges.
- **Fosters resilience and problem-solving** skills by presenting characters who navigate setbacks, frustrations and personal growth.
- **Encourages healthy social interactions and conflict resolution** by modeling positive communication, empathy, and cooperation in relationships.

Example: 'The Rabbit Listened' by Cori Doerrfeld. How It Demonstrates Social-Emotional Learning

Supports Emotional Intelligence and Self-Regulation

The story follows a young child, Taylor, who experiences sadness and frustration when their block tower collapses. Various animals offer solutions, but only the rabbit listens, modeling emotional validation and self-regulation.

Helps Children Understand and Manage Complex Emotions

Instead of rushing to fix problems, the book shows that sometimes listening and acknowledging feelings is the best way to cope with disappointment.

Fosters Resilience and Problem-Solving

Taylor eventually finds a way to rebuild the tower when they're ready, demonstrating patience, emotional growth and perseverance.

Encourages Healthy Social Interactions and Conflict Resolution

The rabbit's gentle presence highlights the importance of empathetic listening and support, a key skill in friendships and relationships.

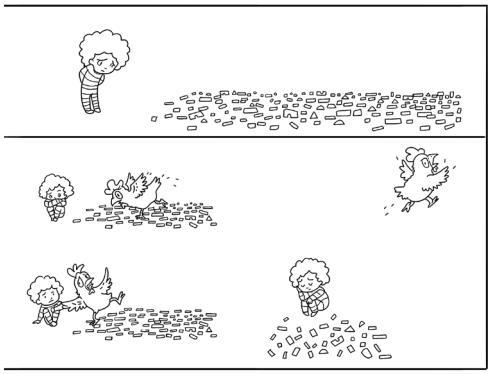
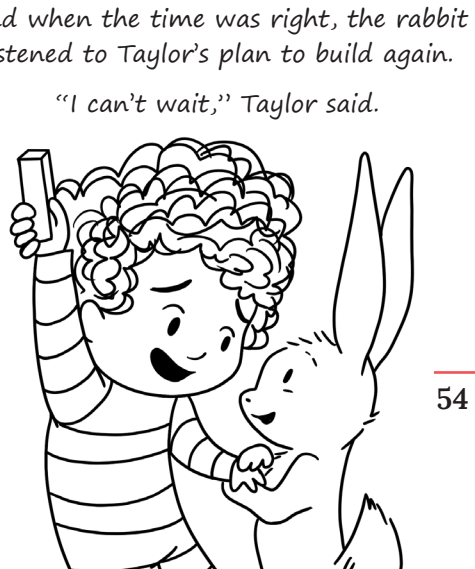


Figure 2.3: ***The Rabbit Listened by Cori Doerrfeld.*** This book beautifully aligns with "Why SEL in Fiction Matters", as it teaches children how to navigate emotions, seek support and develop resilience in a simple yet powerful way.



2.2.2 What is Soft Skill Development?

Soft skills refer to non-academic, interpersonal and life skills such as communication, teamwork, adaptability, problem-solving, and emotional intelligence (Heckman and Kautz, 2012). These skills are essential for social and cognitive development, enabling children to navigate real-world interactions, build relationships, and develop resilience (Duckworth and Yeager, 2015).

Fictional narratives play a crucial role in soft skill development by immersing children in stories where characters collaborate, face challenges, and make decisions that require critical thinking and cooperation (Nikolajeva, 2014). Exposure to diverse perspectives and problem-solving scenarios in literature fosters adaptability, leadership and ethical reasoning, which are key components of social-emotional learning (Jones and Doolittle, 2017).

a) Soft Skill Development in Fiction

Soft skills refer to interpersonal, communication, adaptability, creativity, and problem-solving abilities that help children navigate life successfully. Fiction plays a critical role in shaping these skills by providing examples of teamwork, leadership, ethical decision-making, and adaptability.

- Creative problem-solving and adaptability are nurtured as children engage with stories that present characters overcoming challenges (e.g. The Jumbies by Tracey Baptiste).
- Fiction enhances leadership and ethical reasoning by presenting characters faced with moral dilemmas, encouraging children to think about justice, fairness, and social responsibility (e.g. The Hate U Give by Angie Thomas.
- Books that explore teamwork, resilience and perseverance help children develop collaboration and conflict resolution skills, in a meaningful and engaging way.

b) Why Soft Skill Development in Fiction Matters?

Fiction serves as a powerful tool for developing essential soft skills, equipping children with the ability to navigate social interactions, problem-solving scenarios, and leadership roles. By engaging with diverse characters and challenges, young readers learn adaptability, teamwork and effective communication — skills that extend beyond the pages of a book into real-life experiences.

- **Encourages creative problem-solving and adaptability** by presenting characters who think outside the box and find innovative solutions to challenges.
- **Enhances teamwork and collaboration skills** by depicting friendships, group dynamics and the value of working together toward a common goal.
- **Develops leadership and decision-making abilities** by allowing children to see characters take the initiative, make choices and face the consequences of their actions.

- Builds confidence in communication and self-expression by illustrating how different characters voice their thoughts, navigate conflicts and share ideas effectively.

Example: 'Swimmy' by Leo Lionni. How It Demonstrates Soft Skill Development in Fiction

Encourages Creative Problem-Solving and Adaptability

Swimmy, a small fish, faces adversity when his school is eaten by a larger fish. Instead of giving up, he thinks creatively and finds a way to help other fish stay safe.

Enhances Teamwork and Collaboration Skills

Swimmy teaches the other fish how to work together by swimming in formation to resemble a larger fish, showcasing the power of unity and cooperation.

Develops Leadership and Decision-Making Abilities

As the leader of his new school of fish, Swimmy guides and inspires others to act together for a common goal.

Builds Confidence in Communication and Self-Expression

Swimmy helps his fellow fish overcome fear by showing them how to take control of their situation, empowering them through teamwork and shared purpose.

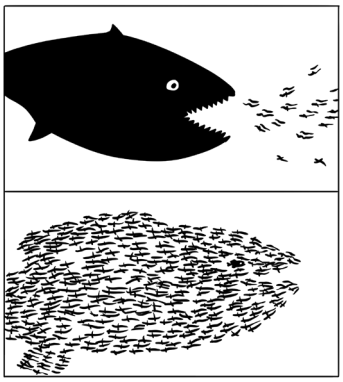
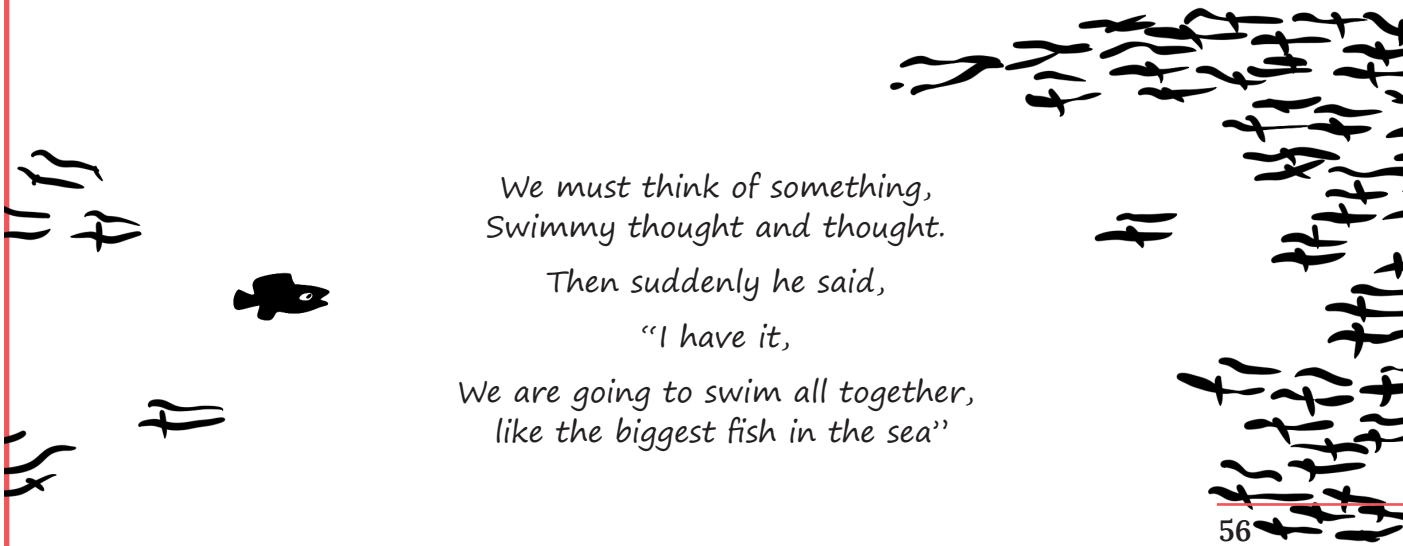


Figure 2.4: ***Swimmy by Leo Lionni.*** This book perfectly aligns with "Why Soft Skill Development in Fiction Matters", as it teaches young readers the value of teamwork, creative thinking, and leadership in overcoming challenges.



2.3 Gender Equality in Fiction

Representation and Breaking Stereotypes

2.3.1 What is Gender Equality?

Gender equality in children's fiction ensures that boys and girls are represented fairly and equitably in stories, promoting inclusive and diverse role models (Crisp et al., 2017). Books that challenge traditional gender roles empower young readers to break stereotypes and envision a world where all individuals, regardless of gender, have equal opportunities to lead, explore and succeed (Hamilton et al., 2006).

Gender-inclusive storytelling plays a crucial role in shaping children's perceptions of identity, career aspirations and societal roles (Diekman and Murnen, 2004). Research has shown that stereotypical portrayals in literature can limit children's beliefs about their capabilities, while diverse and equitable representation fosters confidence, ambition, and empathy (Gooden and Gooden, 2001). By integrating strong, multidimensional characters across all genders, children's fiction encourages fairness, respect and inclusivity, helping shape a more equitable society (Kanwal, 2024).

a) Gender Equality in Fiction

Gender equality in children's fiction challenges traditional gender norms and ensures that boys and girls are represented fairly and equitably in storytelling.

- Fiction broadens cognitive development by encouraging children to rethink gender stereotypes and embrace more inclusive perspectives (e.g. Malala's Magic Pencil by Malala Yousafzai).
- Books with strong female leads, diverse gender roles, and non-binary representation (e.g. Julian Is a Mermaid by Jessica Love) empower children to challenge outdated gender expectations.
- Inclusive storytelling allows all children to see themselves as leaders, explorers and innovators, reinforcing the message that gender should not limit one's ambitions or opportunities.

b) Why Gender Equality in Fiction Matters?

Gender-equality storytelling encourages children to embrace diverse identities and roles, fostering self-confidence, fairness and respect for all individuals. By presenting characters beyond traditional gender norms, fiction empowers young readers to see a world in which everyone has the freedom to pursue their interests and ambitions.

- **Challenges harmful stereotypes and bias** by depicting strong, multifaceted characters of all genders.
- **Fosters respect for all gender identities** by ensuring inclusive representation and normalizing diverse gender expressions.
- **Promotes equal opportunities and representation** by showcasing stories in which all children — regardless of gender — can see themselves as heroes, leaders and change makers.

Example: 'Rosie Revere, Engineer' by Andrea Beaty, illustrated by David Roberts. How It Demonstrates Gender Equality in Fiction

Encourages gender-neutral play and career aspirations

The story follows Rosie, a young girl who loves inventing and engineering, challenging the stereotype that STEM fields are only for boys.

Challenges harmful stereotypes and bias

Rosie initially doubts herself because she's told that engineers aren't supposed to fail. The book reframes failure as a stepping stone to success, reinforcing that girls can be problem-solvers and innovators.

Fosters respect for all gender identities

The story normalizes a girl pursuing science and engineering, showing that interests and careers should not be limited by gender.

Promotes equal opportunities and representation

By celebrating curiosity, creativity and resilience, the book empowers all children — especially girls — to see themselves in traditionally male dominated fields.

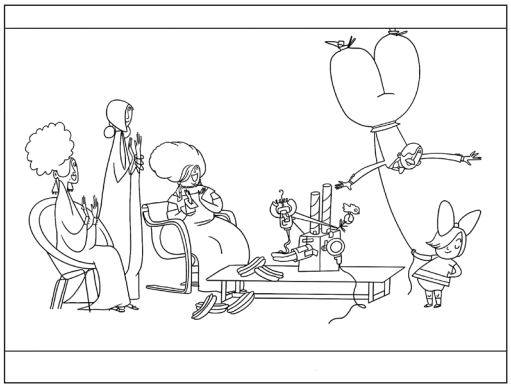
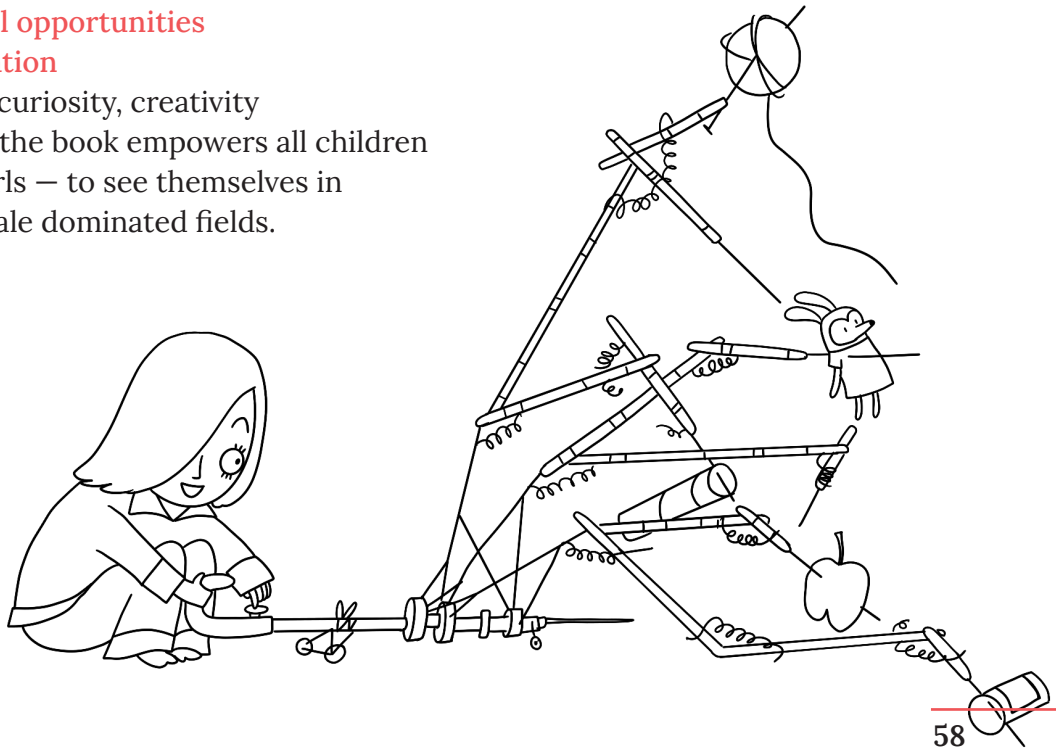


Figure 2.5: ***Rosie Revere, Engineer by Andrea Beaty, illustrated by David Roberts.*** This book perfectly aligns with "Why Gender Equality in Fiction Matters", as it encourages young readers to dream big, take risks and believe in their abilities — regardless of gender.



2.4 Accessibility in Children's Books

Special Needs and Ergonomic Considerations

2.4.1 What Are Special Needs in Book Creation?

Special needs in book creation refer to the design and adaptation of stories to accommodate children with disabilities, neurodivergence and diverse learning abilities (Dyches et al., 2009). These books ensure that every child, regardless of ability, has access to literature that is engaging, inclusive and developmentally appropriate (Barton and Sakellariou, 2018).

Children with visual impairments, hearing impairments, dyslexia, autism or other cognitive and physical disabilities, may require alternative formats and specialized storytelling techniques (Thompson et al., 2013). This includes Braille books, audiobooks, high-contrast illustrations, dyslexia-friendly fonts, and interactive multisensory elements, all of which enhance literacy accessibility and inclusivity (Farrall, 2018). Carefully structured narratives that cater to diverse cognitive and sensory needs foster greater engagement, comprehension and enjoyment, ensuring that all children can fully participate in reading experiences (Eriksson and Granlund, 2004).

a) Potential for Special Books via Fiction

Inclusive fiction ensures that all children, including those with special needs, can enjoy and benefit from storytelling. These books incorporate:

- Accessible Language and Storytelling – Simple, clear sentence structures and sensory-friendly narratives enhance comprehension for children with cognitive challenges.
- Multisensory Elements – Tactile books, textured pages and interactive storytelling support children with sensory sensitivities or motor skill difficulties.
- Alternative Formats – Audiobooks, Braille books, high-contrast illustrations and large-print books cater to children with visual impairments or dyslexia.
- Neurodivergent-Friendly Narratives – Stories that depict characters with autism, ADHD or other neurodiverse traits help foster inclusivity and understanding.
- Positive Representation – Featuring characters with disabilities in empowering, everyday roles normalizes diverse experiences and challenges societal stereotypes.

  These adaptations help create a reading experience that is inclusive, engaging and accessible to all children.

b) Why Special Books Matter?

Special books ensure that children of all abilities have access to meaningful and engaging literature. By incorporating inclusive design and storytelling, these books:

- **Ensure equal access to literature for all children**, regardless of ability or learning differences.
- **Promote representation and inclusion**, allowing children with disabilities to see themselves in books as valued, capable individuals.
- **Encourage empathy and understanding**, helping all children appreciate diverse experiences and perspectives.
- **Enhance engagement through multimodal storytelling**, using visual, auditory and tactile elements to create an inclusive reading experience.

Example: 'A Friend for Henry' by Jenn Bailey. How It Demonstrates Inclusive Book Creation in Fiction

Accessible Storytelling

The story follows Henry, a young boy on the autism spectrum, as he navigates friendships and social interactions in a classroom setting.

Neurodivergent Representation

Henry's perspective is portrayed authentically, allowing neurotypical and neurodiverse children alike to understand different ways of experiencing the world.

Encourages Empathy and Understanding

The book provides insight into sensory processing and social challenges, helping young readers develop compassion and acceptance.

Supports Emotional and Social Learning

Henry's journey highlights the importance of patience, kindness and inclusion in friendship building.

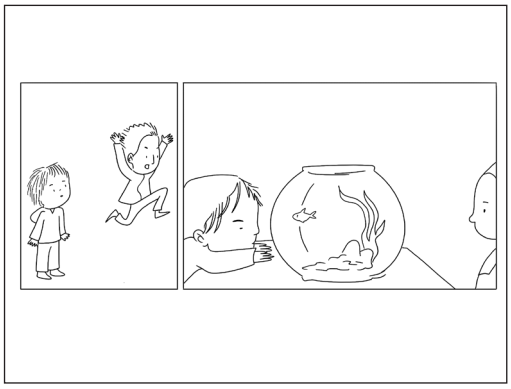
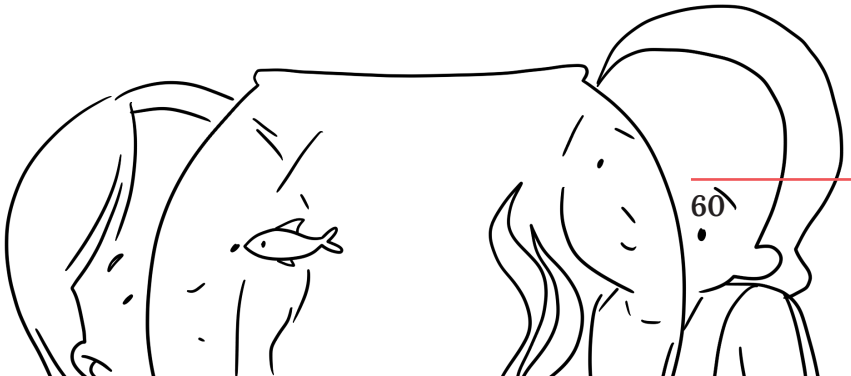


Figure 2.6: ***A Friend for Henry* by Jenn Bailey**. This book aligns with "Why Special Books Matter", as it promotes inclusivity, empathy and accessibility in children's literature.

"She's shimmery", said Katie
"But she dosen't blink", said Henry
"What does she do?"

She burps pebbles, Henry thought.
And breathes under water.
And turns sunshine into colour.



2.4.2 What is Ergonomics in Book Design?

Ergonomics in book design refers to the physical, visual and cognitive factors that influence a child's reading experience, ensuring that books are comfortable, accessible and engaging (Norman, 2013). Effective ergonomic design enhances readability, usability and interaction, particularly for young children and those with special needs (Wilkinson, 2015).

Key ergonomic considerations include age-appropriate typography, layout, materials and interactive elements, which help make books easier to handle and read (Garner, 2019). Books that are too heavy, have small or densely packed text, or lack visual clarity can create barriers to reading, affecting engagement and comprehension (Schriver, 1997). Thoughtfully designed books support cognitive, visual and motor skill development, ensuring that young readers experience reading as both enjoyable and accessible (Ziefle, 2002).

a) Ergonomic Considerations in Fiction

Ergonomically designed children's books integrate:

- Age-Appropriate Text Size and Spacing – Larger fonts, generous line spacing and simple typefaces help young readers and those with visual impairments read with ease.
- Lightweight and Durable Materials – Board books, padded covers and rounded edges ensure safety and ease of handling, especially for toddlers and early readers.
- High-Contrast, Eye-Friendly Color Schemes – Color choices should enhance readability rather than strain the eyes, considering factors such as dyslexia-friendly text backgrounds.
- Interactive and Tactile Elements – Lift-the-flap books, textured pages and embossed letters, cater to sensory learning and motor skill development.
- Appropriate Page Layout and Illustration Balance – Well-spaced illustrations and text placement should guide a child's eye naturally across the page without overwhelming their visual processing.

These ergonomic elements enhance reading comfort, accessibility and engagement, making books more effective learning tools for young readers.

b) Why Ergonomics in Books Matters?

Ergonomic book design removes physical and cognitive barriers, allowing children to fully engage with stories and develop a love for reading. Key benefits include:

- **Enhances reading comfort and reduces fatigue** by using clear typography and lightweight materials.
- **Improves accessibility** for children with visual impairments or motor difficulties through thoughtful page design and alternative formats.

- **Supports cognitive and sensory development** by incorporating tactile and interactive elements.
- **Encourages independent reading habits** by making books easy to handle and navigate for young readers.

Example: 'Press Here' by Hervé Tullet. How It Demonstrates Ergonomics in Fiction

Interactive and Tactile Elements
The book encourages children to tap, press, shake and interact with the dots on the page, making the reading experience physically engaging.

Eye-Friendly Design
Simple bold circles on a white background create a high-contrast, visually clear experience for young readers.

Lightweight and Easy-to-Handle Format
The book is thin, flexible and manageable for small hands, ensuring independent engagement.

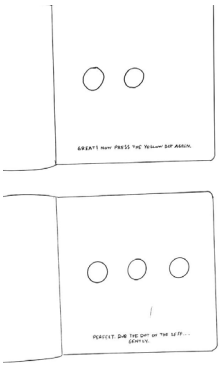


Figure 2.7: ***Press Here by Hervé Tullet***. This book exemplifies "Why Ergonomics in Books Matters", as it enhances engagement, accessibility and sensory learning through thoughtful design.

c) Key Ergonomic Factors of a Children's Fiction Book

Ergonomically designed children's books integrate:

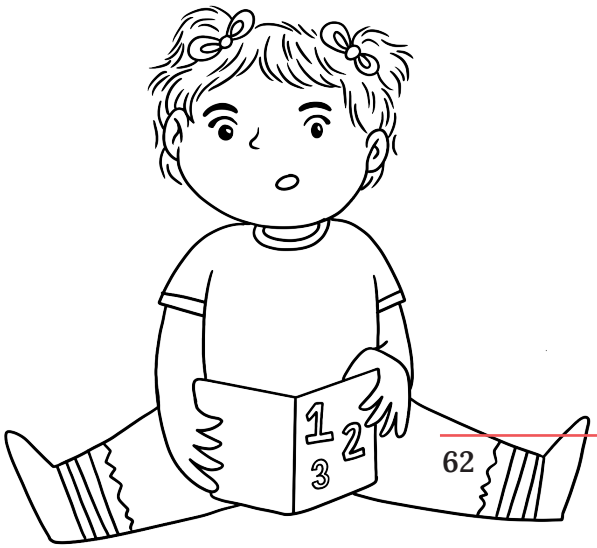
1. Size, Shape, and Portability: The dimensions, shape and weight of the book should suit a child's hand size and ability to carry it.

Design Tips:

Size: Small books (6x6 inches to 8x8 inches) for toddlers, and 8x10 inches for older children.

Shape: Square or slightly rectangular shapes are more manageable for children.

Weight: Use lightweight materials so children can carry the book comfortably.



2. Reading Style and Interaction: Children's reading styles differ based on age. Toddlers lie down, sit or stand while reading, and they often need help holding books open.

Design Tips:

Lay-Flat Binding: Allows the book to remain open on its own, making it easier for children to read on a flat surface.

Two-Hand Interaction: Ensures that the book can be opened easily with two hands, especially for interactive elements like flaps or pop-ups.

Interactive Elements: Use flaps, textures and sensory elements to promote engagement.

3. Binding and Spine Design: The spine and binding determine how well the book stays intact after repeated use, and how easily it stays open while reading.

Design Tips:

Lay-Flat Binding: Basically, lay-flat is the name of a binding technique with which your book can be completely opened at a 180° angle allowing the readers to enjoy a true panoramic experience. Likewise, the books that stay open on their own reduce frustration for children reading on the floor or table.

Durable Binding: Use sewn or stitched spines (rather than glue) to withstand frequent bending and flattening.

Spine Thickness: A wider spine allows children to identify the book on a shelf.

4. Hand Size, Grip and Page Turnability: Children's small hands and limited finger coordination require books with easy-to-grip pages and simple page-turning mechanisms.

Design Tips:

Page Thickness: Use thick board pages or reinforced paper to make it easier to grip.

Grip Design: Add finger cutouts or notches along the edges to help children lift and turn pages.

Rounded Corners: Prevent injuries from sharp paper edges.

5. Page Layout, Text, and Visual Design: The arrangement of images, text and white space on each page affects visual clarity and readability for children.

Design Tips:

Large Text: Use large, clear, and simple fonts (16-24pt) for young readers.

Simple Layout: Ensure white space frames key visual elements, keeping the page clean and uncluttered.

Image-Text Placement: Position text below or beside images to follow natural eye movement.

6. Material and Durability: Since children handle books roughly, they should be strong enough to resist pulling, bending and chewing.

Design Tips:

Tear-Resistant Pages: Use thick paper (150-200 gsm) or laminated pages to prevent tears.

Non-Toxic Materials: Use CPSIA-compliant, non-toxic coatings to protect infants who might chew on the book.

Water-Resistant Surfaces: Use laminated or coated pages that can be wiped clean.

7. Safety and Child-Friendliness: Children, especially infants and toddlers, explore books using their mouths and hands, so child-safe design is essential.

Design Tips:

Rounded Corners: Avoid sharp edges to prevent paper cuts.

Non-Toxic Inks and Coatings: Use food-safe, non-toxic materials (like soy-based inks) for young readers.

Choking Hazard Prevention: Ensure interactive elements (like pop-ups) are securely attached to prevent small parts from coming loose.

2.5 Production Quality and Global Reach

Print Standards and Cultural Relevance

2.5.1 What is Print Quality in Children's Books?

Print quality in children's books refers to the physical durability, visual clarity and eco-conscious production of printed materials, ensuring that books are safe, long-lasting and engaging (McIlroy and Plant, 2016). High-quality printing plays a crucial role in enhancing children's learning and reading experiences by providing visually appealing, tactilely pleasant and developmentally appropriate materials (Kiefer, 2014).

Thoughtful choices in paper, ink and binding contribute to books that are child-friendly, environmentally responsible and economically sustainable (Goldsmith, 2017). Books for young readers should be designed to be easy to handle, lightweight and durable, incorporating non-toxic, tear-resistant and water-resistant materials, to ensure safety and longevity (Arizpe and Styles, 2016).

Furthermore, sustainability is a key consideration in modern children's book production. The use of FSC-certified paper, soy-based inks and recycled materials reduces environmental impact while maintaining high print quality (Laminack, 2019). A balance between visual appeal, affordability and accessibility ensures that all children, regardless of background, can benefit from high-quality reading experiences (Sipe and Brightman, 2009).

a) Print Quality Considerations

High-quality printing in children's fiction balances durability, safety, sustainability and affordability by incorporating:

- Child-Friendly Materials – Books should use tear-resistant, non-toxic and easy-to-clean materials to withstand frequent use by young readers.
- High-Contrast and Vivid Illustrations – Sharp, vibrant colors and clear images, enhance readability and visual engagement, making stories more immersive.
- Durable and Safe Binding – Rounded corners, stitched or reinforced binding, and sturdy covers ensure that books are safe and long-lasting.
- Environmentally Friendly Production – Recycled paper, soy-based inks and FSC-certified materials reduce environmental impact while maintaining print quality.
- Economically Supportive Production – Books should be produced in a way that supports affordability for families and schools, while also providing fair wages for workers in the printing and publishing industry.

b) Why Print Quality Matters?

Print quality in children's books plays a crucial role in ensuring accessibility, safety and sustainability, with key benefits including:

- **Enhances visual and reading engagement** through high-quality illustrations and print clarity, making books more appealing.
- **Ensures safety and durability** for young readers by using non-toxic inks, strong bindings and tear-resistant pages.
- **Promotes environmental responsibility** by utilizing sustainable materials and eco-friendly printing processes.
- **Supports economic accessibility** by balancing cost-effective production with high-quality standards, making books affordable and widely available.

Example: 'The Paper Bag Princess' by Robert Munsch, Illustrated by Michael Martchenko. How It Demonstrates Quality Printing

Durable and Safe Design:
The book uses sturdy pages, reinforced binding and rounded edges, making it long-lasting and child-friendly.

High-Contrast and Vibrant Illustrations:
The bold and expressive artwork enhances emotional storytelling, making the visuals easy to follow.

Environmentally Conscious Printing:
Many editions of this book are now printed on FSC-certified paper with eco-friendly inks, reducing environmental impact.

Affordable and Widely Accessible:
This book has been reprinted in multiple formats, including budget-friendly paperback and hardcover editions, making it accessible to families and schools.

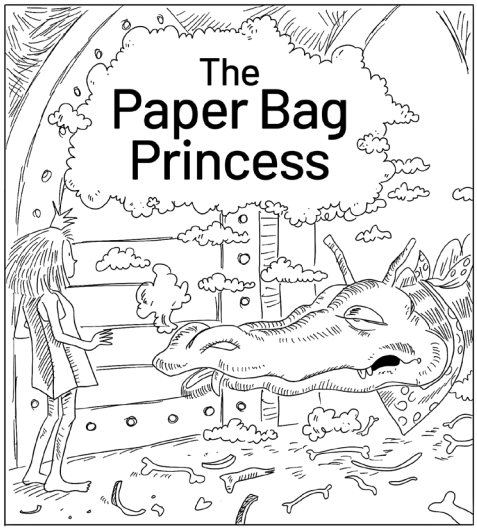


Figure 2.8: ***The Paper Bag Princess* by Robert Munsch.** This book exemplifies "Why Print Quality in Books Matters", as it balances child-friendly design, visual engagement, sustainability, and affordability.

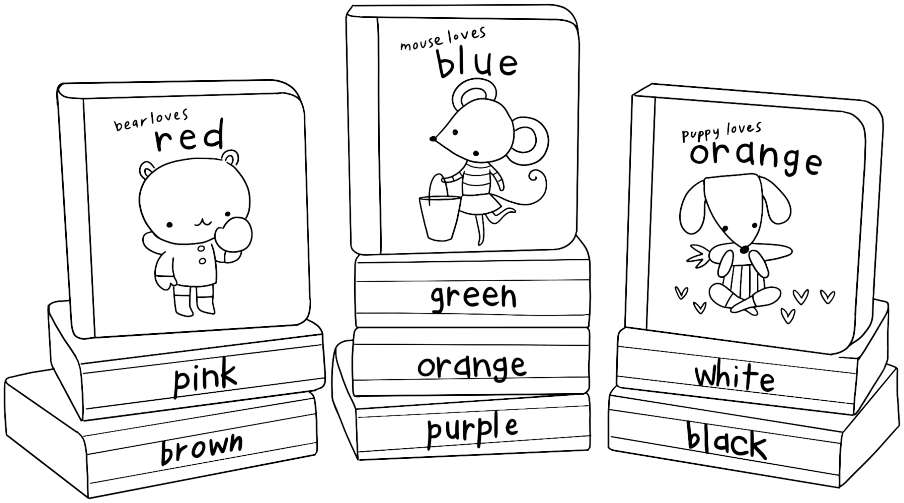


Figure 2.9: ***Green Start Books Series by Innovative Kids***. It exemplifies eco-friendly publishing, using 100% recycled materials and soy-based inks to reduce environmental impact. Designed for durability and child safety, these books feature sturdy board construction with rounded edges, making them ideal for young readers. The series also promotes nature conservation and sustainability through engaging eco-themed content, encouraging children to develop early environmental awareness while enjoying high-quality responsibly produced books.

c) Print Quality and Global Relevance: Economic and Global Opportunities for Sri Lanka

Print quality in children's books plays a crucial role in the economic growth and global competitiveness of Sri Lanka's publishing industry. By investing in high-quality production standards, including vibrant illustrations, durable binding, non-toxic materials and eco-friendly printing, Sri Lankan publishers can enhance readability, longevity and safety, making books more appealing both locally and internationally.

A strong focus on print quality and sustainable production can position Sri Lanka as a hub for high-standard, ethically produced children's books, attracting export markets, international partnerships and foreign investment. By incorporating FSC-certified paper, soy-based inks and recycled materials, publishers can align with global sustainability standards, making Sri Lankan books more competitive in eco-conscious markets. This shift not only benefits the local economy and job creation within the printing sector but also strengthens Sri Lanka's reputation as a leader in responsible book production.

Meanwhile, global relevance in fiction ensures that Sri Lankan stories resonate beyond national borders, offering a balance between cultural authenticity and universal themes. By focusing on linguistic adaptability, diverse representation and globally relevant narratives, Sri Lankan publishers can expand their international reach, ensuring their stories are accessible to a wider audience.

The next section explores global relevance in children's fiction, highlighting themes such as environmental consciousness, sustainability and cross-cultural storytelling, all of which can further elevate Sri Lanka's presence in the global literary market.

2.6 Global Relevance in Children's Fiction

Expanding Stories Beyond Borders

2.6.1 What is a Globally Relevant Fiction Book?

A globally relevant children's fiction book is one that transcends cultural boundaries, engaging readers from diverse backgrounds, languages and experiences, while maintaining authenticity and storytelling integrity (Short, 2018). These books explore universal themes such as friendship, resilience, environmental responsibility, migration, social justice and identity, making them relatable and meaningful across different cultures (Bland, 2020).

Globally relevant fiction strikes a balance between cultural specificity and universal storytelling, ensuring that readers from different regions connect with the narrative while gaining insight into new perspectives (Nikolajeva, 2014). Many of these books are translated, adapted or localized to enhance accessibility and cultural relatability, allowing them to reach broader international audiences (O'Sullivan, 2021).

Furthermore, globally relevant children's fiction introduces young readers to real world issues — such as climate change, conservation, diversity, and equality — through imaginative and engaging narratives (Gaiman, 2015). These stories foster curiosity, empathy and global awareness, helping children develop a more inclusive and interconnected worldview (Stephens, 2018).

a) Considerations for Globally Relevant Books

Books that embrace these principles expand the literary landscape, fostering inclusivity, global awareness, and cross-cultural dialogue among young readers. To ensure global relevance, children's fiction should incorporate:

- Universally Relatable Themes–Stories should explore fundamental human experiences such as friendship, courage, perseverance, environmental consciousness, and problem-solving, which resonate across different cultures and societies.
- Cultural Authenticity and Respect–While aiming for broad appeal, fiction should honor the cultural origins of its characters and settings, avoiding stereotypes and cultural dilution.
- Translatability and Linguistic Sensitivity–The language and storytelling style should be adaptable for different linguistic and cultural contexts, ensuring clarity and resonance across translations.

- Translatability and Linguistic Sensitivity–The language and storytelling style should be adaptable for different linguistic and cultural contexts, ensuring clarity and resonance across translations.
- Themes of Global Importance – Fiction can introduce young readers to pressing world issues such as climate change, migration, sustainability, and human rights through engaging, age-appropriate storytelling.
- Adaptability Across Contexts – Stories should be able to connect with children globally, while remaining accessible and engaging across various cultural and social settings.

b) Why Global Relevance in Fiction Matters?

Globally relevant children's fiction helps young readers connect with diverse perspectives, allowing them to see both their own experiences and those of others reflected in literature. These books play a crucial role in:

- **Encouraging Cross-Cultural Understanding** – Fiction that features diverse characters, settings and perspectives helps children develop empathy, appreciate different cultures and engage with global issues.
- **Promoting Accessibility and Inclusivity –** Stories that can be translated, adapted and shared across cultures, ensure that literature remains inclusive and engaging for children worldwide.
- **Fostering Open-Mindedness and Global Citizenship –** Reading about different cultural traditions, environmental challenges and social justice movements, broadens children's worldviews and critical thinking.
- **Supporting Multilingual and Cross-Cultural Learning –** Fiction allows children to experience different storytelling traditions, helping them appreciate language diversity and literary richness.
- **Expanding the Reach of Children's Fiction –** Stories that transcend cultural and geographical boundaries create a more interconnected and diverse literary ecosystem, ensuring that children everywhere have access to meaningful and inspiring narratives.

Example: 'Last Stop on Market Street' by Matt de la Peña, illustrated by Christian Robinson. How It Demonstrates Global Relevance

Universally Relatable Themes:
The story explores kindness, gratitude, and seeing beauty in everyday life, themes that resonate across cultures.

Diverse and Inclusive Representation:
Features a multicultural urban setting, representing different races, ages and socioeconomic backgrounds.

Encourages Empathy and Global Awareness:
Highlights social diversity, intergenerational relationships and economic differences in an accessible way.

High Translatability and Cross-Cultural Appeal:
The book's simple, expressive language makes it adaptable to multiple languages and cultural contexts: and accessiblity to families and schools.

Figure 2.10: ***Last Stop on Market Street by Matt de la Peña. illustrated by Christian Robinson.*** This book embodies "Why Global Relevance in Children's Books Matters", as it fosters diversity, empathy and universal storytelling.

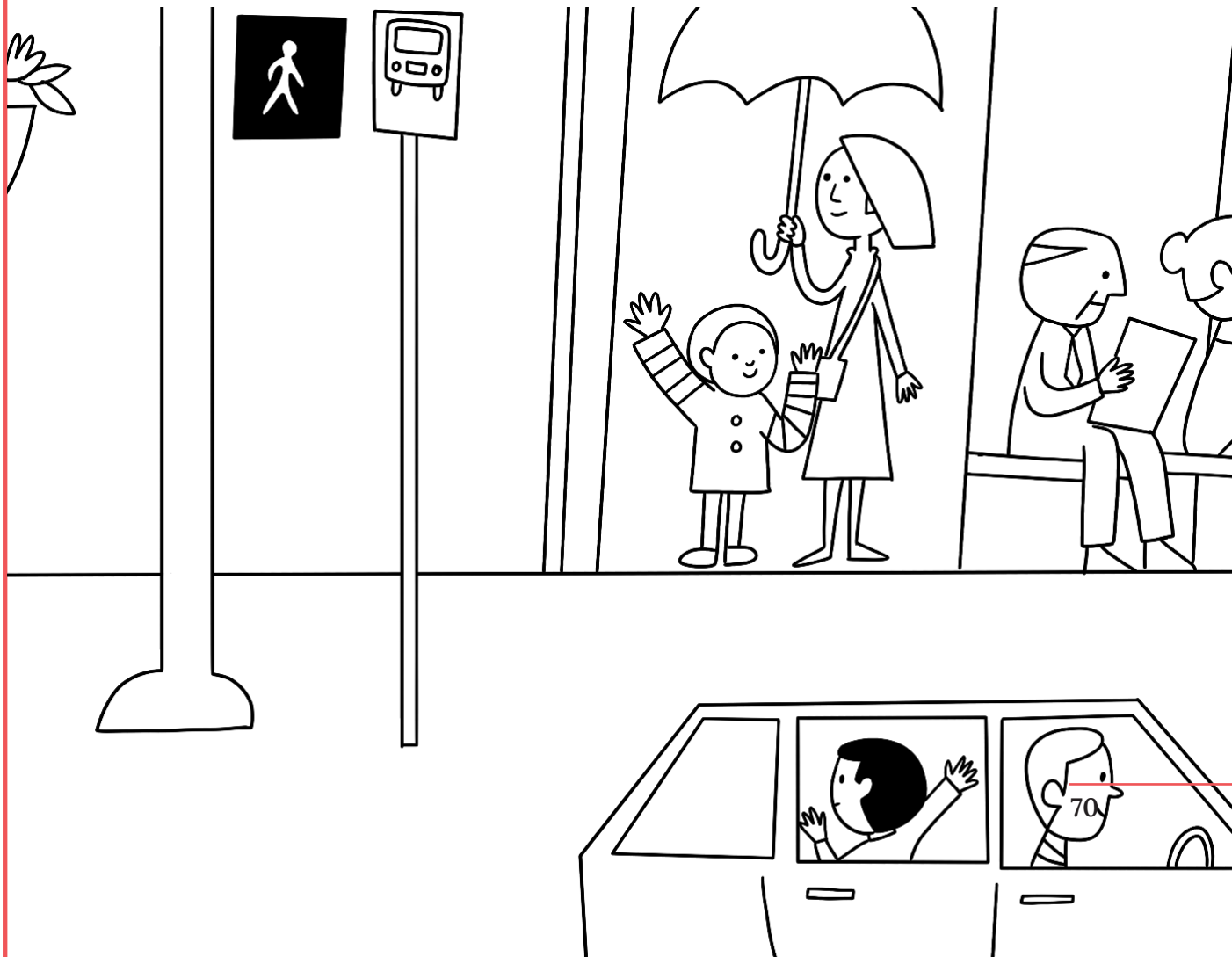


Figure 2.11: ***Mirror by Jeannie Baker.*** It is a powerful example of globally relevant children's fiction, offering young readers a unique opportunity to connect with diverse cultural perspectives. Through its wordless parallel storytelling, the book depicts the lives of two boys — one in Australia and one in Morocco — highlighting both the contrasts and shared human experiences between their worlds. This format encourages cross-cultural understanding, allowing children to visually compare daily life in different countries while recognizing universal themes of family, community, and curiosity.

The book's accessibility and inclusivity make it engaging for readers of all languages, as it relies entirely on visuals rather than text, ensuring universal comprehension. By presenting authentic cultural details without stereotypes, Mirror fosters open-mindedness and global awareness, helping young readers appreciate the richness of different traditions. Additionally, it introduces multilingual and cross-cultural learning by prompting discussions about geography, customs and lifestyle differences. As a book that transcends cultural and geographical boundaries, Mirror contributes to a more interconnected and diverse literary ecosystem, proving that stories told through imagery can be just as impactful as those conveyed through words.

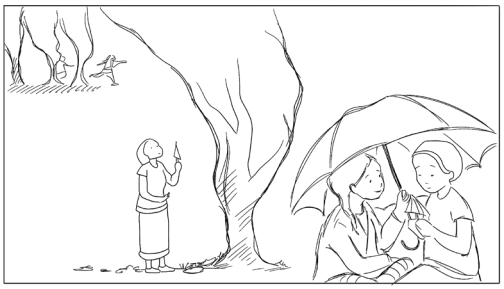


Figure 2.12: ***My Two Blankets by Irena Kobald, Illustrated by Freya Blackwood.*** Irena Kobald and Freya Blackwood's My Two Blankets is a poignant example of globally relevant children's fiction, offering young readers a window into the challenges of migration, cultural adaptation and friendship. The story follows Cartwheel, a young refugee, as she navigates a new country, unfamiliar language, and sense of displacement, making it universally relatable for children worldwide. Through its metaphor of a "blanket", the book beautifully represents language and comfort, showing how cultural identity can evolve while still providing a sense of belonging.

This linguistic and cultural sensitivity makes the story adaptable across multilingual and multicultural audiences, fostering empathy for children experiencing similar transitions. The soft, immersive illustrations add emotional depth, visually conveying Cartwheel's journey from isolation to inclusion as she forms new friendships. By highlighting empathy and social inclusion, My Two Blankets helps young readers develop compassion for displaced communities, encouraging them to embrace diversity, kindness, and the power of connection.

Figure 2.13: ***Where the Mountain Meets the Moon by Grace Lin.*** This is a globally relevant children's fiction book that masterfully blends cultural authenticity with universal storytelling. Inspired by Chinese folktales and mythology, the story follows Minli, a young girl on a journey of perseverance and self-discovery, exploring timeless themes of gratitude, destiny, and hope that resonate with readers worldwide. While deeply rooted in Chinese traditions, its cross-cultural fantasy appeal makes it engaging for audiences beyond its cultural origin, as it embraces the universal power of storytelling and adventure.

The book has gained global recognition, receiving numerous awards and has been translated into multiple languages, ensuring its accessibility across diverse readerships. Lin's stunning illustrations further enhance the story's cultural depth, incorporating traditional Chinese painting elements while maintaining a modern and visually captivating style. Through its rich narrative and artistic beauty, Where the Mountain Meets the Moon serves as a bridge between cultures, inviting young readers into a vividly imagined world that fosters appreciation for folklore, resilience, and the pursuit of dreams.

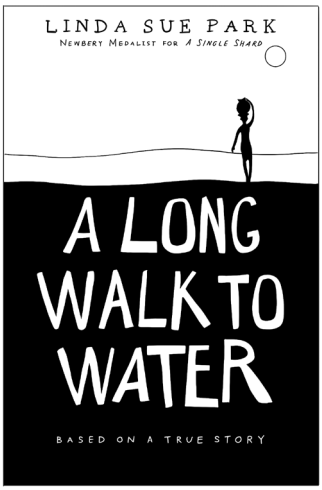


Figure 2.14: ***A Long Walk to Water by Linda Sue Park.*** Another globally relevant children's fiction book, that brings attention to real-world humanitarian issues through a compelling dual narrative. Based on the true story of Salva Dut, a Sudanese "Lost Boy" refugee, the novel highlights the harsh realities of displacement, survival and the global water crisis, making its real-life impact deeply meaningful for readers everywhere.

The book's dual narrative structure, alternating between Salva's journey in the 1980s and that of Nya, a young girl in Sudan facing water scarcity in 2008, creates an engaging and educational reading experience that enhances understanding of historical and contemporary struggles. With multilingual and global appeal. A Long Walk to Water has been adapted for different cultural and educational contexts, ensuring its accessibility across diverse audiences. By addressing themes of privilege, access to basic needs, and global inequalities, the novel fosters empathy and social awareness, encouraging young readers to reflect on the disparities in resources and opportunities while inspiring them to contribute to positive change.

2.7 Sample Themes in Children's Fiction

Exploring Universal, Cultural and Environmental Narratives

2.7.1 Universally Relatable Themes

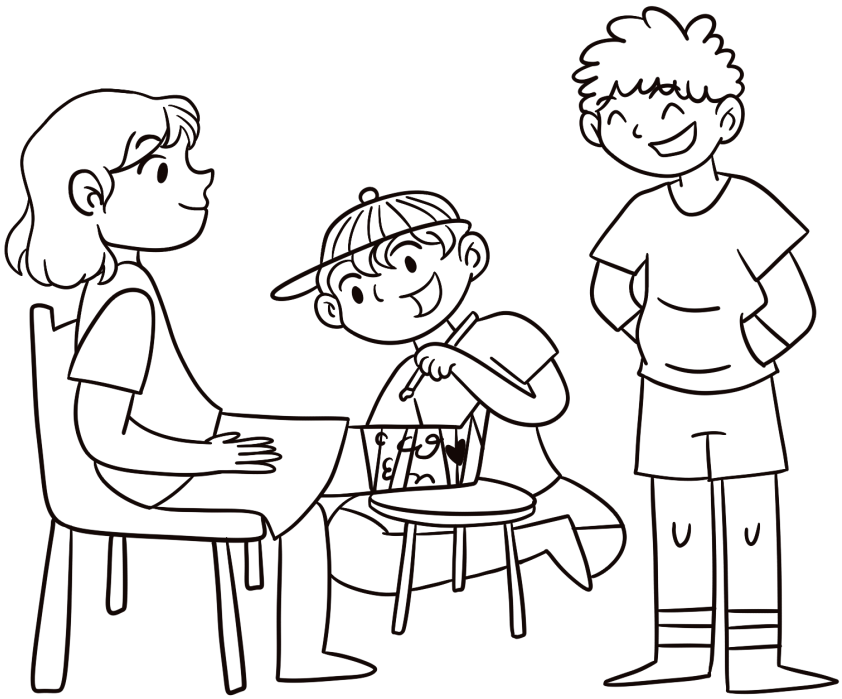
A universally relatable children's fiction book explores themes that transcend cultural, geographical and social boundaries, allowing young readers from different backgrounds to connect with the story. These books address shared human experiences, ensuring that all children, regardless of their environment, can find meaning and relevance in the narrative. Themes such as friendship, family, courage, resilience, identity and self-discovery help children navigate their own emotions and relationships while also developing empathy for others. Many universally relatable books use metaphor, fantasy or folktale structures to simplify complex ideas, making them accessible across cultures.

Books that successfully integrate universally relatable themes include:

- **Personal Growth and Self-Discovery**
  Stories about overcoming fears, finding confidence and embracing individuality.
- **Friendship and Belonging**
  Exploring social interactions, teamwork and the value of acceptance.
- **Perseverance and Resilience**
  Showcasing characters overcoming challenges, failures or hardships.
- **Hope and Kindness**
  Teaching children the power of optimism, generosity and understanding.

Universally Relatable Themes:

create emotional connections between readers and characters, making them memorable, impactful and widely accessible, ensuring that children everywhere see themselves reflected in literature.

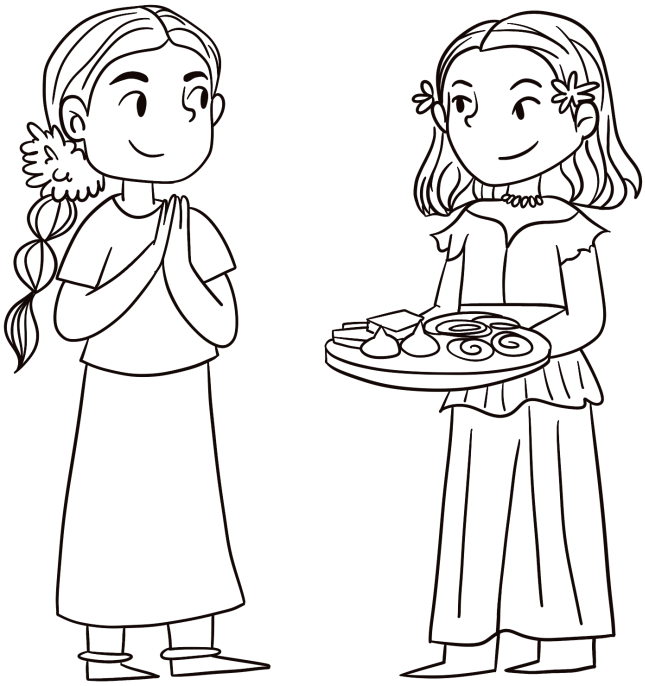


2.7.2 Cultural Authenticity and Respect

Culturally authentic children's fiction ensures that stories accurately and respectfully represent diverse traditions, histories and ways of life. These books are not just about inclusion; they honor and celebrate the richness of different cultures, making them a powerful tool for preserving heritage and fostering cross-cultural appreciation. Authenticity in storytelling means accurate representation of language, customs, environments and lived experiences. This includes avoiding stereotypes, misrepresentation or cultural dilution, ensuring that narratives are both truthful and engaging.

Elements of culturally authentic fiction include:

- **Authentic Characters and Voices**
  Stories that reflect the real experiences, dialects and traditions of the communities they represent.
- **Respectful Storytelling**
  Ensuring first-hand perspectives or thorough research in writing about cultures outside one's own.
- **Visual and Artistic Integrity**
  Illustrations that incorporate cultural symbols, attire and landscapes authentically.
- **Honest Portrayals of History and Mythology**
  Stories rooted in real histories, folklore and traditions that reflect a culture's depth and complexity.



Culturally Authentic themed:

books prioritize cultural authenticity and gives readers a true sense of identity and representation, while also inviting others to explore and appreciate different traditions with respect.

2.7.3 Translatability and Linguistic Sensitivity

Children's fiction that is translatable across languages ensures that stories can be understood and appreciated worldwide, while still maintaining cultural depth and narrative impact. Linguistic sensitivity involves choosing words, sentence structures and literary devices that can be adapted without losing meaning in translation.

To achieve this, books must:

- **Use Clear and Simple Language**
  Avoid overly complex idioms, metaphors or culturally specific slang that may not translate easily.
- **Balance Universal and Specific Elements**
  Ensure that the core message remains unchanged, even when adapted to different languages.
- **Be Culturally Neutral or Adaptable**
  Some books incorporate multicultural settings, diverse names and international references to make them easier to translate.
- **Consider Visual Communication**
  Illustrations, body language and expressions should also be interpretable across different cultures.

Translatability and Linguistic Sensitivity:

by prioritizing this can reach and resonate with a global audience, allowing stories to cross borders while retaining their original heart and meaning.

2.7.4 Environment-Based Themes

An environment-themed children's fiction book introduces young readers to nature, sustainability, conservation and ecological responsibility through engaging storytelling. These books encourage children to develop a deep connection with the natural world, fostering curiosity, care and proactive environmental stewardship. Fiction allows young readers to explore real-world environmental issues through adventure, fantasy and relatable characters, making complex topics age-appropriate and impactful.

Environmental fiction can explore themes such as:

- **Conservation and Biodiversity**
  Stories centered on wildlife protection, endangered species and natural habitats teach children about the importance of preserving ecosystems.
- **Climate Change and Sustainability**
  Fiction that highlights rising temperatures, deforestation and pollution, while offering solutions such as renewable energy, afforestation and sustainable living.
- **Interconnected Ecosystems**
  Stories that show how humans, animals and plants are interdependent, reinforcing the idea that even small actions can have a big impact.
- **Eco-Friendly Practices**
  Books that integrate recycling, reducing waste, sustainable farming and ethical consumption into everyday storytelling.
- **Water Conservation and Ocean Protection**
  Books that focus on rivers, lakes and marine life, highlighting issues such as plastic pollution, coral reef destruction and sustainable fishing.

2.7.5 Environmental Fiction in the Sri Lankan Context

Sri Lanka's rich biodiversity, unique geography and cultural ties to nature provide a perfect backdrop for environmental storytelling.

Fiction set in the Sinharaja Rainforest, Horton Plains, the Knuckles Mountain Range, or Sri Lanka's coastal waters, can introduce children to:

- **Sri Lankan Wildlife and Conservation**
  Stories featuring elephants, leopards, sloth bears and endemic birds, addressing wildlife-human conflicts, and conservation efforts in national parks such as Yala and Wilpattu.
- **Mangrove and Wetland Ecosystems**
  Exploring the importance of mangroves, lagoons and wetlands in places such as Bundala and Muthurajawela; raising awareness about coastal protection and biodiversity.
- **Marine Life and Ocean Conservation**
  Books centered around whales, sea turtles and coral reefs in Hikkaduwa and Pigeon Island, teach children about marine pollution and ocean sustainability.
- **Sustainable Agriculture and Forest Preservation**
  Stories that highlight traditional farming practices, tea plantations and forest conservation; addressing climate change, soil erosion, and sustainable food production.

2.7.6 Sri Lanka's Uniqueness: Nature, Geography and People

Sri Lanka's stunning natural landscapes, diverse wildlife and unique geography make it an ideal setting for engaging children's fiction. From misty mountains and lush rainforests to golden beaches and ancient ruins, the island offers endless storytelling possibilities.

Themes that highlight Sri Lanka's natural wonders and geography include:

- **Biodiversity and Wildlife Conservation**
  Stories that introduce Sri Lanka's elephants, leopards, sloth bears and endemic birds; teach children about conservation efforts in Yala, Wilpattu, and Sinharaja Forest.
- **The Ocean and Marine Life**
  Books set around coastal villages, fishing communities and coral reefs, featuring sea turtles, blue whales and shipwreck mysteries.
- **Legends of the Land**
  Myths surrounding Ravana, Kuveni and ancient cities add layers of mystery and magic to children's fiction.
- **Traditional Village Life vs. City Adventures**
  Showcasing rural farming, paddy fields and age-old crafts, contrasted with the vibrancy of Colombo, Kandy, Jaffna, Kurunegala and Galle.
- **Geographical Wonders**
  Stories exploring Adam's Peak, the Horton Plains, the Knuckles Mountain Range, and the cascading waterfalls of Nuwara Eliya.

Themes Related to Sri Lanka:

by setting stories in Sri Lanka's natural and geographical landscapes, children's fiction can promote environmental awareness, celebrate national pride, and share the island's unique beauty with global readers.

2.7.7 Sri Lankan History in Children's Fiction

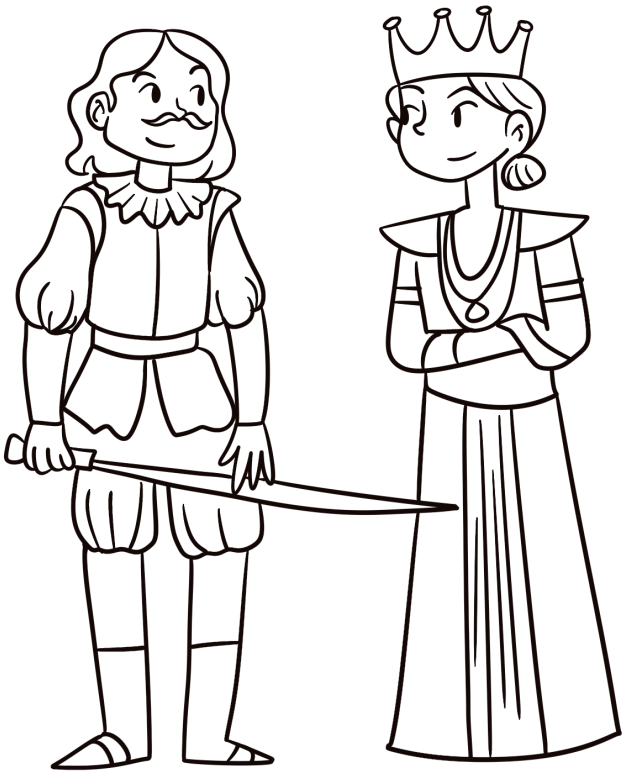
Children's fiction set in Sri Lankan history helps young readers understand the nation's past, offering an engaging way to learn about its civilizations, colonial influences and key historical events. Historical fiction can bring legendary kings, ancient cities and past struggles to life, making history relatable and immersive for children.

Sri Lankan history in fiction can explore:

- **Ancient Kingdoms and Civilizations**
  Stories set in Anuradhapura and Polonnaruwa, introducing young readers to Sigiriya, Ruwanwelisaya and the Jethawanaramaya Stupa.
- **Colonial Encounters and Resistance**
  Fiction that depicts the arrival of the Portuguese, the Dutch, and the British to the island, highlighting figures such as Veediya Bandara and Dona Catharina.
- **Trade, Tea and Maritime Heritage**
  Exploring Sri Lanka's role as the Pearl of the Indian Ocean, focusing on the spice trade, ancient seafarers and the growth of the tea industry.
- **Modern History and Identity**
  Books addressing Sri Lanka's journey to independence, post-independence struggles, conflicts and the resilience of its people.

Themes Related to Sri Lankan History:

by embedding history into fiction, children gain a stronger connection to their roots, fostering a deeper appreciation of their national heritage.



2.7.8 Sri Lankan Culture in Children's Fiction

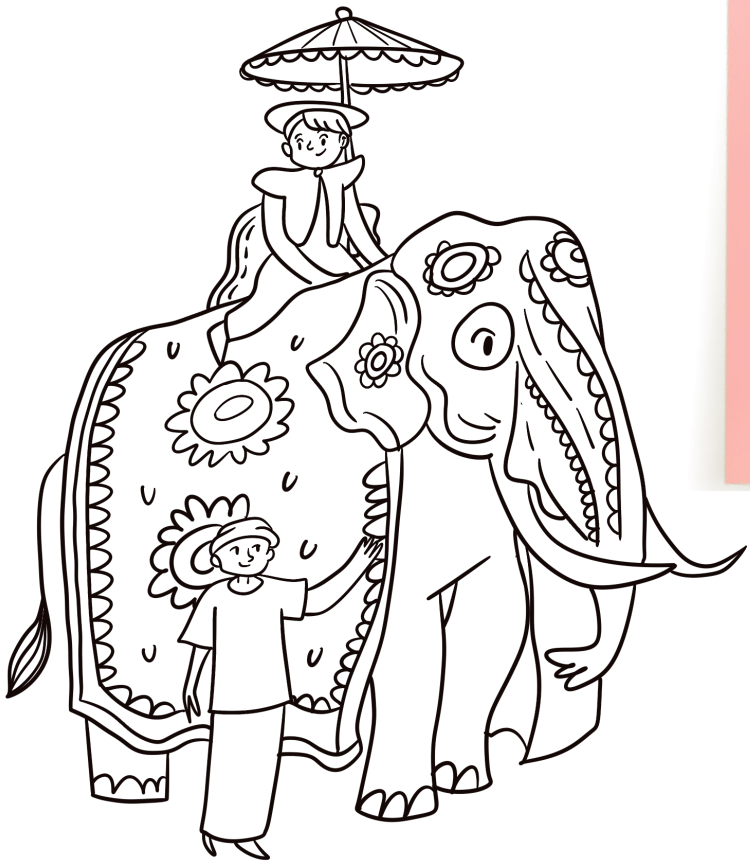
A Sri Lanka-themed children's fiction book celebrates the rich cultural heritage, traditions and folklore of the island, offering young readers a sense of identity and belonging while introducing global audiences to its uniqueness. These books weave stories of customs, festivals, traditional arts, music, dance, cuisine and religious practices, showcasing Sri Lanka's multicultural identity in engaging ways.

By incorporating Sri Lankan culture into fiction, books can:

- **Showcase Traditional Folktales and Myths**
  Retelling stories of Mahadenamutta, Gamarala and Andare; preserving the tales from our oral storytelling traditions.
- **Highlight Festivals and Rituals**
  Introducing Sinhala and Tamil New Year, Esala Perahera, Deepavali and Vesak festivals; allowing children to connect with their multicultural heritage.

  Represent Multicultural Harmony by portraying Buddhist, Hindu, Islamic and Christian traditions, showing the island's diversity.

  Capture Daily Village and City Life by exploring the contrast between rural and urban lifestyles, from farming communities to bustling markets; historic cities such as Galle and Anuradhapura.



Themes Related to Sri Lankan Culture:

Fiction rooted in Sri Lankan culture not only nurtures pride but also provides international readers with a window into the island's vibrant heritage.

2.7.9 Themes of Global Importance

Books that explore themes of global importance introduce children to real-world issues in ways that are age-appropriate, engaging and thought-provoking. These books encourage young readers to think critically, ask questions and develop a sense of global responsibility.

Key global themes in children's fiction include:

- **Climate Change and Environmental Protection**
  Stories about sustainability, conservation and ecological balance help children understand their role in protecting the planet.
- **Social Justice and Human Rights**
  Stories that explore equality, fairness and activism, encouraging young readers to stand up for what is right.
- **Migration and Displacement**
  Addressing the refugee experience, cultural adaptation and identity, helping children develop empathy for displaced communities.
- **Technology and Innovation**
  Fiction that sparks curiosity about STEM, space and the future, encouraging young minds to think critically about innovation and ethics.

Themes of Global Importance:

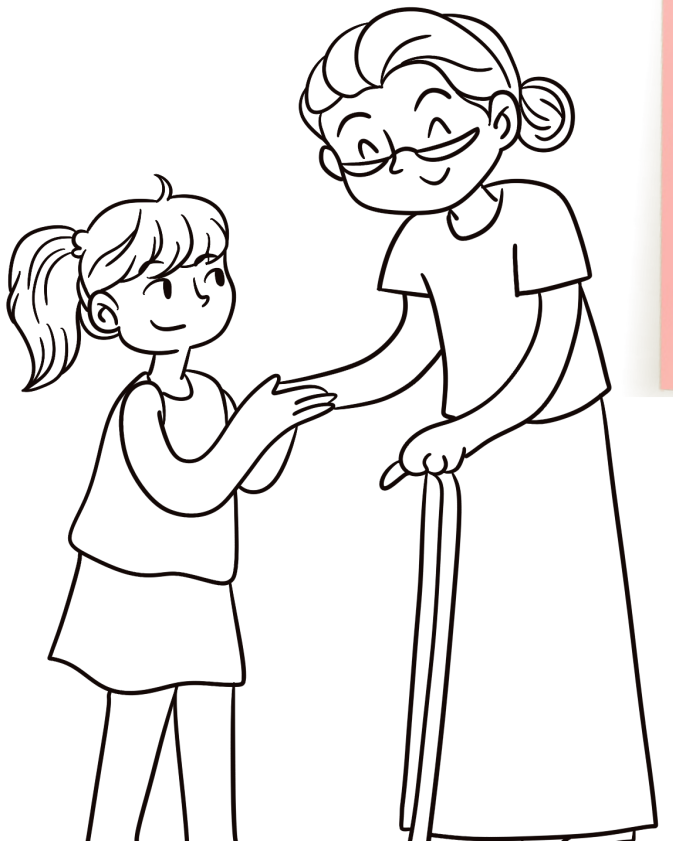
these books are crucial for shaping globally aware, socially conscious readers who understand and engage with the world around them.

2.7.10 Adaptability Across Contexts

A truly globally relevant children's fiction book is adaptable across different cultural, historical and social contexts while maintaining its core message and emotional impact. These books may be localized, illustrated differently, or rewritten to reflect regional realities, but they retain the essence of their storytelling.

To ensure adaptability, books should:

- **Have Flexible Settings**
  Instead of overly specific locations, stories should focus on universal experiences that can be reimagined in different contexts.
- **Allow for Cultural Customization**
  Publishers may change names, celebrations, or references; to better suit different regions while keeping the message intact.
- **Use Emotionally Driven Narratives**
  Feelings such as joy, loss, fear and wonder are understood across all cultures, making stories more adaptable.
- **Feature Broadly Recognizable Illustrations**
  Some adaptations modify character designs, backgrounds or symbols to align with local norms without altering the story's intent.



Themes Focused to Adaptability:

Books that are adaptable ensure their longevity and relevance, allowing timeless stories to reach new generations in new places while maintaining their emotional and educational value.

2.8 Practical Considerations

Tips for Inclusive and Respectful Storytelling

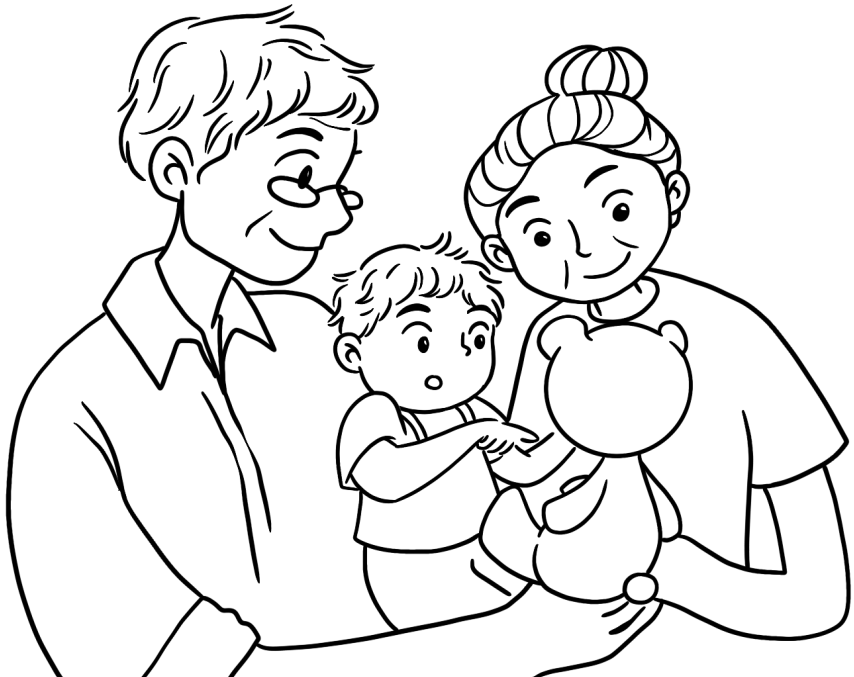
A scene shows a child participating in a family ritual, such as preparing a traditional dish, highlighting the cultural significance of the activity and showcasing the family's unique traditions.

2.8.1 Children's Fiction Books Must Not Include Patronising or Stereotyping Content

- **No group should be patronised or represented in a negative light.**
  For example, a character with a disability should not be spoken to condescendingly or made to feel inferior compared to others.
- **No group should be stereotyped.**
  For example, girls should not be depicted as the only ones responsible for household chores, as this reinforces limited and outdated gender roles.

2.8.2 Children's Fiction Books can Reflect Diverse Family Structures

- **Depict families in all their forms.**
  For example, a children's fiction book could feature a single-parent family, showing the strength and love of the parent-child relationship without emphasising any negative stereotypes.
- **Include non-traditional family roles.**
  For example, a child being raised by grandparents or extended family can be shown in a loving, normal context, highlighting the importance of family bonds.



2.8.3 Children's Fiction Books Must Represent All Genders Equally in a Variety of Roles

- **Avoid reinforcing traditional gender roles.**
  For example, boys should not always be portrayed as playing sports while girls are depicted as carers; both genders can engage in a range of activities.

2.8.4 Children's Fiction Books Must Depict Racial and Ethnic Diversity with Accuracy and Respect

- **Ensure authentic representation of different races and cultures.**
  For example, characters of different racial backgrounds can be shown with depth and individuality, not merely as stereotypical symbols.
- **Avoid tokenism by providing meaningful roles to characters of diverse ethnicities.**
  For example, a diverse group of characters can be integrated into the story with important roles and unique storylines, not just for diversity's sake.

2.8.5 Children's Fiction Books Must Represent Children with Disabilities in Empowering Ways

- **Highlight abilities rather than limitations.**
  For example, a child in a wheelchair can be depicted actively participating in games or sports, showcasing their strengths and abilities instead of focusing on what they cannot do.
- **Avoid depicting children with disabilities as helpless or dependent.**
  For example, a character with a prosthetic limb can be shown achieving their goals, just like any other child, rather than being portrayed as someone who needs constant help.

2.8.6 Children's Fiction Books Must Ensure Cultural Sensitivity and Accuracy

- **Respectfully depict cultural traditions and practices.**
  For example, a children's fiction book could portray a child celebrating Diwali with their family, showing traditional practices like lighting diyas and exchanging sweets, without misrepresentation or appropriation.
- **Challenge stereotypes while respecting cultural heritage.**
  For example, a book about any culture should not only focus on stereotypical themes but also portray the richness and diversity of that culture in a respectful and accurate manner.

Summary - Section 02

Ensuring Quality, Accessibility and Cultural Impact in Children's Fiction

Children's fiction is a powerful medium that shapes young minds, fostering inclusivity, accessibility and cultural representation. As explored in this chapter, quality children's fiction extends beyond literary excellence — it must embrace diverse identities, be physically and cognitively accessible to all children, and reflect both local and global narratives. High standards in storytelling, design and production are essential to ensure that books remain engaging, developmentally appropriate and meaningful across different contexts.

This section aligns with the National Policy for Children's Books, directly contributing to the following goals:

Goal 2.2.1 – Enhancing quality and accessibility.

Goal 2.2.2 – Aligning with global standards.

Goal 2.2.3 – Supporting child development.

Goal 2.2.4 – Promoting inclusivity and equality.

Goal 2.2.5 – Encouraging lifelong reading.

Goal 2.2.6 – Sustainable publishing practices.

Goal 2.2.7 – Building a collaborative ecosystem.

Goal 2.2.8 – Positioning Sri Lanka as a global contributor.

By integrating these policy goals, this chapter reinforces the collective responsibility of writers, illustrators, publishers, educators and policymakers in shaping a children's book ecosystem that is inclusive of high-quality and globally relevant. Through responsible storytelling, thoughtful book design and ethical production, children's fiction can serve as a tool for empowerment, cultural preservation, and lifelong learning.

Ultimately, high-quality children's fiction is not just about telling stories — it is about shaping perspectives, fostering empathy and ensuring that every child, regardless of their background or abilities, finds themselves reflected in the pages of a book.

Section 03

Section 03

Shaping Stories

Content Creation Essentials

Whether you are a novice writer stepping into the world of storytelling or an experienced author or editor refining your craft, this section offers the essential building blocks for creating high-quality, compelling stories for children. It serves as a practical guide for those developing narratives that are not only engaging and imaginative but also developmentally appropriate, inclusive, and impactful.

Chapter 3 focuses on the craft of literary storytelling in children's fiction, offering a structured approach to developing content that is both meaningful and imaginative. It explores essential elements such as theme and message, plot construction and types of plots, genre conventions, character development, world-building, story structure, narrative technique, and the thoughtful use of language. Each aspect is examined with the child reader in mind, supporting writers and editors in creating stories that are emotionally resonant, developmentally appropriate, and creatively engaging. Building on the developmental and inclusive foundations discussed in earlier chapters, this chapter emphasises literary excellence—ensuring that children's books are not only entertaining but also enriching, becoming stories that young readers remember, return to, and grow with.

Contents of this Section

3.1. Start with a Clear Theme and Message:
Significance of Theme and Message

3.2. Choose and Create Your Plot:
Plot and Types of Plots

3.3. Structuring Your Plot Into Narrative Arc:
Plot Structures and Diagrams

3.4. Be Creative with the Genre:
Genres and its Effects

3.5. Give Life to Your Characters:
Children's Perception Towards Characters

3.6. Create a World to be Immersed:
World Building, its Setting and Mood

3.7. Decide on the Language:
Order of Storytelling and Language

At the end of this section you should be able to:

- Define the Core Components of Children's Fiction: Theme, Message and Plot.
- Structure Stories Using Narrative Arcs and Visual Plot Frameworks.
- Choose and Apply Genre to Align Storytelling with Mood and Audience.
- Develop Relatable Characters and Immersive Story Worlds.
- Use Language Thoughtfully: From Word Choice to Narrative Perspective.
- Fill the Technical Script of the Story (Draft 01)

3.1 Start with a Clear Theme and Message:

Significance of Theme and Message

3.1.1 What is a Theme?

A theme is the central idea or underlying concept that weaves through a story, offering depth and coherence to the narrative. It reflects universal truths, values, or life lessons — such as friendship, courage, resilience or identity — that give the story meaning beyond its plot (Lukens, Smith, and Coffel, 2012). In children's fiction, themes are often presented in simple, accessible ways to resonate with young readers and support their emotional and cognitive development (Nodelman and Reimer, 2003). While seemingly straightforward, these themes serve as a foundation for young readers, to explore complex ideas and begin forming their worldview.

3.1.2 What is a Message?

A message is the specific insight, lesson or moral that a work of fiction seeks to communicate to the reader. In contrast to the broader and more abstract nature of a theme, a message is intentional and focused — often revealed through a character's growth, choices, consequences or resolution of conflict (Zipes, 2009). In children's fiction, messages are crafted to be age-appropriate, offering guidance or reflection without being overly didactic. They are often embedded within the emotional and narrative arc of the story, allowing young readers to draw meaning through immersion and empathy rather than instruction (Galda, Cullinan, and Sipe, 2010). While the theme provides a conceptual framework, the message shapes the story's emotional and moral takeaway — what the reader is ultimately encouraged to feel, understand or apply to their own experience.

Theme:
The theme of this story is courage, while the message is: "Facing your fears helps you grow stronger."

Message:
Together, the theme and message ensure that the story is both emotionally resonant and impactful for young readers — entertaining them while also encouraging self-growth and bravery.

Example with Benny the Rabbit:

Benny the Rabbit is a story that beautifully illustrates how a clear theme and message can shape meaningful children's fiction.

Benny, a gentle rabbit, lovingly tends to his vegetable patch every day. But one morning, a flock of pesky crows and a group of wild boars invade, and take over his garden. Scared and unsure of what to do, Benny flees into the deep, dark forest.

As he ventures further into the unfamiliar woods, fear begins to overwhelm him. But in the shadows, Benny meets a wise old owl who helps him understand what courage truly means. With the owl's guidance, Benny learns that the darkness is not as frightening as it seems — the shadows are simply moonlight playing through the trees, and the strange sounds are just other animals talking to one another.

With new confidence and understanding, Benny returns to his vegetable patch. Using the powerful sounds he learned in the forest, he lets out a loud, echoing cry. The crows and wild boars, startled by the noise and shadows, flee in fear. Benny reclaims his garden — not just with strength, but with the courage he acquired during his journey.

Figure 3.1: Smaple Fiction Story Created to Illustrate the Application of the Guidelines, Titled 'Benny the Rabbit'.

Illustrations Completed by Udari Gunawardena

3.1.3 Importance of Theme and Message for Children via Fiction Books

In children's fiction, a well-defined theme and message are not just storytelling tools — they are foundational to crafting narratives that are developmentally appropriate, emotionally resonant, and socially meaningful. These elements guide the narrative structure and emotional tone, ensuring the story is both engaging and enriching for young readers. As discussed in Chapters 01 and 02, which explore the cognitive, emotional and inclusive power of children's books, themes and messages are essential for delivering stories that contribute positively to a child's growth and worldview. Following are a few points explaining the importance of theme and message.

1. Guides the Story's Purpose

A clear theme and message provide a compass for the story's direction, helping writers, illustrators, and editors align plot, character development, and visual design with the story's core intent. According to Galda, Cullinan, and Sipe (2010), thematic clarity ensures that all narrative elements work cohesively to support the story's emotional and educational goals. For example, in a story about courage, the characters' decisions, the challenges they face, and the tone of the illustrations should consistently reinforce acts of bravery.

2. Connects with Young Readers

Themes help make abstract ideas concrete and relatable. Young children often understand the world through recurring patterns and values, and themes such as friendship, fairness, or perseverance offer frameworks they can identify with (Nikolajeva, 2005). A clear theme enables children to connect their lived experiences to the fictional world, making stories not only enjoyable but also personally meaningful.

3. Teaches Life Lessons

Messages serve as the moral or emotional takeaway of the story. While themes explore broader concepts, the message distills the story's intent into a digestible idea or lesson. As Nodelman and Reimer (2003) explain, this helps children internalize values in subtle ways, without overt didacticism. A message like "It's okay to make mistakes" fosters emotional resilience and encourages self compassion in young readers.

4. Enhances Emotional and Cognitive Development

Through engaging with stories that carry meaningful themes and messages, children practice emotional regulation, empathy, and perspective-taking. These are critical components of early childhood development (Paley, 1990; Mar, Oatley and Peterson, 2009). For instance, a story about overcoming fear introduces children to coping mechanisms in a safe narrative environment, allowing them to rehearse emotional responses and critical thinking.

5. Strengthens Engagement Through Simplicity

Given the limited length of most children's books, especially picture books, a focused theme and message prevent narrative clutter and ensure clarity. Simplicity enhances retention and recall, allowing young readers to absorb the story's core ideas through repetition, rhythm, and reinforcement (Lukens, Smith, and Coffel, 2012).

6. Supports Visual Storytelling

Illustrations are not just decorative — they are narrative tools. When guided by a clear theme and message, visuals can reinforce meaning, establish mood, and even communicate subtext. This multimodal storytelling supports early literacy and helps children decode ideas visually and textually (Salisbury and Styles, 2012). For illustrators and art directors, thematic coherence ensures that the imagery aligns meaningfully with the text.resilience and encourages self compassion in young readers.

Quick takeaway!

Connection Between Theme and Message

Aspect	Theme	Message
What is it?	The broader idea or subject which the story explores.	The specific lesson or moral derived from the theme and events.
Purpose	Adds depth and resonance, making the story meaningful.	Provides a clear takeaway or guidance for the reader.
Example with Benny the Rabbit	'Courage': The transformative power of courage through understanding and self-discovery-	"*Facing your fears helps you grow stronger — especially when you take time to understand them.*"
	Benny's story explores how fear is often rooted in the unknown, and how gaining knowledge, perspective, and emotional insight can lead to courage. It highlights a child's journey from vulnerability to strength — not by avoiding fear, but by engaging with it thoughtfully. Through experience, reflection and gentle guidance, Benny discovers that bravery isn't loud or forceful — it's quiet confidence built from within.	Benny's journey through the dark forest represents the common struggle children face with fear and uncertainty. By discovering that the darkness isn't dangerous — just unfamiliar — he gains the courage to return and reclaim his patch. His transformation encourages young readers to meet their fears not with avoidance, but with curiosity and self-trust.

"A clear theme and message form the backbone of effective children's fiction. They shape stories that entertain, educate and inspire — leaving a lasting impression on young readers. Identifying these elements early, helps writers and illustrators create cohesive and meaningful narratives."

3.2 Choose and Create Your Plot

Plot and Types of Plots

3.2.1 What is a Plot?

A plot is the organized pattern of events that make up a story, showing how one event leads to another through cause and effect. It structures the narrative by introducing a conflict or challenge, following the protagonist's journey through rising action, climax and resolution (Lukens, Smith, and Coffel, 2012). Unlike the broader concept of story, which encompasses all the events in chronological order (including backstory and setting), the plot is deliberately arranged to build suspense, emotional engagement and thematic meaning (Forster, 1927).

In children's fiction, plots are typically concise and purposeful, designed to hold the attention of young readers while reinforcing the theme and message. Effective plots in children's books tend to center on relatable problems, clear goals, and emotionally resonant resolutions that support developmental and moral growth (Galda, Cullinan, and Sipe, 2010). The plot not only entertains but also serves as a vehicle for character development, value formation, and imaginative engagement.

Story:
The Story is "What happened"

This is the raw material of the narrative — the full sequence of events told in chronological order, including characters, setting, and background.

Plot:
The Plot is "How it happens".

The deliberate arrangement of events to create cause and effect. Plot introduces conflict, builds tension and connects actions to consequences.

Narrative Structure:
The Narrative Structure is "The shape of the plot".

The formal framework that organizes the plot — commonly using models such as Freytag's Pyramid.

Quick takeaway!

Connection Between Story and Plot

Aspect	Theme	Message
What is it?	The overarching account of characters, events and settings — essentially, what happens. It includes all major and minor events, even those not shown directly.	The deliberate arrangement of story events to create cause and effect, typically around a central conflict.
Purpose	To provide the full context or timeline of the narrative, including backstory, characters and setting.	To build tension, engage the reader and develop character arcs by linking actions to consequences.
Example with Benny the Rabbit	Benny lives peacefully, tending to his beloved vegetable patch. One day, a group of crows and wild boars invade, destroying his garden and forcing him to flee into the nearby forest. In the moonlit woods, Benny sees shadowy, crow-like monsters and becomes overwhelmed with fear. Hiding in the darkness, he meets a wise old owl who gently explains that fear often comes from not understanding the unknown. The owl teaches Benny about shadows, forest sounds and the harmless creatures of the night. Armed with this new knowledge and confidence, Benny returns home, and uses the sounds and shadows of the forest to scare away the intruders. He reclaims his garden — not with force, but with courage and understanding.	Benny's fear ↓ Crows invade ↓ Benny flees ↓ Meets owl ↓ Gains courage ↓ Returns home ↓ Scares away crows and boars ↓ Reclaims patch Each event logically drives the next, showing Benny's growth.

3.2.2 Importance of Understanding the Stages in a Plot

Understanding how a story becomes a plot begins with recognising the importance of structure. While a story is simply a sequence of events, it transforms into a plot when those events are organised into purposeful stages — such as exposition, rising action, climax, and resolution. These stages shape the emotional arc, and give the narrative coherence and meaning. By first understanding the different types of plots and observing how they are constructed, we begin to see how each story is uniquely built — yet still follows a familiar underlying structure.

The following section will help you explore each of these stages in context, as they appear across different plot types in children's fiction.

3.2.3 Types of Plots for Children's Fiction Books

Drawing on Christopher Booker's theory of the Seven Basic Plots (2004), adapted for children's literature, the following are commonly used plot types in children's fiction. Understanding these plot types is essential for writers, illustrators, and educators, as it helps shape stories with clear narrative purpose, emotional resonance and age-appropriate structure. Familiarity with different plot types allows creators to choose the most effective framework for their story's message and theme, while also ensuring variety and engagement for young readers. Each plot type presents unique opportunities for character development, conflict resolution, and imaginative exploration — key elements in crafting meaningful and memorable children's fiction.

Plot structures:

A plot structures the narrative by introducing a conflict or challenge, following the protagonist's journey through rising action, climax, and resolution.

Plot types:

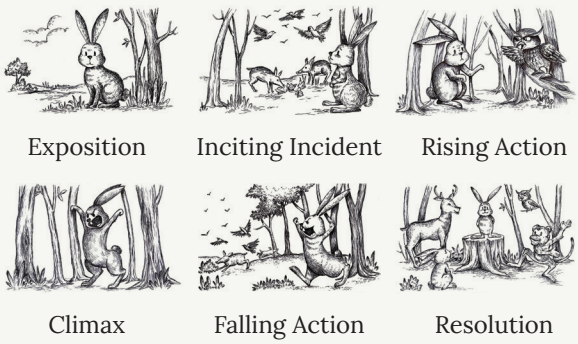
Understanding different plot types helps you choose the most effective structure to support your story's theme and message—while keeping young readers engaged through variety and emotional depth.

Example with Benny the Rabbit:

Exposition Inciting Incident Rising Action

Climax Falling Action Resolution

Plot type 01: Overcoming the Monster



Exposition Inciting Incident Rising Action

Climax Falling Action Resolution

Plot type 02: Rags to Riches

Exposition Inciting Incident Rising Action

Climax Falling Action Resolution

Plot type 03: The Quest

Exposition Inciting Incident Rising Action

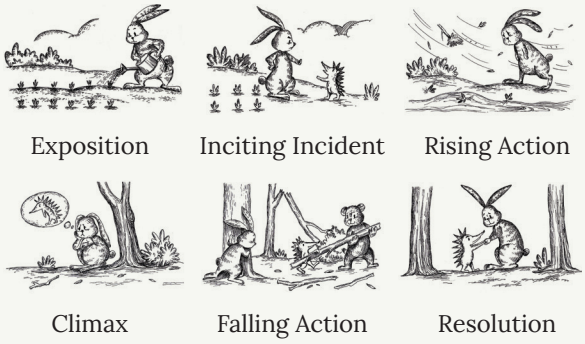
Climax Falling Action Resolution

Plot type 04: Voyage and Return

Exposition Inciting Incident Rising Action

Climax Falling Action Resolution

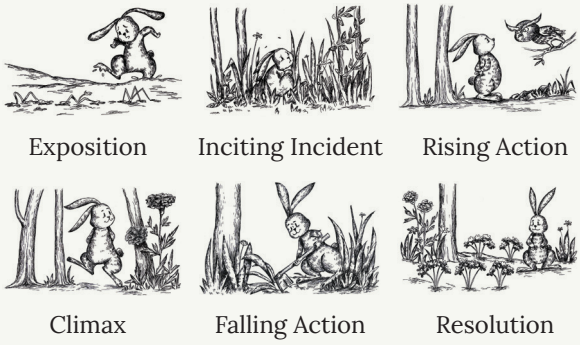
Plot type 05: Comedy



Exposition Inciting Incident Rising Action

Climax Falling Action Resolution

Plot type 06: Tragedy



Exposition Inciting Incident Rising Action

Climax Falling Action Resolution

Plot type 07: Rebirth

> "A plot is what happens when there is a problem that needs solving."
>
> - Jean Karl -

Illustrations Completed by Udari Gunawardena

Figure 3.2: Visualizing the Seven Basic Plots of Christopher Booker.

01 Overcoming the Monster

In this classic plot type, the protagonist is faced with a powerful threat — often symbolized as a monster — which must be confronted and defeated. The "monster" may be a literal creature, a villain, a force of nature, or more commonly in children's fiction, a metaphor for internal struggles such as fear, insecurity, loneliness, or self-doubt (Booker, 2004; Nodelman and Reimer, 2003). The story typically follows the hero's journey from vulnerability to strength, building emotional resilience and courage along the way.

This plot resonates strongly with children because it mirrors their real-life challenges and anxieties. According to Galda, Cullinan, and Sipe (2010), narratives that externalize inner fears help young readers navigate complex emotions. Through this structure, stories offer reassurance and guidance, showing that courage can grow through understanding, friendship, and experience.

Plot #01
Overcoming the Monster:

In this plot, The 'Monster' is metaphorical. It represents Benny's own fear. The story shows how Benny confronts and overcomes his fear. His victory is not only external — reclaiming his patch — but also internal, reflecting emotional resillience.

Example with Benny the Rabbit:

In this plot, the "monster" is not a traditional beast, but a metaphorical one: Benny's fear of the dark forest and the unknown. When crows invade his peaceful vegetable patch, Benny is forced to flee into the woods — an environment he has always feared. The shadows, strange sounds and unfamiliar setting represent his inner anxieties.

As the story unfolds, Benny meets a wise owl who helps him understand that the darkness isn't dangerous — it's just the forest under moonlight, filled with harmless creatures. With this new perspective, Benny transforms his fear into strength. He returns home with confidence and courage, using the very elements that once scared him — sound and shadow — to scare off the crows and reclaim his garden.

Exposition

Benny is a gentle, cautious rabbit who loves tending to his peaceful vegetable patch. His world is safe, familiar and filled with routine.

Inciting Incident

One day, a group of pesky crows and wild boars invade and destroy his garden. Overwhelmed, Benny flees into the dark forest.

Rising Action

As Benny ventures deeper into the moonlit woods, fear grips him. He sees monstrous shadows and hears unfamiliar sounds. While hiding in the darkness, he meets a wise old owl who begins to shift Benny's understanding of fear.

Climax

With the owl's guidance, Benny realises that what he feared was simply the unknown. The shadows are moonlight, the sounds are animals communicating. He gains a new sense of confidence and courage.

Falling Action

Benny returns home, carrying with him the lessons of the forest. He's no longer afraid of the dark or the sounds that once scared him.

Resolution

Using the very elements that once frightened him — sound and shadow — Benny cleverly scares off the crows and wild boars. He reclaims his garden, not with force, but with the quiet strength of understanding and courage.

Illustrations Completed by Udari Gunawardena

Figure 3.6: A Sample Fictional Story Explaining the Plot: Voyage and Return.

02 Rags to Riches

In the Rags to Riches plot, the protagonist begins in a low, disadvantaged or overlooked position, and gradually rises to success, recognition, or self-worth. This rise often comes through internal qualities such as kindness, perseverance, cleverness or bravery. The transformation may be material (wealth, status), emotional (confidence, belonging), or relational (acceptance, friendship) (Booker, 2004; Galda, Cullinan, and Sipe, 2010).

This plot type is especially effective in children's fiction because it reinforces self-belief and emotional growth. It reflects a child's desire for recognition and empowerment, and offers reassurance that even the "small" or "different" can achieve great things. According to Nikolajeva (2005), these stories help children understand social dynamics, and see themselves as capable of overcoming limitations through personal growth and effort.

Plot #02
Rags to Riches:

The theme here centres on quiet courage and inner growth, while the message shows that true respect is earned through action, empathy and bravery in times of need.

Example with Benny the Rabbit:
Rags to Riches Plot

In this plot, Benny is one of many animals living in the meadow — but unlike the others, he's seen as timid and unremarkable, always quietly tending to his garden. The other animals overlook him, thinking he has little to offer. One day, disaster strikes: a group of crows and wild boars invades the meadow, disrupting everyone's homes. While the others panic, Benny bravely ventures into the dark forest to find a solution.

There, he meets the wise old owl, who teaches him how to face fear with understanding and courage. With this newfound knowledge, Benny returns and uses the sounds and shadows of the forest to cleverly drive away the intruders — not just for himself, but for the entire community.

The other animals now see Benny in a new light — not as timid, but as wise, courageous and resourceful. He earns their respect and becomes a quiet hero of the meadow.

This version of Benny the Rabbit reflects the Rags to Riches arc — not through material wealth, but through a transformation in social status and self-worth.

Exposition

Benny is a quiet, unassuming rabbit who is overlooked by the other animals in the meadow.

Inciting Incident

A flock of crows and wild boars invades the meadow, and the other animals are thrown into chaos. Benny decides to help, despite being dismissed by others.

Rising Action

Benny enters the feared dark forest to find a way to solve the problem. He meets a wise owl who helps him see that courage lies in understanding, not strength.

Climax

Benny learns how to use sound and shadow to his advantage. He overcomes his fear and prepares to face the crows.

Falling Action

Benny returns to the meadow and bravely scares off the crows using what he learned in the forest.

Resolution

The other animals, once dismissive, now admire Benny for his bravery and cleverness. Benny rises in status, gaining respect and self-confidence — fulfilling the Rags to Riches transformation.

Illustrations Completed by Udari Gunawardena

Figure 3.4: A Sample Fictional Story Explaining the Plot: Rags to Riches.

03 The Quest

In The Quest plot, the protagonist embarks on a journey — literal or symbolic — in pursuit of a goal, object, truth, or personal discovery. Along the way, the hero encounters obstacles, helpers, and trials that test resolve, intelligence and values. The journey is just as important as the destination, often leading to personal transformation and insight (Booker, 2004; Nodelman and Reimer, 2003).

In children's fiction, quest plots are especially engaging because they invite readers into imaginative adventures while embedding deeper themes such as perseverance, friendship or self-discovery. According to Galda, Cullinan and Sipe (2010), quests support cognitive and moral development by modeling goal-setting, decision-making and overcoming adversity — skills vital to young readers' growth.

Plot #03
The Quest:

This version of Benny the Rabbit reflects a Quest arc — in which Benny sets out to recover what was lost, but returns with something greater: wisdom, empathy, and the strength gained through perseverance and compassion.

Example with Benny the Rabbit:
The Quest Plot

In this plot Benny is heartbroken — his carefully saved carrot seeds have been taken. The crows that invaded his garden have not only eaten his crops but also carried away the last of his seeds into the dark forest. Without them, Benny cannot replant his patch, and the thought of losing another harvest fills him with sadness.

Determined to set things right, Benny embarks on a quest into the forest to recover the stolen seeds. Though frightened by the shadows and sounds, he pushes on. Along the way, he faces challenges: navigating through thick undergrowth, crossing a narrow log bridge, and decoding confusing tracks left by the crows.

He meets helpful forest creatures — a clever squirrel who shows him a hidden shortcut, and a firefly who lights the way through a dark thicket. At last, he encounters the wise old owl who teaches him how to observe quietly and listen carefully. Through this, Benny discovers the crows' hiding place.

But instead of rushing in, Benny pauses and realizes the crows aren't greedy — they're hungry too. He negotiates with them, offering to share future harvests if they return the seeds. Touched by his kindness, the crows agree. Benny returns home with the seeds and new forest friends, wiser and stronger than before.

Exposition

Benny tends his garden lovingly, saving carrot seeds for replanting.

Inciting Incident

The crows invade and steal his precious seeds. Benny is deeply saddened and unsure of what to do.

Rising Action

Benny ventures into the forest to find the seeds. He faces challenges — navigation, fear and confusion — but also meets helpful creatures who guide him.

Climax

With the owl's help, Benny discovers the crows' hiding place. He chooses understanding over confrontation and offers to share his harvest in return for the seeds.

Falling Action

The crows accept, and Benny returns with the seeds and a new sense of confidence and community.

Resolution

Benny replants his garden. The quest has not only restored what was lost but also built bridges between forest creatures, and helped Benny grow in wisdom and empathy.

Illustrations Completed by Udari Gunawardena

Figure 3.5: A Sample Fictional Story Explaining the Plot: The Quest

04 Voyage and Return

In the Voyage and Return plot, the protagonist leaves their familiar world, enters an unfamiliar and often unsettling place, learns important lessons through challenges and encounters, and then returns home transformed (Booker, 2004). This plot structure helps children process transitions — both emotional and environmental — and supports growth through safe exploration.

In children's fiction, this journey is often symbolic of common life transitions: starting school, moving to a new place, or learning to navigate independence. According to Nodelman and Reimer (2003), this structure allows young readers to explore the unknown through a safe narrative lens, ultimately returning to safety with newfound understanding. Galda, Cullinan, and Sipe (2010) note that this reflective return is what distinguishes this plot type — it emphasizes the internal change over the physical journey.

Plot #04
Voyage and Return:

Here Benny the Rabbit reflects a Voyage and Return arc — in which Benny steps into the unknown, gains understanding through unexpected encounters, and returns transformed with empathy, wisdom, and a renewed sense of community.

Example with Benny the Rabbit:
Voyage and Return Plot

In this plot, Benny the Rabbit wakes one morning to find his vegetable patch ruined — trampled and dug up. The crows and wild boars, who had once simply stolen a few seeds, have now made a mess of his entire garden. Devastated and frustrated, Benny feels lost. Seeking answers, he decides to venture deep into the forest where the crows and wild boars came from, hoping to understand why they're causing so much damage.

As he enters the unfamiliar forest, Benny finds himself out of his element. The paths are tangled, the noises are strange, and everything feels unfamiliar. Early in his journey, he meets a wise old owl, who offers him a cryptic message: "Sometimes the answers you seek are not what you expect — but what you learn on the way."

As Benny continues, he meets a grumpy hedgehog who teaches him to slow down and listen, a singing squirrel who helps him navigate through brambles using rhythm and rhyme, and a family of mice who share their knowledge of the forest's ecosystem. With their help, Benny discovers the crows' hidout — overcrowded and lacking food. They didn't invade out of mischief, but out of need.

Benny returns home not just with answers, but with a new perspective. He rebuilds his garden with a space set aside for shared harvests, welcoming the crows, boars and other animals in times of scarcity. Through the journey, he learns empathy, resourcefulness and the power of returning changed.

Exposition

Benny lovingly tends to his vegetable patch. One day, he finds it destroyed by crows.

Inciting Incident

Confused and upset, Benny decides to venture into the forest to understand the cause of the crows' behaviour.

Rising Action

In the unfamiliar forest, Benny faces confusion, fear and unexpected terrain. He meets new forest creatures who offer guidance and perspective.

Climax

Benny discovers the crows are struggling, not malicious. He understands that their actions were driven by need, not cruelty.

Falling Action

Benny journeys home, reflecting on what he's learned from the owl, hedgehog, squirrel and mice.

Resolution

Benny transforms his garden into a shared space, incorporating new knowledge and fostering community. He returns not just with a solution, but as a wiser, more compassionate rabbit.

Illustrations Completed by Udari Gunawardena

Figure 3.6: A Sample Fictional Story Explaining the Plot: Voyage and Return.

05 Comedy

In the Comedy plot, the protagonist becomes entangled in a series of humorous misunderstandings, mishaps or social mix-ups — often due to their own quirks, misinterpretations or lack of experience. These stories are typically light-hearted, revolving around confusion, exaggeration, or unexpected consequences that eventually lead to resolution through humour, reconciliation, or creative problem-solving (Booker, 2004).

In children's fiction, comedy is not only entertaining but also instructive, allowing young readers to engage with themes such as friendship, honesty or self-awareness in an emotionally safe space. According to Galda, Cullinan, and Sipe (2010), comedic plots offer children a chance to learn from characters' playful errors without the weight of serious consequences. The laughter invites empathy, making the character's growth both accessible and enjoyable.

Nikolajeva (2005) notes that comedy in children's literature often follows a gentle arc — where flaws or mistakes are not punished but embraced as part of the character's learning journey. Through this lens, comedy becomes a tool for emotional development, helping children laugh at their own missteps and understand that imperfection is part of being human (or rabbit!).

Plot #05
Comedy:

This version of Benny the Rabbit reflects a Comedy arc — in which Benny's misunderstandings lead to chaos, but also connection, showing that light-hearted mistakes can bring joy and strengthen friendships.

Example with Benny the Rabbit:
Comedy Plot

In this plot, Benny is a silly rabbit who wants to bring joy to his forest friends. One day, he decides to throw a party — but Benny has never planned one before. He starts by gathering advice. The squirrel tells him to "spice things up," so Benny mixes chopped chillies into the juice, making it far too spicy to drink. The hedgehog says "make it colourful," so Benny decorates with his brightest cloth instead of using the natural flowers and leaves of the forest. The owl suggests, "invite everyone," and Benny enthusiastically sends invitations to everyone — including the pesky crows and wild boars.

On party day, nothing goes as planned. The juice is too spicy, the decorations fall down in the wind, and the crows and boars create a mess. At first, the guests are confused — but when Benny slips on a banana peel and lands in a pile of jackfruit, everyone bursts out laughing. The crows, surprisingly, bring music made from bamboo, and the party turns out to be the most memorable celebration the forest has ever had.

Benny learns that even when things don't go perfectly, joy can still bloom through laughter, kindness and unexpected surprises.

Exposition

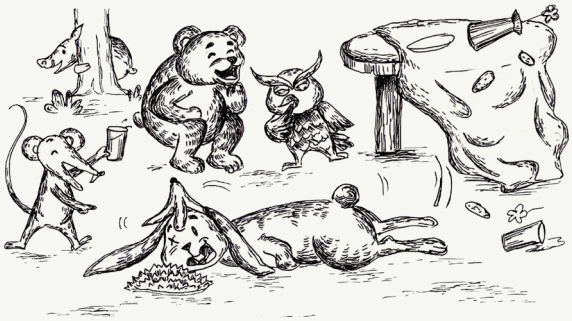
Benny wants to bring joy to his forest friends and decides to throw a party — even though he's never planned one before.

Inciting Incident

He asks for advice from others, misinterprets it, and prepares: spicy juice with chillies, decorations made of bright cloth, and invitations sent to everyone — including the mischievous crows and wild boars.

Rising Action

On party day, everything goes hilariously wrong: the juice is too spicy, the decorations fall and the unexpected guests create chaos.



Climax

Benny slips on a banana peel and lands in a pile of jackfruit — causing a burst of laughter that shifts the mood completely.

Falling Action

The crows bring bamboo instruments, the party continues joyfully, and everyone embraces the silliness.

Resolution

Benny realises that even when things go wrong, laughter, kindness and spontaneity can make something truly special.

Illustrations Completed by Udari Gunawardena

Figure 3.7: A Sample Fictional Story Explaining the Plot: Comedy.

06 Tragedy

In the Tragedy plot, the protagonist makes a mistake, acts on a personal flaw, or fails to act when it matters — leading to negative consequences, regret or loss. While traditional tragedies often end in downfall or destruction, in children's fiction, the structure is softened to prioritize emotional learning, self-awareness and growth, rather than punishment (Booker, 2004).

This plot is particularly valuable in stories that aim to teach children about accountability, decision-making and the impact of one's actions. As Nodelman and Reimer (2003) explain, tragedy in children's literature often focuses less on sorrow, and more on the development of empathy and understanding. The protagonist typically learns from the experience, opening space for reflection and behavioural change.

Galda, Cullinan, and Sipe (2010) suggest that these plots help young readers safely explore difficult emotions such as guilt, remorse or disappointment. By witnessing a character make a poor choice and face the natural consequences, children are encouraged to think critically about their own choices and to understand that mistakes are part of growing up — as long as they lead to learning.

Plot #06
Tragedy:

This version of Benny the Rabbit reflects a Tragedy arc — in which Benny's fear-driven decision leads to unintended loss. Yet through reflection and remorse, he learns that compassion and community are stronger than isolation, and mistakes can be powerful teachers.

Example with Benny the Rabbit:
Tragedy Plot

In this plot, Benny is an overprotective Rabbit. After the crow invasion, Benny rebuilds his vegetable patch and becomes fiercely protective of it. When a small hedgehog named Nibby knocks on his gate asking for food, Benny — still anxious and mistrusting — refuses. "I worked hard for this," he says. I can't take any more risks."

That night, a storm rolls in. Heavy rain floods Benny's garden, washing away much of his new crops. He tries to fix it alone, but the soil is too wet, and the damage is done. Exhausted and disheartened, Benny sits at the edge of his garden, questioning his decision.

The next day, Benny sees Nibby helping another forest creature rebuild a den damaged by the storm. Touched and remorseful, Benny approaches Nibby to apologise. Nibby forgives him warmly and even helps Benny restore parts of his patch. Benny learns that protecting what you have doesn't mean shutting others out — and that kindness can be a stronger shelter than fences.

Exposition

After recovering from a crow invasion, Benny rebuilds his vegetable patch. He's proud — but also deeply anxious and protective of what he's restored.

Inciting Incident

A small hedgehog named Nibby asks Benny for help and food. Still mistrustful, Benny refuses, choosing safety over generosity.

Rising Action

That night, a storm floods Benny's garden. He tries to save it alone, but the damage is overwhelming. His efforts fail.

Climax

Exhausted, Benny sits among the wreckage, full of regret and self-doubt. He begins to question whether his decision to shut Nibby out was right.

Falling Action

Benny sees Nibby helping another animal rebuild after the storm. Moved by this act of kindness, he realises the value of community.

Resolution

Benny apologises to Nibby, who forgives him. Together, they begin to restore the garden. Benny learns that true protection includes trust, kindness and shared care.

Illustrations Completed by Udari Gunawardena

Figure 3.8: A sample fictional story explaining the plot: Tragedy.

07 Rebirth

In the Rebirth plot, the protagonist begins in a state of emotional stagnation, isolation or negativity — such as fear, hopelessness, anger or apathy — and experiences a transformation that leads to renewal, growth and a shift in perspective (Booker, 2004).

This change is not triggered by an external conflict alone, but by a deeper internal journey in which the character reconnects with their values, relationships or sense of purpose.

In children's fiction, rebirth stories are especially powerful for modeling emotional resilience, healing and self-discovery. According to Nikolajeva (2005), these narratives often mirror the emotional rhythms of a child's inner life — validating feelings such as sadness or self-doubt while showing a hopeful path forward. The plot tends to revolve around quiet turning points rather than dramatic events, making it accessible and emotionally resonant for young readers. As Galda, Cullinan, and Sipe (2010) note, stories of rebirth allow children to witness emotional transformation in a safe and encouraging way. These plots gently convey that it is okay to struggle, withdraw, or lose motivation — but that with reflection, connection and time, one can return to the world renewed.

Plot #07
Rebirth:
This version of Benny the Rabbit reflects a Rebirth arc — in which emotional exhaustion gives way to renewal. Through quiet reflection and reconnection with the natural world, Benny rediscovers purpose, showing that healing often begins by pausing, observing and starting again.

Example with Benny the Rabbit:
Rebirth Plot

In this plot, Benny is a Sad Rabbit. Season after season, Benny works tirelessly on his garden. But after a long monsoon filled with heavy rains and unpredictable weather, his crops fail, and the soil is left waterlogged and muddy. His efforts seem wasted. The once cheerful rabbit now feels defeated. "Maybe I'm just not good at this anymore," he sighs, letting his tools rust and weeds take over. He stops tending to the garden and withdraws from his forest friends.

One afternoon, the wise old owl visits and perches on Benny's empty tool bench. "Sometimes," the owl says gently, "we must step outside our patch to find our way back to it." Encouraged, Benny takes a slow walk through the forest.

As he walks, he notices the resilience of the natural world. New leaves glisten on the trees, mushrooms bloom in the damp soil, and young animals scamper about in puddles. He spots a wild patch of marigolds blooming brightly despite the wetness. Benny's heart stirs. He remembers that the garden was never just about perfect vegetables — it was about life, connection and growth.

Returning home, Benny picks up his tools again. He drains the excess water, enriches the soil and plants new seeds. He even leaves space for wildflowers and small visitors. In time, his patch blooms — not just with vegetables, but with renewed energy and shared beauty. Benny is reborn — not only as a gardener, but as someone who understands the rhythms of nature and the importance of rest, reflection and starting anew.

Exposition

Benny, once a cheerful and dedicated gardener, has worked tirelessly season after season. But after a long, harsh monsoon, his crops fail, and the soil becomes muddy and lifeless.

Inciting Incident

Disheartened and exhausted, Benny gives up. He lets the garden go wild, withdraws from his friends, and begins to believe he's no longer capable.

Rising Action

The wise old owl visits and offers a gentle piece of advice: "Sometimes we must step outside our patch to find our way back to it." Benny takes a quiet walk through the forest.

Climax

As he walks, Benny reconnects with the resilience of nature. He observes how life continues despite the rain. A patch of blooming marigolds stirs something within him — a reminder of why he started gardening in the first place.

Falling Action

Inspired and renewed, Benny returns to his garden. He begins to clear the weeds, drain the water and tend to the soil with fresh perspective.

Resolution

The garden blooms again, filled not only with vegetables but with wildflowers and signs of shared life. Benny is reborn — with a new understanding of balance and renewal, the quiet strength found in rest and reflection.

Illustrations Completed by Udari Gunawardena

Figure 3.9: A Sample Fictional Story Explaining the Plot: Rebirth.

Quick takeaway!

Connection Between Story and Plot

Plot	**Purpose** (For the protagonist)	**Initiation** (What sets the journey in motion)	
1. Overcoming the Monster	To face and conquer a fear or external threat	The protagonist encounters a dangerous force “fear”	
2. Rags to Riches	To discover inner worth and earn recognition	The protagonist starts in obscurity or disadvantage	
3. The Quest	To achieve a meaningful goal through adventure	A need, loss or calling launches the journey	
4. Voyage and Return	To explore the unknown and return wiser	Leaving the familiar world (voluntarily or not)	
5. Comedy	To navigate confusion and find joy or connection	Misunderstanding or social mishap creates disorder	
6. Tragedy	To show the cost of a flaw or harmful choice	A poor decision, flaw or pressure begins the fall	
7. Rebirth	To rediscover hope and self through inner renewal	A period of sadness, disillusionment or isolation	

	Focus (Main experience or challenge faced)	**Ending** (How the story resolves for the protagonist)	**Transformation** (How the protagonist changes)
	Confronting an external obstacle or symbolic "monster"	The protagonist defeats or escapes the threat	From fearful to courageous
	Gaining confidence and proving value	The protagonist earns respect, reward or acceptance	From unseen or underestimated to respected and fulfilled
	Physical journey with emotional and moral growth	The protagonist reaches the goal and returns changed	From passive to purposeful and resilient
	Navigating unfamiliar spaces and learning through trials	The protagonist returns home with greater insight	From naïve to wise
	Chaos, miscommunication and playful error	The protagonist finds resolution through humour or clarity	From confused or clumsy to connected and joyful
	Inner conflict, moral misjudgement or emotional loss	The protagonist faces consequences and self-realisation	From unaware or self-focused to regretful and wiser
	Reflection, emotional growth and reawakening	The protagonist is renewed with energy, purpose or clarity	From hopeless or lost to renewed and emotionally restored

Want to shape your story into a plot? Use this table to help you choose the most suitable plot type. It can support:

- Writers in selecting a structure that aligns with their story's purpose
- Educators in teaching how plot shapes meaning and transformation
- Illustrators in planning visual storytelling and emotional pacing Let the plot guide the message — and the message shape the journey.

3.3 Structuring Your Plot Into Narrative Arc

Plot Structures and Diagrams

3.3.1 What is a Narrative Arc?

A narrative arc is the structured path a story follows, shaping how the plot unfolds and how the reader experiences the journey. It organizes the sequence of events — from the beginning to the end — into meaningful stages such as exposition, rising action, climax, falling action, and resolution. This arc provides clarity, momentum, and emotional pacing, ensuring the story is coherent, engaging and satisfying (Lukens, Smith, and Coffel, 2012).

Visualizing the narrative arc through diagrams helps both writers and readers understand how tension builds and resolves across the story. Traditionally, the arc is represented by Freytag's Pyramid, in which the plot climbs towards a climax and then descends as conflicts are resolved. The horizontal axis of such diagrams typically represents time or narrative progression, while the vertical axis reflects emotional intensity or tension. However, not all stories follow this exact shape. Children's fiction often features alternative narrative arcs. Understanding these variations allows writers and educators to better shape stories that resonate with young readers, while also helping children identify familiar narrative patterns and develop deeper comprehension of storytelling structures.

3.3.2 Key Stages and Narrative Structures

A good plot should be well structured. The key elements of a plot — also known as the narrative structure or narrative arc — form the backbone of any story, guiding the movement from beginning to end. These elements are often outlined and visualized using Freytag's Pyramid, especially in traditional storytelling. Figures 3.10–3.15 explain the key stages of a narrative arc.

Example with Benny the Rabbit:

1. Exposition Incident

- Introduces the setting, characters and the status quo.
- Provides background information the reader needs to understand the story.
- Often includes hints at the main conflict to come.

Figure 3.10: Benny is a gentle, cautious rabbit who loves tending to his peaceful vegetable patch. His world is safe, familiar and filled with routine.

Refer Figure: 3.10

Refer Figure: 3.11

2. Inciting Incident

- The event that disrupts the status quo and triggers the main conflict
- Moves the protagonist into action and sets the plot in motion.

Figure 3.11: One day, a group of pesky crows and wild boars invade, and destroy his garden. Overwhelmed, Benny flees into the dark forest.

Refer Figure: 3.12

3. Rising Action

- A series of events or challenges that build tension and develop the conflict.
- The protagonist tries to solve the problem but faces obstacles.
- Builds towards the climax.

Figure 3.12: As Benny ventures deeper into the moonlit woods, fear grips him. He sees monstrous shadows and hears unfamiliar sounds. While hiding in the darkness, he meets a wise old owl who begins to shift Benny's understanding of fear.

Refer figure: 3.13

4. Climax

- The turning point or most intense moment of the story.
- The protagonist makes a key decision or faces the central conflict directly.
- Often leads to change or growth.

Figure 3.13: With the owl's guidance, Benny realises that what he feared was simply the unknown. The shadows are moonlight, the sounds are animals communicating. He gains a new sense of confidence and courage.

Refer Figure: 3.14

5. Falling Action

- Events that follow the climax and begin to resolve the conflict.
- Shows the consequences of the protagonist's decisions

Figure 3.14: Benny returns home, carrying with him the lessons of the forest. He's no longer afraid of the dark or the sounds that once scared him.

Refer Figure: 3.15

6. Resolution

- The conflict is resolved, and the story concludes.
- The protagonist often returns to a new "normal" with growth or change.
- Also called denouement.

Figure 3.15: Using the very elements that once frightened him — sound and shadow — Benny cleverly scares off the crows and wild boars. He reclaims his garden, not with force, but with the quiet strength of understanding and courage.

a) Traditional Narrative Arc (Also called: Freytag's Pyramid or Dramatic Arc)

Structure:

Start ⟶ Middle ⟶ End

Exposition ⟶ Rising Action ⟶ Climax ⟶ Falling Action ⟶ Resolution

Exposition ⟶ Inciting Incident ⟶ Rising Action ⟶ Climax ⟶ Falling Action ⟶ Resolution

This is the classic plot structure used in storytelling, in which tension rises steadily toward a central climax and then falls as the conflict is resolved. The story begins with exposition — introducing characters and setting, and the initial situation then moves into rising action as the protagonist faces challenges or obstacles. The climax marks the turning point of greatest intensity or change, followed by a period of falling action and a satisfying resolution.

In Benny the Rabbit (Overcoming the Monster), the arc begins with peace in Benny's garden, disrupted by destructive crows and wild boars. Fleeing into the forest, Benny faces his fears and meets a wise owl who helps him reframe his understanding of the dark. The climax occurs when Benny realises the forest is not frightening but full of life. In the falling action, he returns home with new courage. The resolution comes when Benny reclaims his patch by using sound and shadow not with fear, but with insight and cleverness.

Why use it:

Freytag's Pyramid offers a balanced and complete emotional structure. It helps children understand story progression — from introduction and build-up, through the turning point, to resolution. It supports empathy, anticipation and reflection.

Why use it:

- Highlights the emotional pacing of the story.
- Encourages recognition of cause and effect.Often includes hints at the main conflict to come.
- Provides scaffolding for stories involving growth, change or moral learning.

When to use it:

- In classic children's fiction or folktales.
- When the character goes through a full emotional arc.
- In educational contexts for teaching narrative stages (Lukens, Smith and Coffel, 2012).

Traditional Narrative Arc:

Benny the Rabbit (Overcoming the Monster) Here Benny gains courage in the middle and applies it in the end.

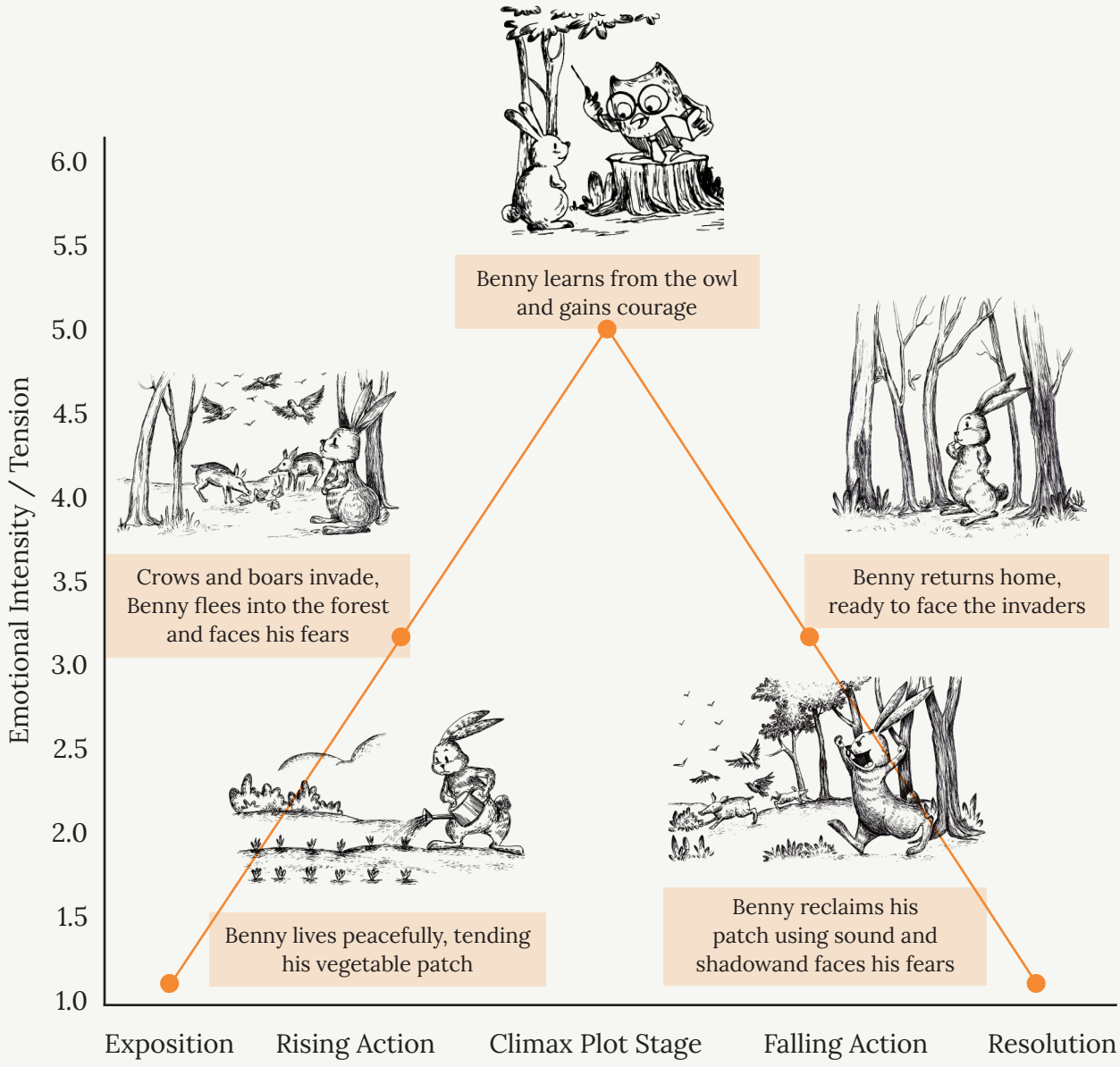


Figure 3.16: Traditional Narrative Arc explained through a sample fictional story, Benny the Rabbit, based on the plot type "Overcoming the Monster."

Importance of a Plot Diagram

- Understanding Stories: Helps readers and writers identify the key components of a narrative, making it easier to analyse themes and character development.
- Framing Stories: Provides writers with a clear blueprint for structuring their narrative, ensuring it remains engaging and cohesive.
- Visual Clarity: Simplifies complex stories into an easy-to-follow structure.

b) Climactic Ending Curve (Also called: Linear Build-Up or Minimal Resolution Structure)

Structure:

Exposition ⟶ Rising Tension ⟶ Climax (End)

Unlike Freytag's Pyramid, which rises and then falls, the Climactic Ending Curve builds steadily upward and ends shortly after the emotional peak. It maps a story where the resolution is brief, quiet, or symbolic, often concluding with an internal shift rather than extended action.

In Benny the Rabbit (Quest), the curve begins with loss (his stolen seeds) and rises as Benny ventures into the forest, faces challenges, and meets helpful allies. Each moment builds tension and emotional depth, moving the story upward.

The climax arrives when Benny finds the crows but responds with empathy rather than anger. His choice to share the harvest transforms the conflict into understanding. This act of kindness is the emotional peak.

Afterward, the story ends simply — Benny returns with the seeds and new friends. There is no drawn-out resolution; the transformation is clear, and the emotional arc is complete.

Why use it:

This structure builds steadily to a single emotional or action-based high point, often used in picture books where there is no extended falling action.

Why use it:

- Emphasises emotional payoff or transformation.
- Leaves a strong final impression on young readers.
- Mirrors real experiences of sudden insight or empowerment.

When to use it:

- In short-form stories or conceptual picture books.
- When focusing on themes of discovery, identity, or self-worth.
- When the resolution is implicit or emotional, rather than a separate action (Nikolajeva, 2005).

Climactic Ending Curve: Benny the Rabbit (Quest)

Here the moment of courage is the resolution — his return and reclaiming of the garden happens almost immediately after the emotional shift.

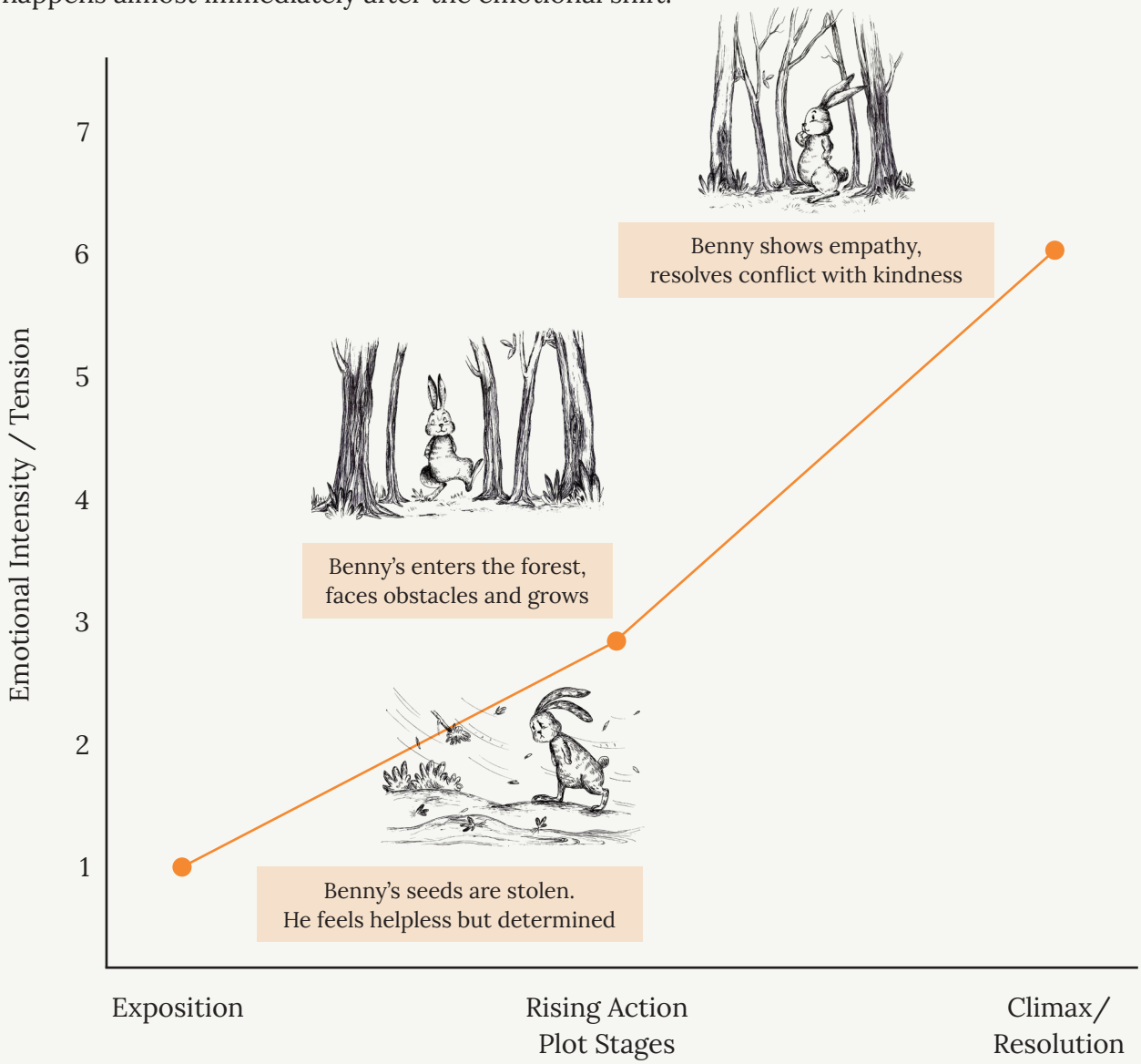


Figure 3.16: Climatic Ending Curve Eplained Through a Sample Fictional Story, Benny the Rabbit, Based on the Plot Type "Overcoming the Monster."

> "Choosing the right arc ensures your story's structure aligns with its emotional and narrative goals — keeping young readers engaged while guiding them toward deeper meaning."

c) Upward Spiral Plot (Also called: Cumulative Escalation or Repetitive Build Structure)

Structure:

Repetition ⟶ Escalation ⟶ Turning Point ⟶ Resolution (usually joyful)

Unlike a linear curve such as Freytag's Pyramid, an Upward Spiral Plot diagram is not based on a standard X/Y axis. Instead of mapping time along the horizontal axis and emotional tension along the vertical, the spiral illustrates momentum and repetition, building outward in a looping, cumulative motion.

The center of the spiral marks the beginning of the story. From there, the spiral expands outward and upward with each new event or mishap. In Benny the Rabbit (Comedy), each loop of the spiral represents a repetition or escalation. For example, adding too much chillie to the juice, decorating with the wrong materials, or accidentally inviting the wrong guests. These events don't change Benny's goal, but they increase the tension, confusion, and comic absurdity, much like a snowball rolling downhill and growing with every turn.

Eventually, the spiral reaches its turning points; a moment that breaks the pattern and shifts the emotional direction of the story. In Benny's case, this is when he slips on a banana peel and lands in a pile of jackfruit, triggering laughter among all the guests. At this peak, chaos transforms into joy.

After this, the spiral doesn't continue it concludes in a release: the story ends on a high note, with joy, music, and a sense of communal celebration.

Why use it:

Spiral plots reflect how children perceive rhythm, sequence, and play. They create engagement through pattern recognition and variation — each loop brings the character closer to transformation.

Why use it:

- Builds comic tension or emotional layering through repeated mistakes or discoveries.
- Often leads to a climactic twist or unexpected success.
- Supports language development and participation in early readers (Galda, Cullinan and Sipe, 2010).

When to use it:

- In humorous or cumulative picture books.
- For early readers or read-aloud storytelling.
- When the plot builds through repeated missteps or misunderstandings.

Upward Spiral: Benny the Rabbit (Comedy)

Here each party preparation misfires, escalating the chaos until one comical moment brings everyone together.

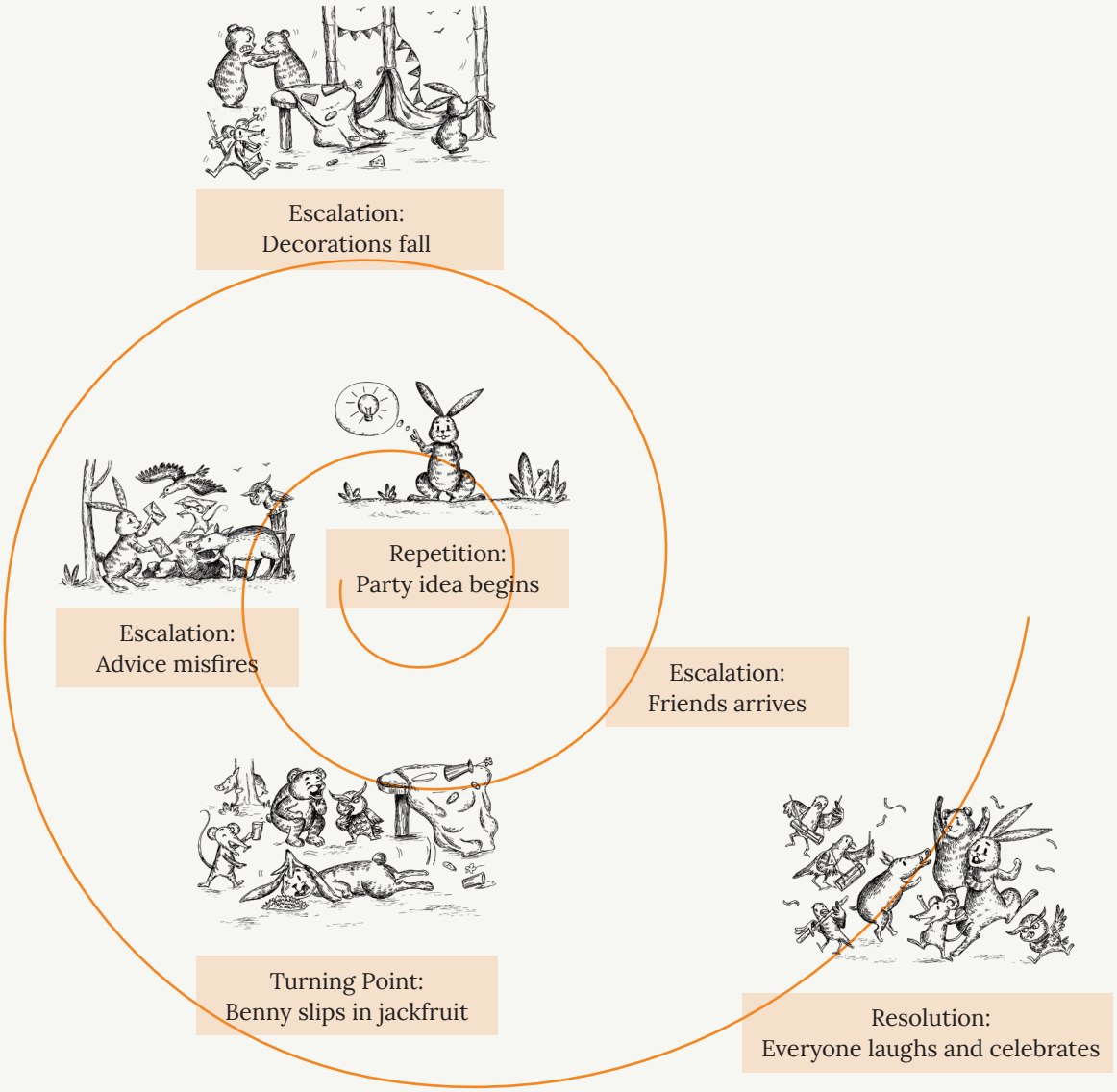


Figure 3.18: Upward Spiral Plot Explained Through a Sample Fictional Story, Benny the Rabbit, Based on the Plot Type "Comedy."

3.3.3 Examples of Other Narrative Arcs: Vonnegut's Theory

Kurt Vonnegut (1922–2007), a renowned American novelist and satirist best known for Slaughterhouse-Five and Cat's Cradle, proposed a compelling theory about the emotional structure of stories. With his signature wit and clarity, Vonnegut argued that most narratives follow recognizable patterns of fortune charting how characters' circumstances rise or fall over time.

He visualized these story arcs on a simple graph, with the vertical axis representing good or ill fortune, and the horizontal axis representing time. Using this model, he illustrated widely recurring narrative forms such as "Man in a Hole," "Boy Meets Girl," "From Bad to Worse," "Cinderella" and others. These curves reveal how emotional rhythm is central to audience engagement, and how stories regardless of culture, share commonality.

> "Kurt Vonnegut's theory shows us that all stories have an emotional shape. Whether your character falls into a hole and climbs out, or rises with joy before tumbling down again, these shapes help us feel the journey — not just follow it."

a) Kurt Vonnegut's "Man in a Hole"

Vonnegut's "Man in a Hole" Arc: "Things get worse, then better." It helps children understand emotional resilience — how a character can fall, reflect, and recover stronger. This structure illustrates a character who starts in a good place (A), falls into difficulty (B), and climbs out again stronger or wiser (C–D).

This arc helps children understand emotional resilience — how a character can fall, reflect, and recover stronger. Refer to figure 3.19 an example story from Benny the Rabbit.

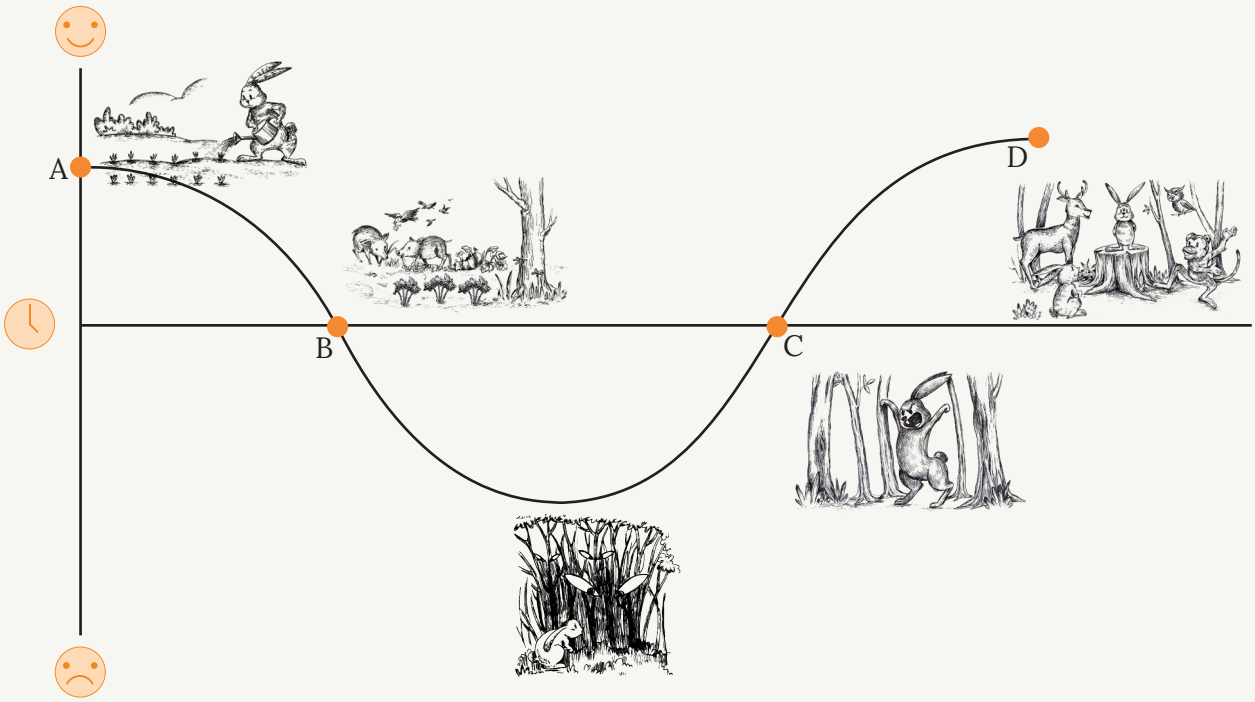


Figure 3.19: Man in a Hole Narrative Arc Explained Through a Sample Fiction Story

A. The protagonist is in a happy or stable state.
Figure A: Benny is a gentle, cautious rabbit who takes joy in tending his peaceful vegetable patch.

B. Something bad happens—the "hole".
Figure B: Pesky crows and wild boars destroy his garden. Benny is overwhelmed and flees into the dark forest.

B-C. The protagonist struggles, faces challenges, or learns.
Figure: Benny ventures into the woods, frightened by shadows and sounds. He meets a wise owl.
Figure: The owl helps Benny understand his fears — the unknown isn't so scary after all.

C. The protagonist begins to rise again, applying insight or action.
Figure C: Benny returns home, carrying new courage. He no longer fears the dark.

D. The protagonist is in a better state than before.
Figure D: Benny uses sound and shadow to outsmart the crows. He reclaims his garden with calm cleverness — not fear.

b) Kurt Vonnegut's "Boy Meets Girl"

Vonnegut's "Boy Meets Girl" Arc: "Things get better after a meaningful encounter." This plot type typically involves harmony after a separation or conflict, not necessarily romantic. In this case, Benny forms a transformative bond — with the owl — that leads to resolution and renewal.

This arc shows inner transformation through relationship — not romance, but a bond of trust and wisdom that shifts the character from isolation or fear into connection and growth. Refer to figure 3.20, an example story from Benny the Rabbit, Figure.

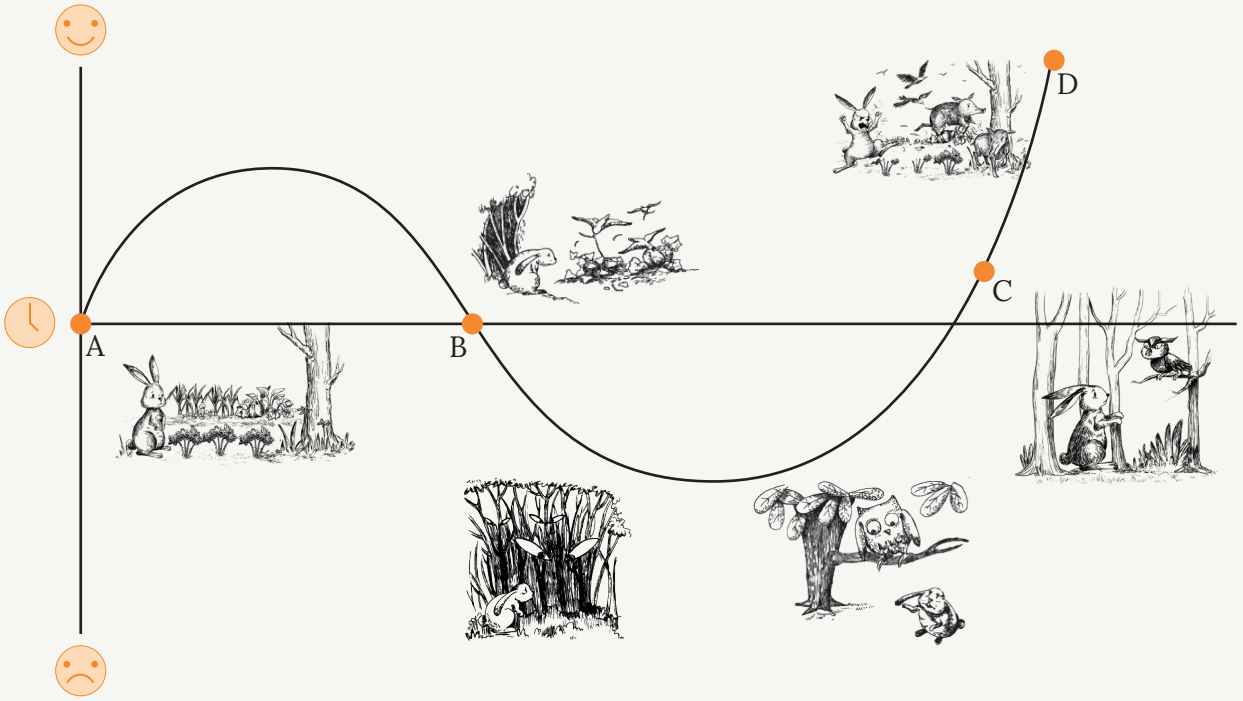


Figure 3.20: Boy Meets Girl Narrative Arc Explained Through a Sample Fiction Story

A. The protagonist is in a stable but limited state.
Figure A: Benny is a shy and timid rabbit who finds joy in a newly discovered vegetable patch. Life is gentle, though small.

B. Something disrupts this peace.
Figure B: Pesky crows invade the patch, ruining the peace Benny found. He feels powerless.

B–C, A. turning point begins through encounter.
Figure: Though scared, Benny ventures into the forest. He encounters strange sounds and shadows.
Figure: He meets a wise owl who gently challenges Benny's fear.

C. The encounter brings change or insight.
Figure C: The owl becomes a mentor. With new understanding, Benny realises the shadows are not monsters — they're part of the forest's life.

D. The protagonist is transformed and reconciled.
With the owl's help, Benny outsmarts the crows and reclaims the garden. But more importantly, he grows braver, wiser, and now shares his patch with forest friends.

c) Kurt Vonnegut's "From Bad to Worse"

Vonnegut's "From Bad to Worse" Arc: This plot follows a downward trajectory, "Things are bad... and they get worse." It helps readers understand consequences, empathy, and emotional depth. In children's fiction, such endings are usually softened with a hint of growth or awareness. This arc can still hold meaningful value for children, by showing emotional depth, encouraging caution, and offering subtle hope through reflection. Refer to figure 3.21, example story from Benny the Rabbit.

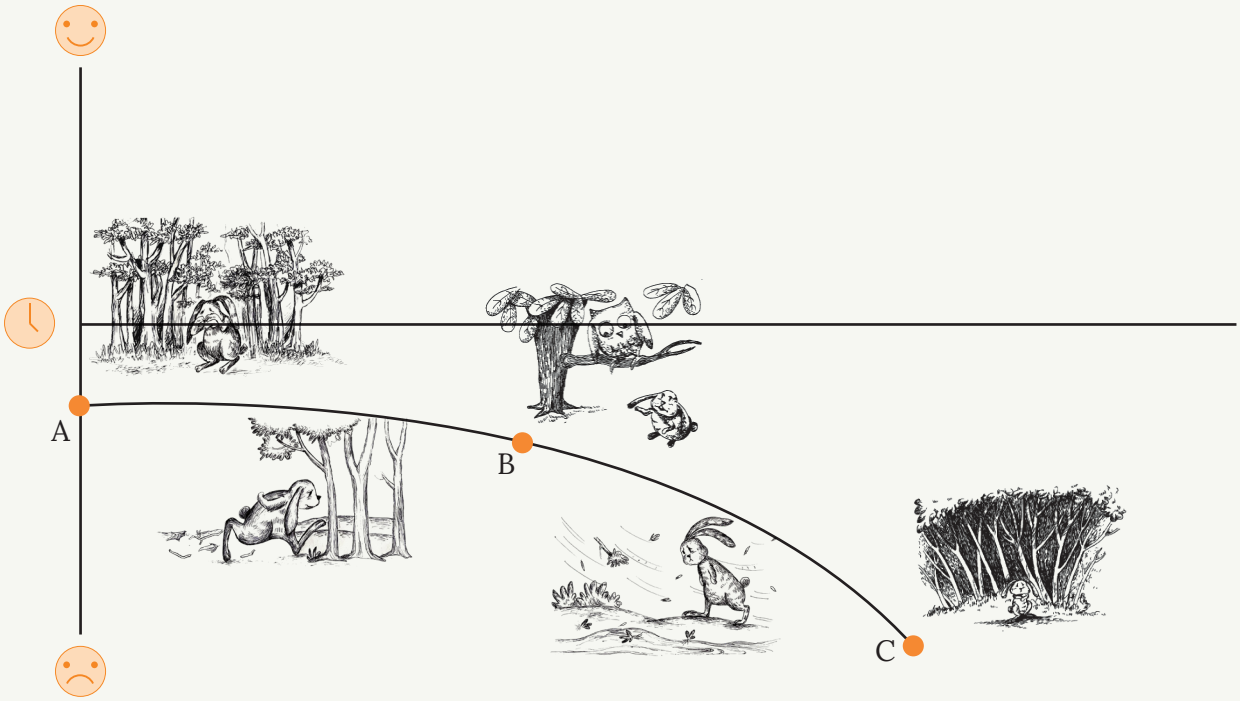


Figure 3.21: From Bad to Worse Narrative Arc Explained Through a Sample Fiction story

A. The protagonist begins in a troubling situation.
Figure A: Shy and timid Benny is attacked by pesky crows. His vegetable patch is destroyed. He feels powerless and alone.

A–B. The protagonist tries to fix things, but faces escalating trouble.
Figure A–B: Despite his fear, Benny summons his courage and ventures into the forest, confronting frightening shadows and scary sounds.

B. The situation becomes more frightening and isolating.
Figure B: Benny meets a large, intimidating owl and becomes lost in the forest. He realises he's further from home than ever before.

B–C. Attempts at resolution fail or deepen the crisis.
Figure: Benny tries to find a way back, but the forest path loops endlessly. The owl offers riddles, not help. Rain begins to fall. Benny feels defeated.

C. The protagonist ends in a worse state, with lingering sadness or reflection.
Figure C: Cold, wet, and disoriented, Benny curls up under a tree. He dreams of his lost garden, realising that courage alone isn't always enough.

d) Kurt Vonnegut's "Which Way is Up?"

Vonnegut's "Which Way is Up?" Arc: Follows an unpredictable emotional swings, often with unexpected turns, surreal adventures, and shifting outcomes. It shows that life is full of surprises, and sometimes joy and confusion come hand in hand.

This arc is especially effective in picture books and early readers, encouraging imagination, playfulness, and acceptance of uncertainty. Refer to figure 3.22, an example story from Benny the Rabbit.

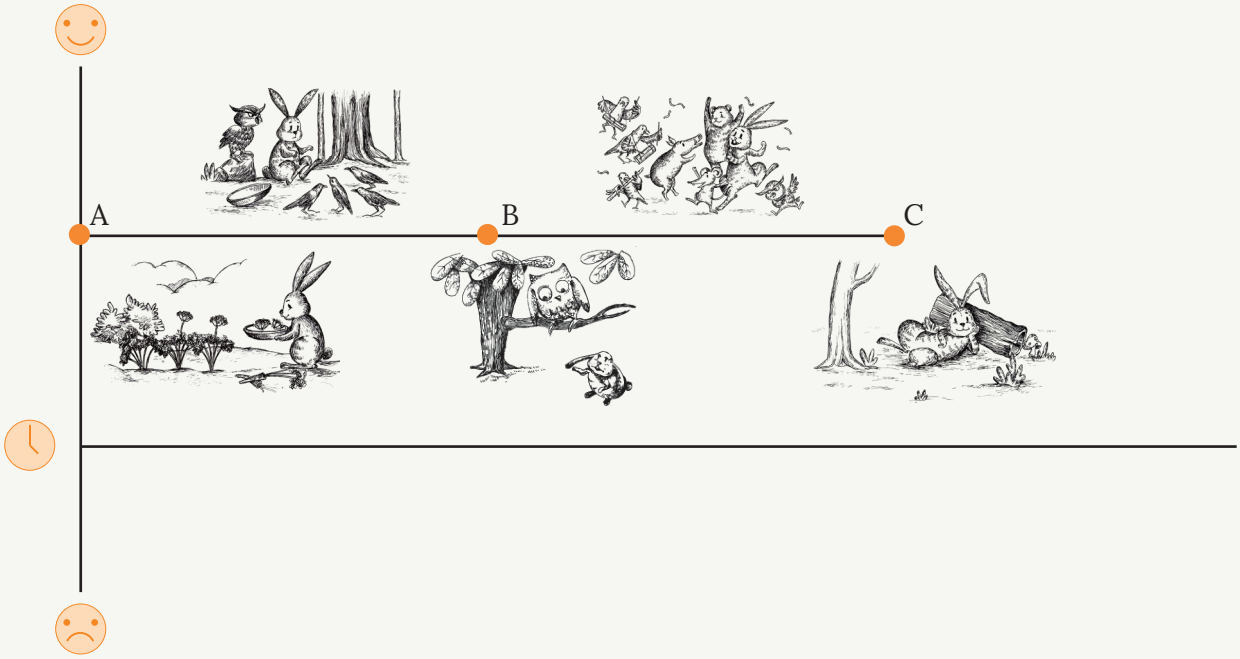


Figure 3.22: Which Way is Up Narrative Arc Explained Through a Sample Fiction Story

A. The protagonist begins in a joyful or stable moment.
Figure A: Happy Benny delights in tending to his vegetable patch. It brings him calm and satisfaction.

A–B. Something unusual happens, shifting the normal.
Figure A–B: Instead of chasing away the crows, Benny invites them to share his vegetables. Unexpectedly, they accept, and he follows them into the forest, laughing and curious.

B. new, quirky twist emerges.
Figure B: In the forest, they meet a friendly owl who surprisingly offers to teach them how to build musical instruments from tree bark.

B-C. Emotions swing again — confusion, delight, or new absurdity.
Figure: Their music attracts wild boars, who begin to dance and demand more tunes. Benny finds himself suddenly leading a forest parade.

C. The story ends in a moment of strange harmony or unresolved silliness.
Figure C: Benny ends the day perched on a tree stump, playing a tune on a bark-flute, surrounded by friends old and new. He's unsure how it all happened — but he's having a wonderful time.

e) Kurt Vonnegut's "Creation Story"

Vonnegut's "Creation Story" Arc: Focuses on origin and wonder — how something remarkable comes into being. It celebrates joy, community, and often the magic of simple beginnings. Perfect for children's fiction that highlights nature, sharing or imaginative play. In this arc the protagonist starts with little or nothing, and through discovery or chance, brings something wonderful into being. This is ideal for origin tales, magical realism, or celebratory picture books. Refer to figure 3.23, an example story from Benny the Rabbit.

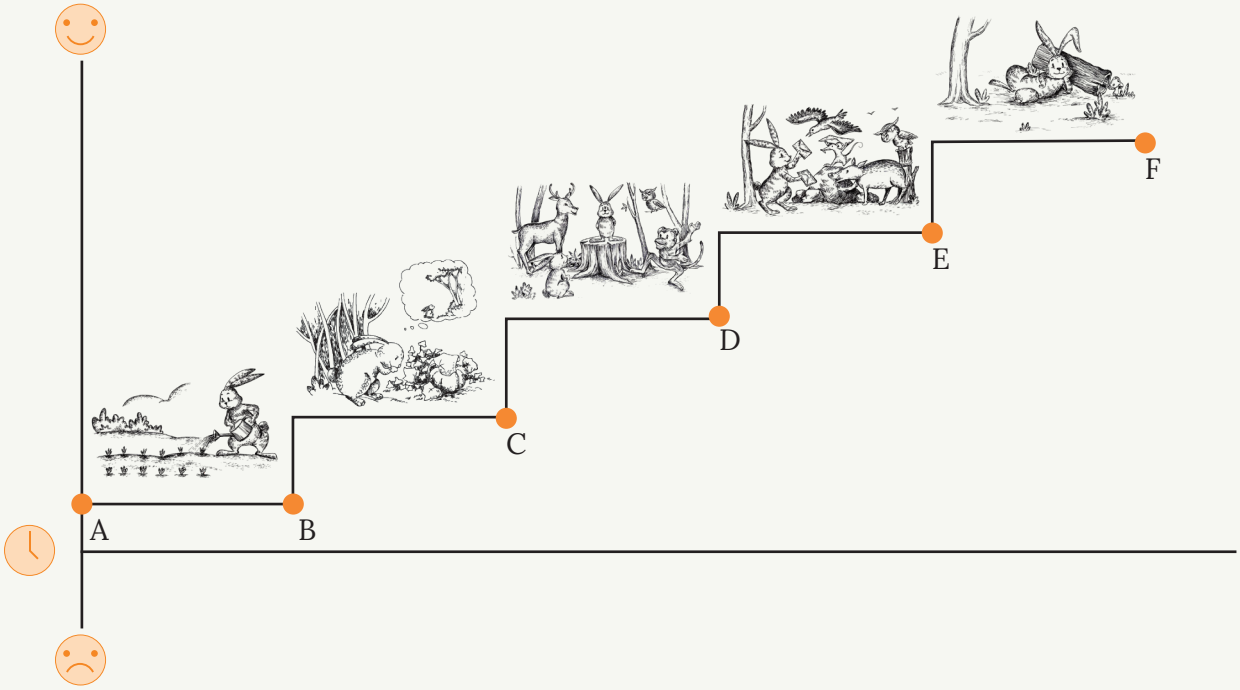


Figure 3.23: Creation Story Narrative Arc Explained Through a Sample Fiction Story

A–B. The protagonist begins in a simple, contented state.
Figure A–B: Happy Benny takes pleasure in his small vegetable patch, growing just enough to feed himself each day.

B–C, A. surprising event introduces a magical or generative element.
Figure B–C: One day, Benny notices something odd — every time he takes a bite from a vegetable, two more grow in its place. His patch begins to overflow!

C–D. Others take notice and are drawn to the new creation.
Figure C–D: The crows arrive — not to steal, but to join Benny in enjoying the abundance. They bring laughter and curiosity.

D–E. The wonder grows, creating a sense of shared celebration.
Figure D–E: Word spreads, and animals from all corners of the forest come to see the multiplying patch. Together, they feast, dance, and marvel at the never-ending vegetables.

E–F. The protagonist is recognised as the bringer or keeper of this miracle.
Figure E–F: Benny becomes the celebrated hero of the magical vegetable patch. He learns that joy multiplies when it's shared, and his humble patch becomes a symbol of community and kindness.

f) Kurt Vonnegut's "Old Testament"

Vonnegut's "Old Testament" Arc : Begins with creation and joy, but ends in downfall and loss — a paradise lost. It teaches about the fragility of abundance and the consequences of unchecked joy or external forces.

This version is best suited for allegorical stories or cautionary tales that carry strong emotional or moral weight. Refer to figure 3.24, an example story from Benny the Rabbit

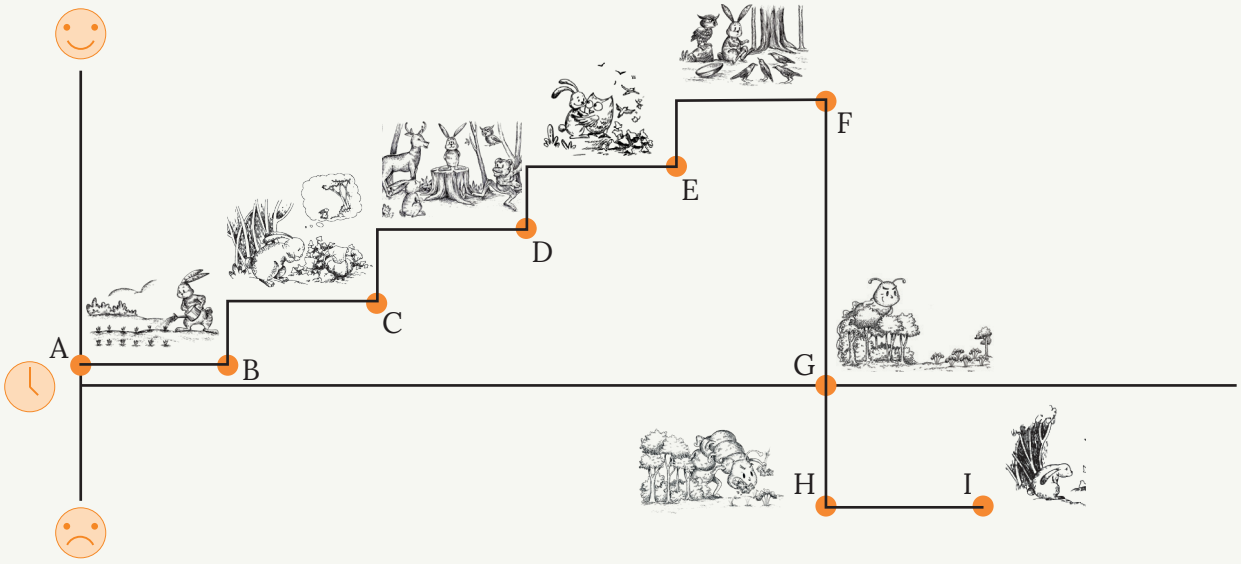


Figure 3.24: Old Testament Narrative Arc Explained Through a Sample Fiction Story

A–B. The protagonist begins in a peaceful, happy state.
Figure A–B: Happy Benny tends lovingly to his modest vegetable patch.

B–C. A miraculous or joyous transformation occurs.
Figure B–C: To Benny's surprise, the vegetables begin to multiply with every bite — his garden becomes endlessly abundant.

C–D. Others are drawn to the abundance.
Figure C–D: Crows join Benny in enjoying the magical harvest, forming a cheerful community.

D–E. The abundance grows and spreads joy.
Figure D–E: Forest animals gather, celebrating and sharing in the feast. Benny is now a hero of prosperity and kindness.

E–F. Benny reaches the height of glory.
Figure E–F: Benny is adored as the keeper of the magical patch, a symbol of generosity and plenty.

G. A destructive force arrives.
Figure G: A furious, giant caterpillar appears, threatened by the garden's magic and joy.

G–H. Chaos and destruction unfold.
Figure G–H: The caterpillar tears through the patch, devouring everything. No one can stop it.

I. Tragic conclusion—the fall from grace.
Figure I: Benny, the once-beloved hero, vanishes in the ruin. The garden is gone, and Benny is lost—his legacy swallowed by destruction.

g) Kurt Vonnegut's "New Testament"

Vonnegut's "New Testament" Arc: Mirrors epics of creation, fall, redemption, and ultimately, restoration — highlighting resilience, sacrifice, and communal harmony after chaos. This structure works well for epic-style picture books, stories of moral growth, and allegorical tales for older children, in which the narrative mirrors real-world struggles and triumphs through transformation and community support. Refer to figure 3.25, an example story from Benny the Rabbit.

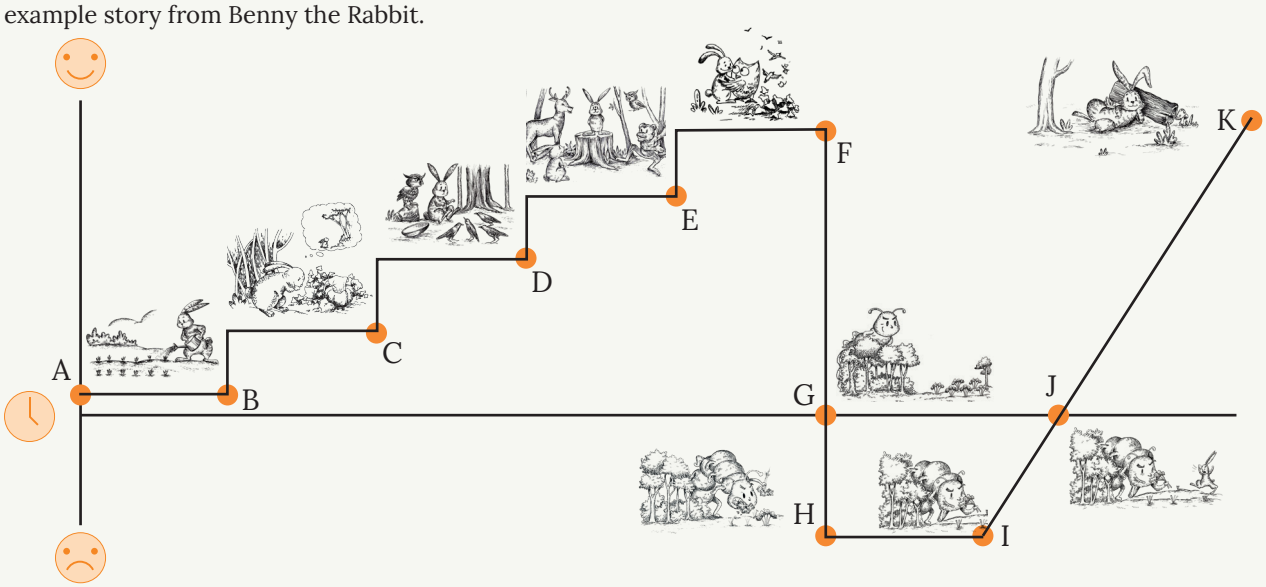


Figure 3.25: New Testament Narrative Arc Explained Through a Sample Fiction Story

A–B. Creation and peace
Figure A–B: Benny delights in tending his quiet vegetable patch, enjoying a life of peace and simplicity.

B–C. Miraculous joy
Figure B-C: Benny discovers that each bite of his vegetables causes them to multiply. His patch becomes magical and ever-abundant.

C–D. Joy shared
Figure C-D: Friendly crows arrive and join Benny, celebrating the shared abundance.

D–E. Communal Celebration
Figure D-E: The garden attracts animals from the forest. Benny becomes a beloved hero, a symbol of unity and generosity.

E–F. Hero's peak
Figure E-F: Benny is at his highest — loved, celebrated, and surrounded by plenty.

G. Sudden Threat
Figure G: A monstrous caterpillar emerges from the shadows, angry and destructive.

G–H. The Fall
Figure G-H: The caterpillar devastates the patch. Benny, overwhelmed, disappears from the scene — his legacy seemingly lost.

H-I. Darkest hour
Figure H-I: Benny is presumed gone, the garden ruined, the animals scattered.

I-J. Redemption and courage
Figure I-J: Benny returns. In a moment of bravery and clarity, he battles the caterpillar — not with violence, but with cleverness and unity from his friends.

J–K. Communal restoration
Figure J-K: With the threat defeated, Benny revives the garden. The forest rejoices. Benny, now wiser and stronger, becomes a symbol not just of joy, but of hope and resilience.

h) Kurt Vonnegut's "Cinderella"

Vonnegut's "Cinderella" Arc: Mirrors the classic rags-to-riches (or humble-to-heroic) journey, where the protagonist experiences joy, loss, and ultimately, personal triumph.

Ideal for character-driven children's fiction, especially in which themes of self-worth, personal growth, and perseverance are central. Unlike "New Testament" arcs that end in communal harmony, the "Cinderella" arc ends in individual triumph. Refer to figure 3.26, example story from Benny the Rabbit.

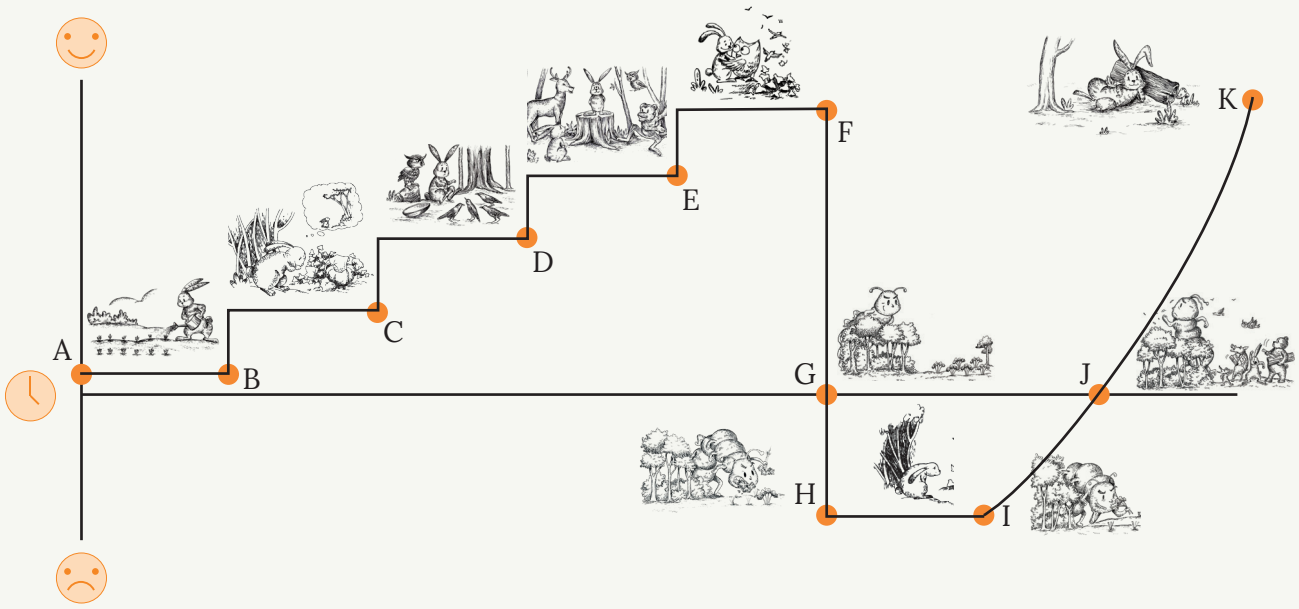


Figure 3.26: Cinderella Narrative Arc Explained Through a Sample Fiction Story

A–B. Simple joy
Figure A–B: Benny enjoys a humble but peaceful life, taking great pleasure in tending to his vegetable patch.

B–C. Magical surprise
Figure B–C: Benny's vegetables begin to multiply with every bite — a miraculous twist of fate.

C–D. Joy shared
Figure C–D: Crows arrive to partake in the bounty. Benny welcomes them.

D–E. Communal Celebration
Figure D-E: The patch continues to grow, drawing more forest animals. Benny becomes a local hero — celebrated and admired.

E–F. Peak of fortune
Figure E–F: Benny is at his highest point — surrounded by joy, abundance, and recognition.

G. Sudden reversal
Figure G: A giant, angry caterpillar appears, threatening Benny's paradise.

G–H. Destruction
Figure G–H: The caterpillar ravages the patch. Benny's world collapses.

I. Loss of identity
Figure I: Benny, the once-beloved hero, is now defeated and forgotten.

H–I. Turning point

Figure H–I: Benny regains his courage and confronts the caterpillar.

J. Personal triumph

Figure J: Benny defeats the caterpillar. He doesn't just save the patch — he reclaims his strength and belief in himself.

J–K. Restored and rewarded

Figure J–K: Benny gets his magical vegetable patch back. Though the celebration is quieter, Benny is now fully transformed — a personal hero, stronger and wiser than before.

3.4 Be Creative with the Genre

Genres and its Effects

3.4.1 What are Genres?

Genres in children's fiction are essential storytelling frameworks that guide authors in shaping narrative tone, content and purpose. Each genre offers a set of conventions — whether rooted in imagination, realism, history or education — that helps the writer determine how best to communicate with young readers. For the author, genre is not just a label but a creative tool used to evoke emotion, construct meaning, and structure the reader's journey. By choosing a genre thoughtfully, writers can tailor their stories to match developmental stages, cultural contexts and emotional needs.

Children's fiction is more than entertainment — it is a medium through which writers help children explore the world, develop empathy, and grow cognitively and emotionally. Whether crafting a magical adventure, a realistic school drama, or a humorous tale, authors rely on genre to provide clarity and coherence while inspiring curiosity and imagination.

Genre:

Think of genre as the map that aligns the authors words with the illustrators images. It helps construct a cohesive world emotionally, narratively and visually.

> "A story should open a door and make a child feel brave enough to walk through it."

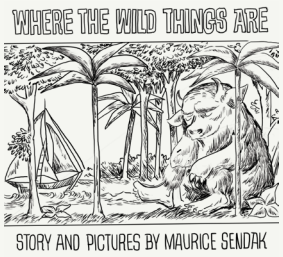
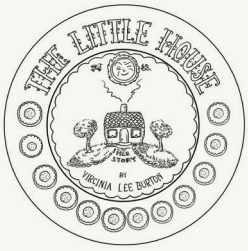
3.4.2 Types of Genres and How Writers Use Them in Children's Fiction

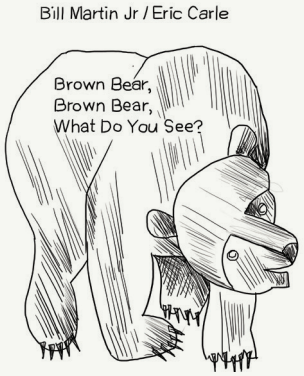
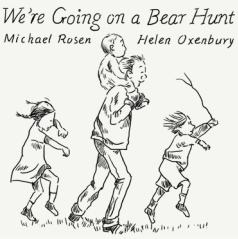
Authors often blend or reframe genres to create layered, engaging stories that appeal to a variety of reader experiences. Below is a breakdown of key genres, highlighting how writers might apply them using the character "Benny the Rabbit" to illustrate their narrative function:

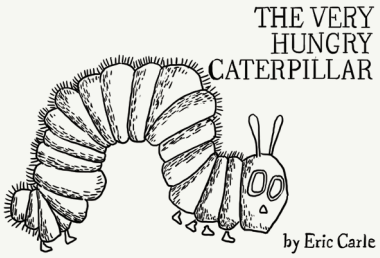
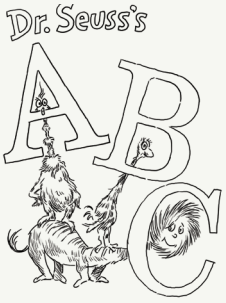
- Fantasy: Invites writers to explore magical realism — Benny follows a firefly into a glowing forest, revealing wonders unseen in ordinary life.
- Realistic Fiction: Grounds the story in emotional truth — Benny faces his fears and learns courage in a relatable forest setting.
- Historical Fiction: Merges past and present — Benny uncovers ancient rabbit carvings, drawing strength from heroic ancestry.
- Fairy Tales, Folktales and Myths: Rooted in tradition and archetype — Benny uses cleverness and the owl's wisdom to outwit tricky crows.
- Concept Books: Teach foundational knowledge — Benny calms himself by counting forest elements like mushrooms and trees.
- Biographies: Inspire through modeled behaviour — Benny's story becomes a tale passed down to encourage bravery in others.
- Adventure: Delivers pace and risk — Benny uncovers the truth about the forest's balance and fights to reclaim his vegetable patch.
- Mystery: Engages critical thinking — Benny follows clues like claw marks and rustling sounds to the crows' hideout.
- Science and Nature: Inform through discovery —Benny learns about nocturnal life and ecological balance from the owl.
- Humor: Delights and disarms — Benny mistakes his twitchy ears for monster sounds, offering laughter as relief from fear.
- Poetry and Rhyming Books: Enchant with rhythm — Benny's journey through verse turns fear into light, pairing lyrical language with emotional clarity.
- Informational Books: Ground fiction in fact — Benny explores the role of owls in pest control and forest ecosystems.
- Social-Emotional and Problem-Solving Books: Show character growth — Benny moves from anxiety to resolution, solving problems through empathy and insight.
- Wordless Books: Emphasize visual storytelling — Benny's frightened expressions and the owl's comforting embrace tell the story without words.

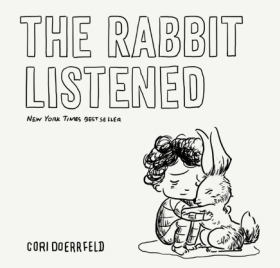
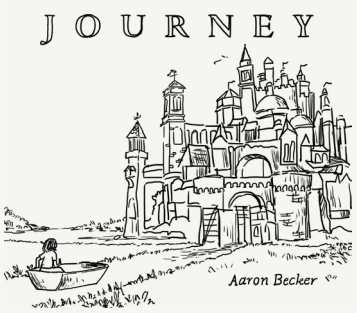
Quick takeaway!

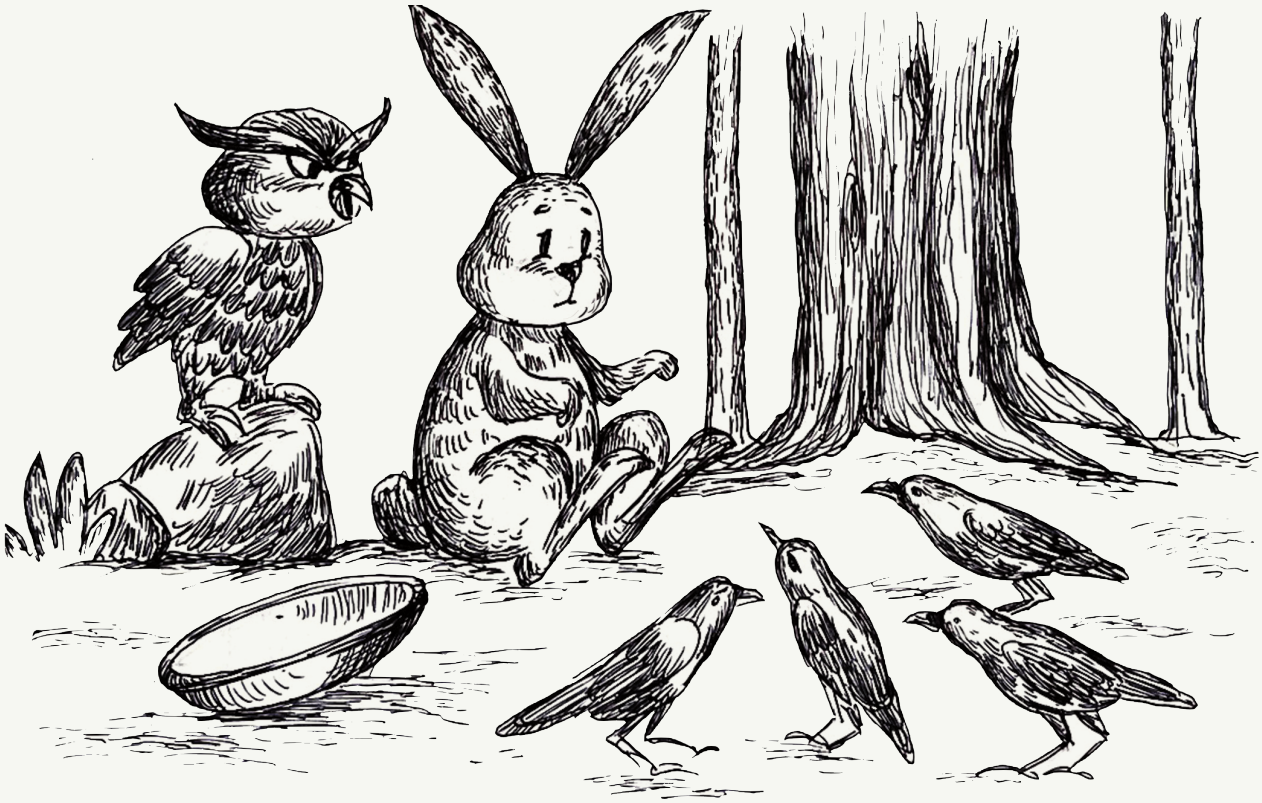
Genre's summarized

Genre	Explanation	Considerations	Examples	
Fantasy	Stories featuring imaginative elements such as magical creatures, fantastical worlds or extraordinary adventures.	To spark creativity and allow children to explore limitless possibilities.	Stories about talking animals, mythical lands, or magic etc.	 *Where the Wild Things Are by Maurice Sendak*
Realistic Fiction	Narratives that reflect real-life situations, emotions and relationships.	To help children understand everyday life and connect with familiar experiences.	Books about school life, friendships or family challenges.	*Last Stop on Market Street by Matt de la Peña, illustrated by Christian Robinson*
Historical Fiction	Stories set in historical periods that include accurate details from the past while weaving fictional elements.	To teach children about history and culture in an engaging and accessible way.	Stories that highlight historical events or famous figures.	 *The Little House by Virginia Lee Burton*
Fairy Tales, Folktales and Myths	Traditional stories often featuring moral lessons, cultural heritage, and archetypal characters like heroes and villains.	To pass down cultural values and inspire imagination.	Adaptations of stories like Cinderella or folktales from different cultures.	*Cinderella*

Genre	Explanation	Considerations	Examples	
Concept Books	Books that introduce basic concepts such as numbers, letters, colors, shapes or opposites.	To develop early literacy and cognitive skills in young children.	 *Brown Bear, Brown Bear, What Do You See? by Bill Martin Jr. and Eric Carle.*	
Biographies and Autobiographies	Stories about the lives of real people, written in an age-appropriate way.	To inspire children through the achievements and struggles of notable figures.	*The Watcher: Jane Goodall's Life with the Chimps by Jeanette Winter.*	
Adventure	Exciting and action-packed stories in which characters embark on quests or face challenges.	To captivate children with thrilling narratives that build problem-solving and resilience.	Books involving treasure hunts or daring escapades.	 *We're Going on a Bear Hunt by Michael Rosen*
Mystery	Stories involving puzzles or problems to solve, often with suspenseful elements.	To engage critical thinking and curiosity in young readers.	Picture books with simple word units or hidden clues.	

Genre	Explanation	Considerations	Examples
Science and Nature	Non-fiction or fiction stories that explore the natural world, scientific concepts or environmental themes.	To foster curiosity and an appreciation for the environment and science.	 *The Very Hungry Caterpillar by Eric Carle introduces life cycles in an engaging way.*
Humour	Lighthearted and funny stories that often include wordplay, jokes or humorous situations.	To entertain and create joyful reading experiences.	*Don't Let the Pigeon Drive the Bus! by Mo Willems.*
Poetry and Rhyming Books	Books written in verse or rhyme, often with rhythmic text and wordplay.	To enhance phonological awareness, and make reading fun and engaging.	 *Dr. Seuss* books such as *Green Eggs and Ham.*
Informational Books	Non-fiction books that provide factual content on topics such as animals, space, or history.	To educate children and encourage a love of learning.	National Geographic Kids picture books.

Social-Emotional and Problem-Solving Books	Stories that address emotions, social skills, or challenges, such as bullying or making friends.	To teach empathy, resilience and emotional regulation.	 *The Rabbit Listened by Cori Doerrfeld.*
Wordless Books	Stories told entirely through illustrations, with no text or minimal text.	To encourage visual iteracy, creativity, and independent storytelling.	 *Journey by Aaron Becker.*



3.5 Give Life to Your Characters

Children's Perception Towards Characters

3.5.1 Who are Characters in a Story?

Characters are the heart of a children's fiction book — they bring the story to life, carry the plot forward, and provide young readers with emotional anchors for understanding and empathy. As Nodelman and Reimer (2003) explain, well-crafted characters help children interpret the world by offering relatable models of behaviour, emotion, and problem-solving. In children's literature, characters may be human, animal, or even anthropomorphised objects, but they typically embody qualities that resonate with young readers — such as curiosity, bravery, kindness or humour.

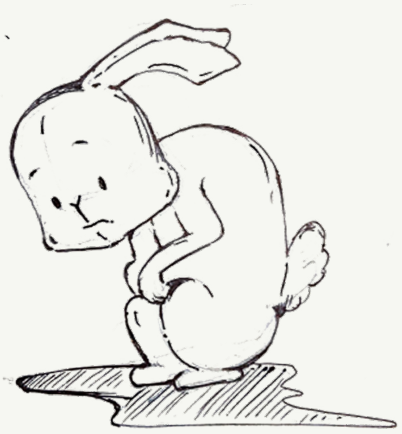
These characters are often simple in construction but rich in emotional relatability, making them accessible to developing readers (Lukens, Smith, and Coffel, 2012). They typically face challenges, engage in adventures, or navigate everyday dilemmas, allowing children to observe moral reasoning, emotional growth and imaginative engagement. Strong characters not only support story development but also complement illustrations, enhancing visual and narrative immersion.

What's Benny's Character?

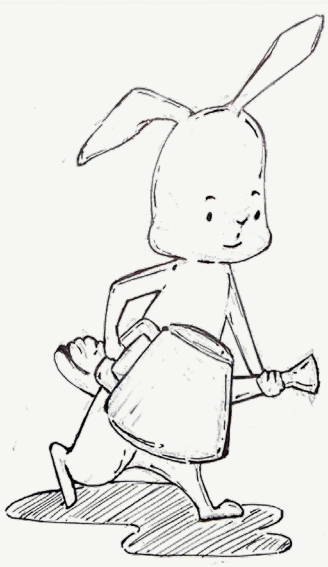
"Benny is just a rabbit from the wild"

- **Shy and timid**
- **Gentle and cautious**
- **Angry and vicious**
- **Sad and lonely**

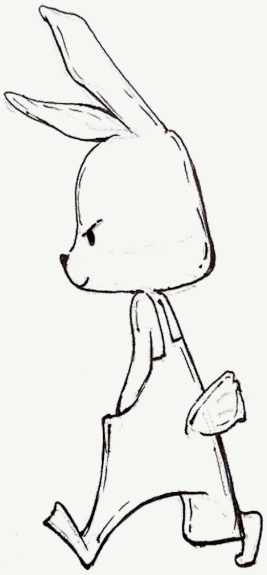
Example of Benny the Rabbit



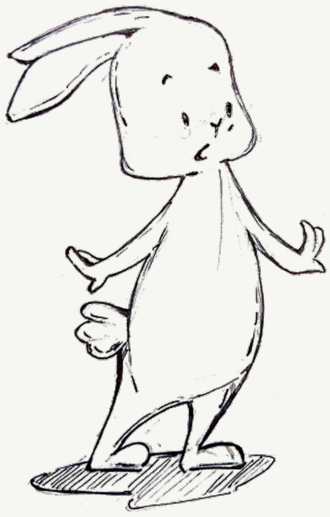
Shy and timid



Gentle and cautious



Angry and vicious



Sad and lonely

Figure 3.27: Wild Rabbit Built as a Character "Benny"

Think of many ways in which Benny's personality can be illustrated. Check out how to develop your character visually in chapter 4.1

3.5.2 Building Blocks of a Character

Creating a compelling character for a children's fiction book involves careful thought about their personality, traits and voice, goals and motivation, conflicts and flaws, growth and change, relationships and interactions.

a) Personality:

Creating a compelling character for a picture book involves careful thought about their personality, traits, voice, goals, motivation, conflicts, flaws and interactions. Refer to the example from Benny the Rabbit, Figure 3.28.

b) Traits and Voice:

Traits are defining characteristics, such as being curious or clumsy, customs, practices, traditions, while voice refers to how a character communicates, including their tone, style, or quirks. Refer to the example from Benny the Rabbit, Figure 3.29.

c) Goals and Motivation:

Goals are what the character wants to achieve, and motivation is why they want to achieve it. Clear goals drive the story forward. Refer to the example from Benny the Rabbit, Figure 3.30.

d) Conflicts and Flaws:

Conflict is the obstacle that prevents the character from reaching their goal, while flaws are internal struggles that make them relatable. Refer to the example from Benny the Rabbit, Figure 3.31.

e) Growth and Change:

A compelling character undergoes growth, learning something new or changing by the end of the story. Refer to the example from Benny the Rabbit, Figure 3.32

f) Relationships and Interactions:

Characters are enriched through their relationships with others, which reveal traits, create humour, or add emotional depth. Refer to the example from Benny the Rabbit, Figure 3.33.

Example of Benny the Rabbit

a) Benny's Personality

Benny is gentle, shy, and deeply attached to his quiet vegetable patch. He thrives on routine and avoids confrontation, finding peace in the simple act of tending his garden. But when the crows and wild boars invade, disrupting everything he cherishes, Benny's inner resilience slowly begins to surface. His personality creates a powerful contrast — between vulnerability and the quiet strength he ultimately discovers.

Figure 3.28: Benny's Personality

Figure 3.29: Benny's Traits and Voice

b) Benny's Traits and Voice

Benny is cautious but observant. His large, twitchy ears flap nervously when he's unsure — a visual cue that mirrors his inner turmoil. He often speaks in a quiet, hesitant tone, using phrases like "I think..." or "Maybe I could..." to express uncertainty. As his journey unfolds and he begins to understand the forest and himself, his voice grows firmer and clearer, reflecting his emotional evolution.

Figure 3.30 Benny's Goals and Motivations

c) Benny's Goals and Motivations

At first, Benny simply wants his garden back. It's his safe space, and its loss feels overwhelming. But beneath this surface goal lies a deeper motivation: his need for belonging, safety and agency. The garden is more than a patch of vegetables — it's a symbol of care, pride, and his identity. That's what ultimately drives him to brave the forest.

Figure 3.30 Benny's Goals and Motivations

d) Conflicts and Flaws

Benny's external conflict is the takeover of his garden by the crows and wild boars. The internal conflict, however, is more profound — his fear of the unknown. The dark forest, with its eerie sounds and looming shadows, becomes a metaphor for his inner doubt. His instinct is to flee, not fight — but this flaw is also what makes his transformation so meaningful. The story isn't about defeating a villain; it's about overcoming fear through understanding.

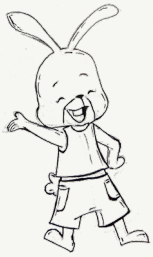


Figure 3.30 Benny's Goals and Motivations

e) Growth and Change

Benny evolves from a timid rabbit into a brave and thoughtful problem-solver. Guided by the wise owl, he realises the forest is not threatening, just unfamiliar. By reinterpreting what once scared him — moon shadows, animal sounds — he reclaims his power. In the end, Benny outsmarts his intruders not with aggression, but with the tools he feared. He returns to the garden wiser, bolder, and deeply changed.

Figure 3.30 Benny's Goals and Motivations

f) Relationships and Interactions

Benny's turning point comes through his bond with the wise old owl, who serves as a gentle mentor. The owl doesn't push — he listens, observes, and reframes Benny's fears with calm insight. Their dialogue shows contrast: Benny's anxious energy meets the owl's slow wisdom. This relationship reveals that transformation often comes not from isolation, but from connection and guidance.

3.5.3 Core Character Elements

Characters are the emotional core of every children's fiction book. They anchor the plot, embody the theme, and guide readers through a journey of empathy, curiosity and discovery. Beyond individual traits and arcs, stories are shaped by character types — each playing a unique narrative role. These include the protagonist (hero), antagonist (obstacle or challenge), supporting characters, and modern representations of diversity and inclusion.

Each element adds structure and resonance to the story world. In children's fiction, these roles are often simplified but emotionally powerful, helping young readers recognise patterns, relationships and values.

a) Protagonist (Hero)

Definition: The main character who drives the story and undergoes growth.

Role: Protagonists are emotionally relatable figures that children root for. They face challenges, learn lessons, and change meaningfully over the course of the story. Refer to the example from Benny the Rabbit, Figure 3.34.

b) Antagonist (Obstacle or Villain)

Definition: The character, force or condition that creates conflict.

Role: In children's fiction, the antagonist may not always be evil. Sometimes it's a trickster, a misunderstood character, or even an internal struggle like fear. Refer to the example from Benny the Rabbit, Figure 3.35.

c) Supporting Characters

Definition: Characters who assist or influence the protagonist.

Role: They provide advice, friendship, humour or emotional support — helping drive the story and reveal aspects of the hero. Refer to the example from Benny the Rabbit, Figure 3.36.

d) Representing Diversity and Inclusivity

Definition: Inclusion of varied identities, abilities, cultures and experiences.

Role: Diversity ensures that children from all backgrounds see themselves — and others — reflected in stories. It promotes empathy, equality and social understanding. Refer to the example from Benny the Rabbit, Figure 3.37.

Example of Benny the Rabbit

Figure 3.34: Protagonist- Benny

a) Protagonist (Hero)

Benny is the gentle but fearful hero. He begins timid and unsure, but his journey through the forest and encounter with the wise owl, transform him into a confident and clever problem-solver. His courage grows as he reclaims his garden using knowledge and inner strength, not force.

Figure 3.35: Antagonist-Wild Boars / Benny's Fear (Symbolised)

b) Antagonist (Obstacle or Villain)

The crows and wild boars represent the external challenge, but Benny's real antagonist is his fear of the unknown. The forest shadows and eerie sounds symbolize his inner doubts — which he must overcome.

Figure 3.36: Supporting Character-Owl

c) Supporting Characters

The wise owl is Benny's mentor — calm, observant and reassuring. Through their conversations, Benny gains courage. The owl doesn't just explain but helps Benny see for himself.

Figure 3.37: Diverse and Inclusive Forest Community

d) Representing Diversity and Inclusivity

The forest community can include diverse characters: a slow but wise snail with a mobility device, a squirrel who speaks in rhymes, or a parrot with vibrant cultural expressions. Each character adds richness to Benny's journey.

3.5.4 How Children Perceive Characters

In children's fiction books, characters are more than just narrative devices — they are emotional companions. Protagonists and antagonists are designed not for complexity, but for clarity and connection. Their portrayal — both through text and illustration — must resonate with a child's worldview, helping young readers explore emotions, solve problems and build relationships.

a) Protagonists: Mirrors for Young Minds

Children often see themselves in the heroes of stories. For a protagonist to truly connect, they must reflect a child's inner world — simple, clear, but emotionally meaningful. An effective protagonist should be relatable, goal oriented, capable of growth, and exhibit positive traits that young readers can admire and learn from.

- **Relatability:**

  Protagonists often face challenges similar to those experienced by children — such as fear, exclusion, or trying something new. This emotional familiarity helps foster engagement and identification. For example, Benny the Rabbit is scared of the dark forest — just as a child might fear unfamiliar or overwhelming situations. His vulnerability makes him a trustworthy and relatable character.

- **Clear Goals:**

  Children respond best to stories with clear, easy-to-understand motivations. A protagonist's desires should be straightforward and drive the plot forward. In Benny's story, his goal is simple and strong: "Benny wants his vegetable patch back." This clarity anchors the narrative and gives young readers a reason to root for him.

- **Growth and Learning:**

  Children are naturally drawn to characters who change and grow. Witnessing a protagonist overcome internal or external challenges offers readers a pathway for emotional development. Benny learns that fear often stems from misunderstanding. His journey teaches that courage isn't about being fearless — but about choosing to understand and move forward despite fear.

- **Positive Traits:**

  While protagonists may start with flaws or insecurities, they typically embody traits such as kindness, curiosity or bravery. These qualities encourage reflection and aspiration in young readers. Benny's gentle nature and eventual courage serve as a positive model for emotional strength and compassion, especially in difficult moments.

b) Antagonists: Challenges Made Understandable

In children's fiction, antagonists are not always villains in the traditional sense. Instead, they often serve as simplified, symbolic representations of conflict — external or internal — that the protagonist must face. These characters or forces are designed to be age-appropriate, easily understood, and emotionally resonant.

- **Simplicity and Clarity:**

  Unlike the complex or morally ambiguous villains found in adult literature, antagonists in children's books usually embody straightforward challenges — such as mischief, chaos, or fear. In Benny the Rabbit's story, the crows and wild boars are not truly evil. They simply disrupt Benny's peace, symbolizing disorder and loss of control in an otherwise safe world. This makes them understandable and manageable figures of conflict for young readers.

- **Symbolic Representation:**

  Antagonists often stand in for deeper emotional or psychological struggles that children face. They provide a safe way for young readers to engage with fear, uncertainty or confusion. Benny's fear of the forest is more than fear of a physical place — it symbolizes the fear of the unknown. The darkness, strange sounds and looming trees externalize his inner anxiety in a relatable way.

- **Redemption and Understanding:**

  Contemporary children's fiction often gives antagonists a chance for transformation or reveals a misunderstood motivation. This shift promotes empathy and helps children recognize that conflict can be resolved through understanding, not just confrontation. In the end, Benny doesn't harm the crows or boars. Instead, he uses sound and shadow — tools that once frightened him — to scare them away. His victory is thoughtful and peaceful, showing children that courage and compassion can go hand in hand.

Figure 3.38: Sample Illustrations Demonstrating How Protagonists and Antagonists Can be Crafted as Companions for the Child Reader, Supporting Immersion, Clarity and Emotional Connection.

3.6 Create a World to be Immersed

World Building, its Setting and Mood

3.6.1 What is World-Building?

World-building is the imaginative act of designing the setting, logic, mood, and atmosphere in which a story unfolds. In children's fiction books, This involves crafting not only a physical space but also an emotional and symbolic landscape that aligns with the characters' journey. A well-built world offers more than background, it becomes a character in itself, shaping action, emotion and reader immersion.

As Nikolajeva (2002) suggests, the power of a fictional world lies in its ability to stimulate a child's imagination while also offering an intuitive framework through which to interpret character growth and narrative conflict.

3.6.2 Building Blocks of World-Building for Children's Fiction Books

1) Setting:

The setting is the physical environment in which the story takes place. It should be visually rich and distinctive, sparking curiosity and enhancing the narrative. The setting serves as the backdrop for the characters' journey, influencing mood and tone.

Key Questions: Where does the story happen? What makes it unique or magical? Refer to the example from Benny the Rabbit, Figure 3.39.

2) Rules and Logic:

The rules and logic establish how the world operates, defining what is possible or impossible. Consistent rules create a believable framework, whether realistic or fantastical.

Key Questions: What is possible or impossible? Are there magical or fantastical elements? Refer to the example from Benny the Rabbit, Figure 3.40.

3) Culture and Values:

Culture and values give depth to the world by reflecting the traditions, customs, or shared beliefs of its inhabitants. They influence the characters' behaviours and interactions.

Key Questions: What do the characters value? Are there unique customs or ways of life? Refer to the example from Benny the Rabbit, Figure 3.41.

Example with Benny the Rabbit

Figure 3.39: Setting

1) Setting

Benny lives in a sunlit meadow, where he lovingly tends his vegetable patch. The air is warm, the soil soft, and his days follow a peaceful rhythm. But beyond this idyllic space looms a mysterious forest filled with crooked trees, glowing mushrooms and echoing sounds, which scare Benny into running.

Figure 3.40: Rules and Logic

2) Rules and Logic

Rules and logic in Benny's world — animals speak when no humans are around. The forest is enchanted not through magic spells, but through nature's illusions. Moonlight distorts shapes, mushrooms glow to help or mislead, and unfamiliar sounds stir fear in the unprepared.

Figure 3.41: Culture and Values

3) Culture and Values

Culture and Values in Benny's world portray that Benny's carrot patch isn't just his, it's part of the meadow's annual Carrot Festival, where animals gather to celebrate community and sharing. Losing the garden means losing a tradition of joy, belonging, and purpose.

4) Characters and Inhabitants:

The characters and inhabitants bring the world to life, interacting with each other and the setting. Their design and personalities should align with the world's tone.

Key Questions: Who lives here? How do they look, act and interact with each other? Refer to the example from Benny the Rabbit, Figure 3.42.

5) Conflict and Challenges:

Conflict and challenges arise naturally from the world's unique features, adding excitement and driving the plot forward. These elements test the protagonist and create opportunities for growth.

Key Questions: What makes this world exciting or dangerous? What challenges arise from its unique features?

Refer to the example from Benny the Rabbit, Figure 3.43

6) Simplicity and Accessibility:

Simplicity and accessibility ensure that the world is easy for young readers to understand while still being engaging and imaginative. Clear, focused details help avoid overwhelming them.

Key Questions: Can young readers understand and enjoy this world without feeling overwhelmed?

Refer to the example from Benny the Rabbit, Figure 3.44

> "A well-developed protagonist helps children see themselves in the story, while a meaningful antagonist introduces age-appropriate conflict or tension. Supporting characters —friends, mentors or even tricksters — add emotional variety and balance. Together, these character roles create a complete narrative experience, helping young readers understand courage, empathy, cooperation and growth."

Figure 3.42: Character and Inhabitants

4) Characters and Inhabitants

Benny's world includes a wise old owl who is calm and knowing. The crows are bold and chaotic. The boars are noisy but not evil, just inconsiderate. Benny, with his soft fur and expressive ears, visually embodies vulnerability and growth.

Figure 3.43: Conflict and Challanges

5) Conflict and Challenges

In Benny's world, the forest doesn't contain a single monster but many small fears: shadows that stretch, noises that echo, and the loneliness of the unfamiliar. These environmental cues challenge Benny's perception and courage.

Figure 3.44: Simplicity and Accessibility

6) Simplicity and Accessibility

Simplicity and accessibility in Benny's world are the meadow and forest which are symbolic: light versus shadow, safety versus fear. The glowing mushrooms, talking owl, and swaying trees keep the magical elements grounded and accessible.

3.7 Decide on the Language

Order of Storytelling and Language

3.7.1 What is Meant by "Language" in Children's Fiction?

Language in children's fiction is not just about the words chosen — it's about how those words work in tandem with images, to tell a story that is accessible, engaging and emotionally resonant. It sets the pace, tone and rhythm of the storytelling, helping young readers follow the plot, feel the emotion, and connect with the characters.

The language must be age appropriate, expressive and interactive, offering a reading experience that delights, teaches, and inspires, whether read aloud by an adult or explored independently by a child. Good language in fiction and especially in picture books feels musical, clear and visually evocative, supporting both comprehension and imagination.

3.7.2 Elements of Language in Children's Fiction Books

1) Simplicity and Clarity:

Language should be straightforward and easy for children to understand, often using short sentences and familiar words. This ensures accessibility and comprehension, especially for younger readers.

Refer to the example from Benny the Rabbit, Figure 3.45.

2) Engagement and Appeal:

Words should captivate a child's attention through playful sounds, imaginative descriptions, or humour. Techniques such as alliteration, rhyme and repetition are commonly used to make the story more enjoyable.

Refer to the example from Benny the Rabbit, Figure 3.46.

3) Tone and Voice:

The tone should match the story's theme and mood, whether whimsical, adventurous or heartfelt. The narrative voice should feel relatable and welcoming, often mirroring the curiosity or emotions of children.

Refer to the example from Benny the Rabbit, Figure 3.47.

4) Expressive and Evocative:

Language should evoke vivid imagery and emotions, bringing the story to life alongside the illustrations. This can include sensory descriptions and strong action verbs.

Refer to the example from Benny the Rabbit, Figure 3.48.

5) Number of Words:

Children's fiction books typically have limited text, so every word counts. The language must convey meaning concisely while leaving room for illustrations to tell part of the story.

Refer to the example from Benny the Rabbit, Figure 3.49.

6) Interactive Elements:

Incorporating language that encourages participation such as questions, sounds (e.g., "Whoosh!" or "Quack!"), or repetitive phrases engages children and makes reading more dynamic.

Refer to the example from Benny the Rabbit, Figure 3.50.

7) Diverse and Inclusive Vocabulary:

Language should reflect diversity and inclusivity, introducing children to a range of experiences, cultures, and ideas while remaining relatable and respectful.

Refer to the example from Benny the Rabbit, Figure 3.51.

8) Read-Aloud Quality:

Since children's fiction books are often read aloud, the language should flow smoothly and be enjoyable for both the reader and listener. Rhythmic patterns and natural dialogue enhance the reading experience.

Refer to the example from Benny the Rabbit, Figure 3.52.

> Think of language as choreography — it moves with the illustrations — setting the tempo and emotion of every scene.

Figure 3.45: Example Application of Language; Simplicity and Clarity

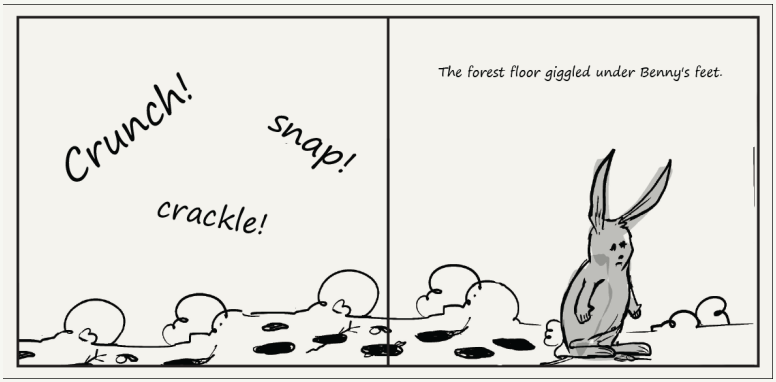


Figure 3.46: Example Application of Language; Engagement and Appeal

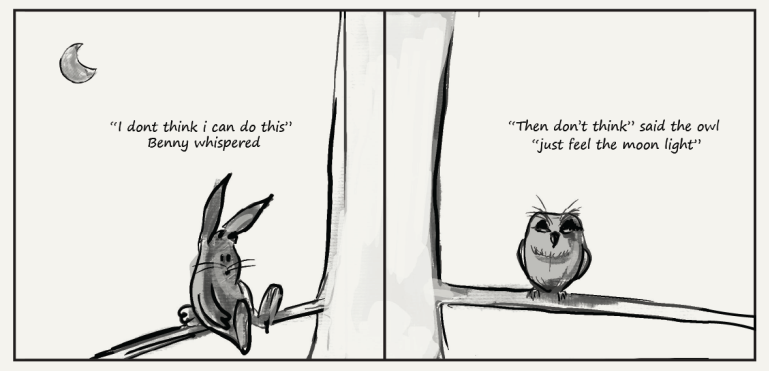


Figure 3.47 Example Application of Language; Tone and Voice

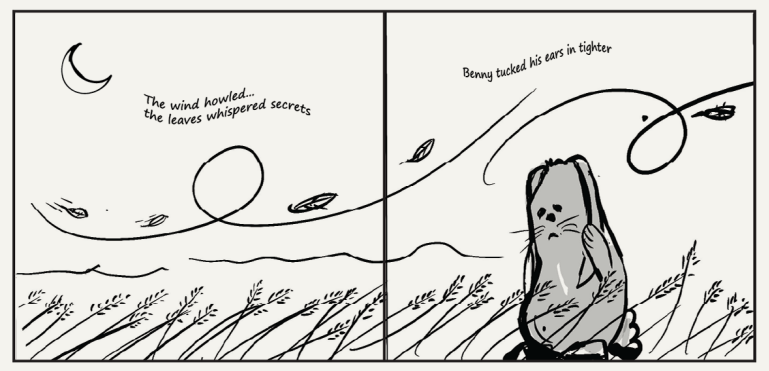


Figure 3.48 Example Application of Language; Expressive and Evocation

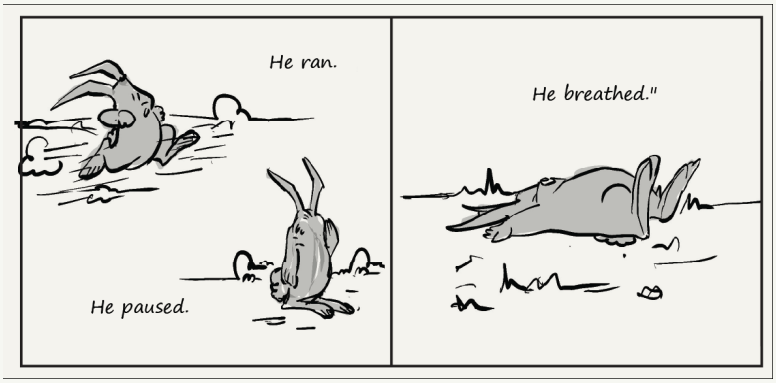


Figure 3.49 Example Application of Language; Number of Words

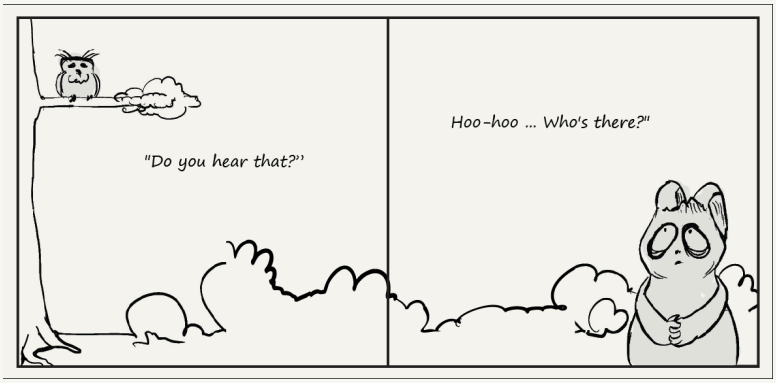


Figure 3.50 Example Application of Language; Interactive Elements

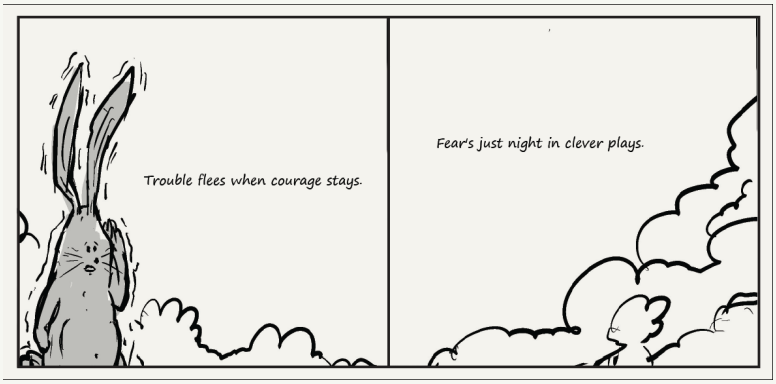


Figure 3.51 Example Application of Language; Diverse and Inclusive Vocabulary

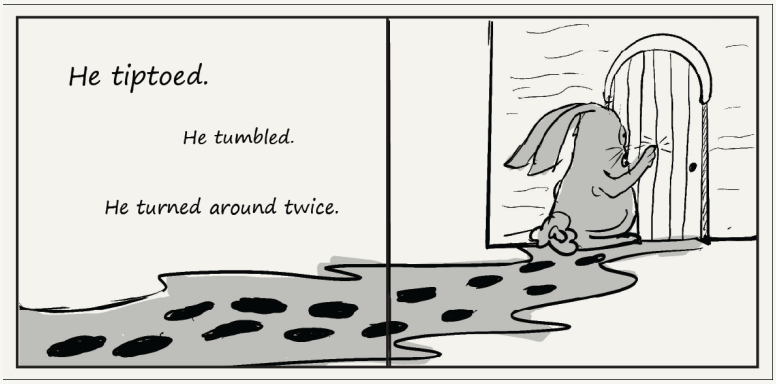


Figure 3.52 Example Application of Language; Reader-Aloud Quality

3.7.3 Importance of Language Use for Children in Fiction Books

Language in children's fiction is not just a vehicle for storytelling — it is the very bridge between emotion, comprehension and imagination. For emerging readers, carefully chosen words can make the difference between passively observing and deeply engaging with a story.

1) Enhances Comprehension:

Simple, relatable language helps children understand characters, plot and key messages with ease.

2) Builds Vocabulary:

Introducing new words within meaningful, narrative contexts fosters organic vocabulary growth.

3) Encourages Emotional Connection:

Evocative phrases and emotional tone help children relate to characters, themes and scenarios.

4) Supports Literacy Development:

Rhyming, repetition and rhythm nurture phonemic awareness, listening, and speaking skills.

5) Fosters Imagination:

Descriptive language sparks curiosity, inviting children to visualize and co-create the world of the book in their minds.

> "Language is the road map of a culture. It tells you where its people come from and where they are going."
>
> - Rita Mae Brown-

3.7.4 Application of Language in Children's Fiction Books

The way language is used in children's fiction books plays a crucial role in captivating young readers and keeping them engaged. Because picture books are designed for children, the choice of words, sentence structures, and style must strike a balance between simplicity and richness. The language must not only be easy to understand but also vivid enough to evoke imagination, excitement, and emotion. Below are the key techniques and considerations for language use in picture books, with examples to illustrate their impact.

1) Rhyming and Rhythm:

Rhyming and rhythmic language create a musical quality in the text, making it fun and memorable. Rhymes and rhythms help children anticipate the next word or phrase, fostering engagement, and improving their listening and reading skills. The repetition of rhyming phrases encourages children to join in the reading and makes the story unforgettable.(Figure 3.53).

How It's Used: Rhyming is often paired with a rhythmic structure to enhance the flow and readability of the story. Writers use consistent beats or patterns to create a sense of predictability and playfulness.

Considerations: Ensure rhymes feel natural and do not force awkward word choices. The rhythm should complement the story's pacing without overwhelming the narrative.

2) Repetition:

Repetition involves using repeated words, phrases, or sentence structures to reinforce ideas and make the text easier for young readers to follow and anticipate. For example 'Brown Bear, Brown Bear, What Do You See? 'by Bill Martin Jr. and Eric Carle uses a repeated question-and-answer structure, keep to children engaged, and provide a sense of predictability and rhythm (Figure 3.54).

How It's Used: Repeated patterns help children recognize familiar phrases, making them feel more involved in the reading process. Repetition can also emphasize key themes or messages.

Considerations: Use repetition strategically to emphasize important elements without becoming monotonous.

3) Descriptive Language:

Descriptive language uses sensory details and rich adjectives to paint vivid mental pictures, immersing children in the story's world. These sensory details allow readers to hear and feel the snow beneath the protagonist's feet, making the scene more engaging. In 'The Snowy Day' by Ezra Jack Keats, descriptive language brings the snowy world to life (Figure 3.55).

How It's Used: Children's fiction books often rely on sensory words to complement the illustrations, enhancing the reader's experience. This language brings environments, emotions and actions to life.

Considerations: Keep descriptions concise and age-appropriate, allowing the illustrations to complement the text rather than overwhelm it.

Figure 3.53: ***Rhyming and Rhythm explained in 'Green Eggs and Ham' by Dr. Seuss.***
"I do not like green eggs and ham, I do not like them, Sam-I-Am."

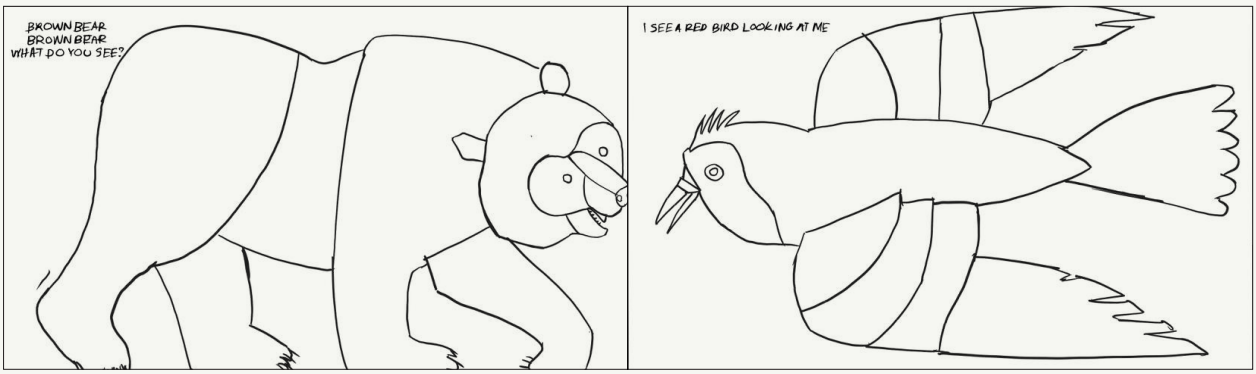


Figure 3.54: ***Repetition explained in 'Brown Bear, Brown Bear, What Do You See?***
'by Bill Martin Jr. and Eric Carle "Brown Bear, Brown Bear, what do you see? I see a red bird looking at me."

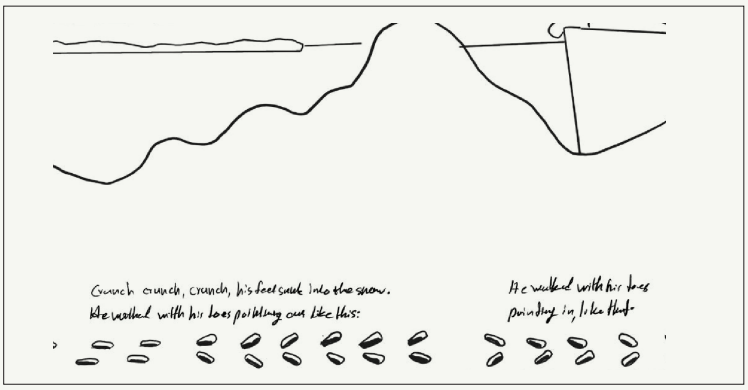


Figure 3.55: : ***Descriptive Language used in 'The Snowy Day' by Ezra Jack Keats***
"Crunch, crunch, crunch, his feet sank into the snow."

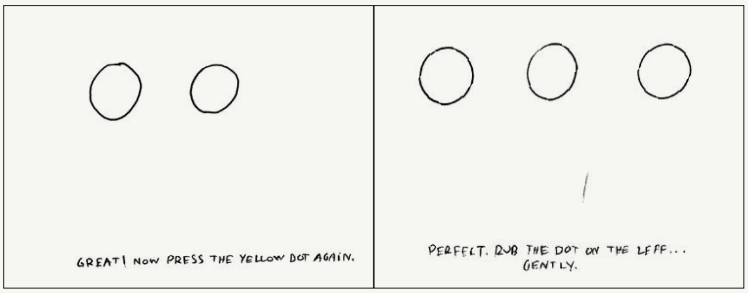


Figure 3.56: ***Interactive Language used in 'Press Here' by Hervé Tullet***,
"Press the yellow dot. Now, press harder."

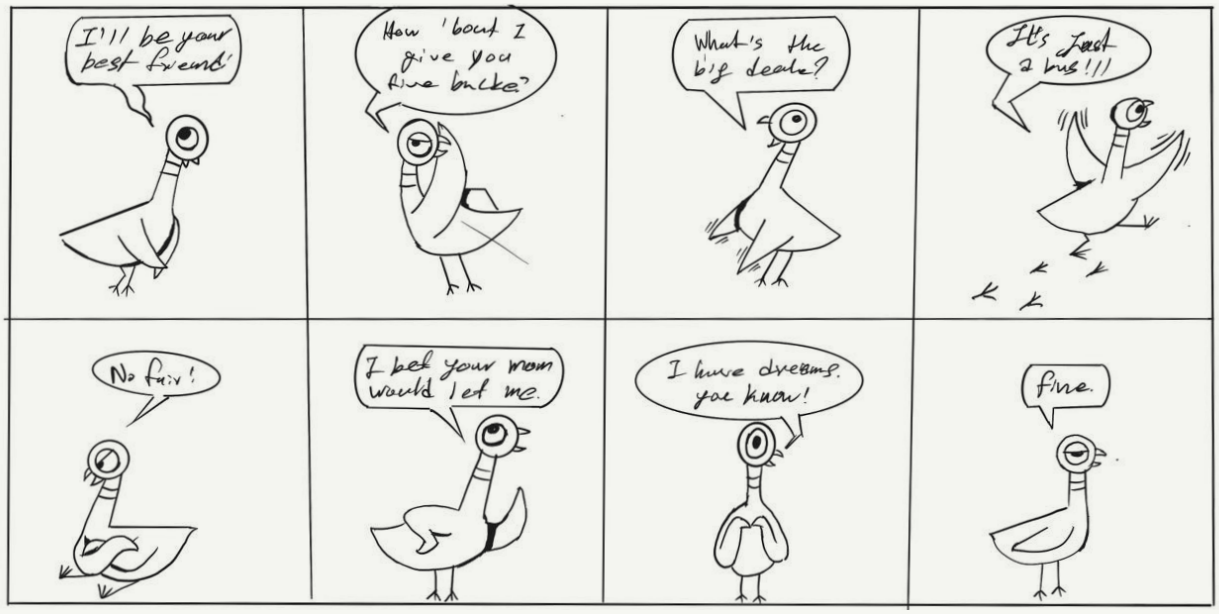


Figure 3.57: ***Playful Language in Don't Let the Pigeon Drive the Bus! by Mo Willems***, "I'll be your best friend! How 'bout I give you five bucks?"

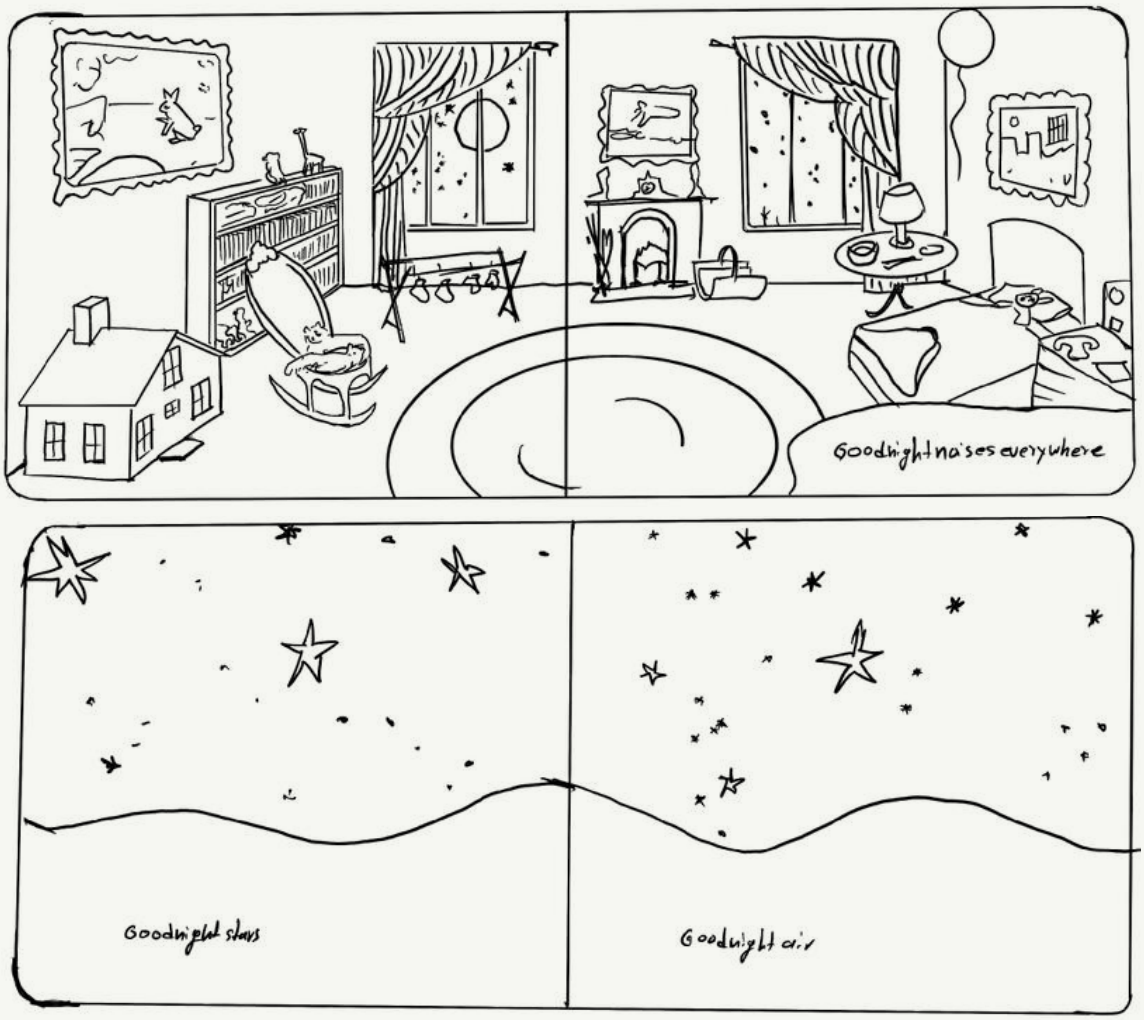


Figure 3.58: ***Playful Language in Don't Let the Pigeon Drive the Bus! by Mo Willems***, "I'll be your best friend! How 'bout I give you five bucks?"

4) Interactive Language:

Interactive language directly addresses the reader or encourages participation by asking questions, giving instructions, or involving them in the narrative. The book explained in 'Press Here' by Hervé Tullet, uses interactive text to involve readers. This physical participation by the readers, with the book makes the story highly engaging and memorable (Figure 3.56).

How It's Used: This technique creates a sense of dialogue between the book and the child, making the reading experience more immersive and engaging.

Considerations: Interactive language works best in stories that are playful and allow readers to feel like active participants. Ensure instructions are simple and clear.

5) Playful Language:

Playful language includes wordplay, humor, and creative phrasing to entertain and delight readers. For example, in Don't Let the Pigeon Drive the Bus! by Mo Willems, the pigeon's exaggerated pleading and dramatic language make the book humorous (Figure 3.57). The humor appeals to children and adults, creating a fun, shared reading experience.

How It's Used: Writers use alliteration, puns, and silly words to add humor and charm to the story.

Considerations: Ensure playful language fits the tone of the story and is understandable to the target age group.

6) Number of Words:

Economy of language refers to using fewer words to convey meaning, ensuring the text aligns with the conciseness of children's fiction books. In 'Goodnight' Moon by Margaret Wise Brown, the simple, sparse language creates a calming bedtime rhythm (Figure 3.58).

How It's Used: Children's fiction books often have limited word counts (500–700 words on average), so every word must contribute to the story's progression or emotional impact.

Considerations: Avoid unnecessary details or complex sentences that might confuse young readers. Let the illustrations fill in the gaps.

7). Emotional Resonance:

Emotional resonance refers to the use of language to evoke feelings that align with the story's themes and characters. The tender language used in 'The Velveteen Rabbit' by Margery Williams, evokes deep emotion.

How It's Used: Writers carefully choose words to match the story's emotional tone, whether it's joy, fear, excitement, or comfort.

Considerations: Ensure the emotional tone matches the age and sensitivity of the audience, offering comfort and hope even in sad moments.

3.7.5 Narrative Perspectives

The narrative perspective determines who is telling the story, and how much they know about the world and characters. It influences what the reader sees, feels and understands.

1) First-Person Narrative:

The story is told directly by a character in the story, using "I" or "we."

Strengths:

- Offers a personal, intimate view of the character's thoughts, feelings and experiences.
- It helps the reader connect emotionally with the narrator.

Challenges:

- The story is limited to what the narrator knows or perceives.
- Risk of bias or unreliability if the narrator's perspective is skewed.

First-Person Narrative:

First-person makes Benny's feelings of fear and courage feel intimate. Use first-person narrative when you want children to emotionally identify closely with the protagonist.

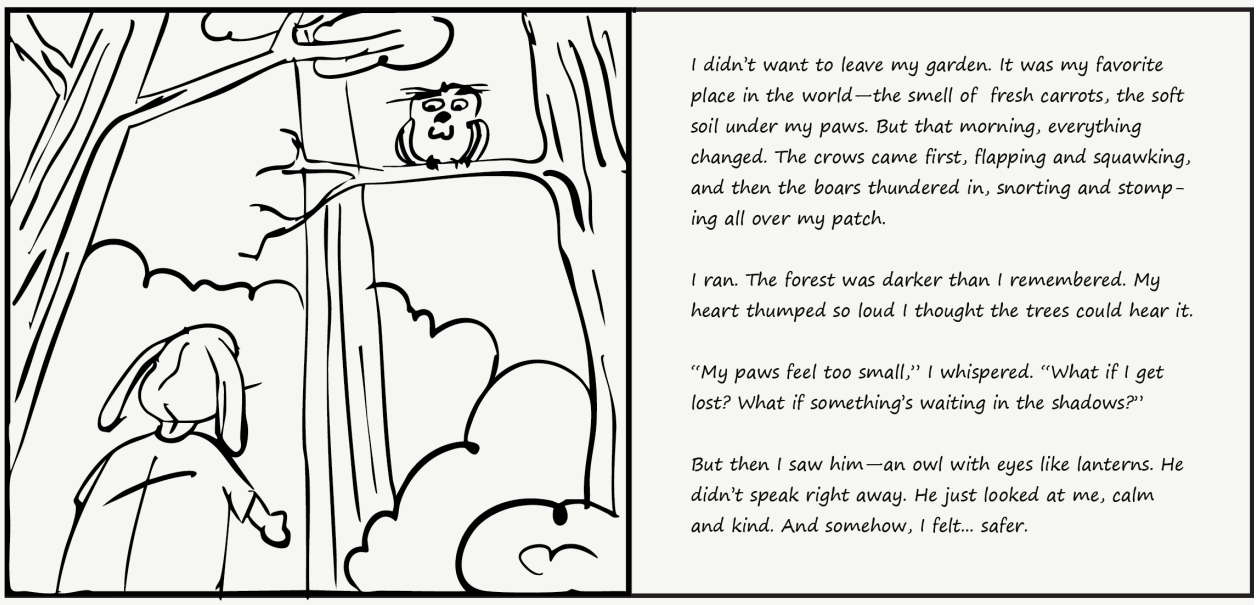


Figure 3.59: ***First-Person Narrative***
A shy and timid rabbit narrates his fear of facing the dark forest:, sharing inner thoughts like, "My paws feel too small. What if I get lost? What if something's waiting in the shadows?" This perspective helps young readers relate to Benny's fear.

Illustrations Completed by Sajitha Vimukthi

2) Third-Person Limited Narrative:

The story is told by an outside narrator who focuses on the thoughts and feelings of one character.

Strengths:

- Balances personal connection with a slightly broader perspective.
- Allows insight into the protagonist while maintaining some narrative distance.

Challenges:

- Limited to what the main character knows, sees or feels.
- Cannot easily reveal other characters' internal thoughts.

Third-Person Limited Narrative:

Use third-person limited when you want to show the world around your character while still keeping emotional focus. This is ideal for visually rich picture books with emotionally driven plots.

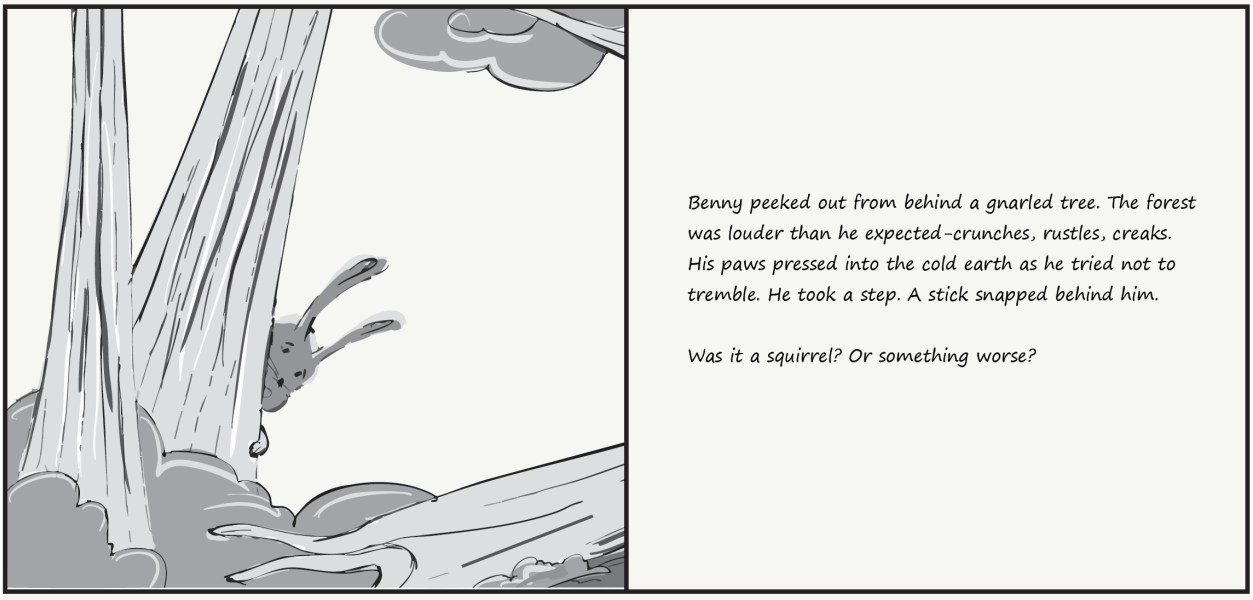


Figure 3.60: T***hird-Person Limited Narrative***

Benny ventured cautiously into the forest. His ears twitched at every sound. The trees seemed taller here, and the wind carried whispers that made him shiver. "Benny's heart thumped as he saw the shadows moving. Was it just the wind... or something watching him?"

3) Third-Person Omniscient Narrative

The story is told by an all-knowing narrator who can reveal the thoughts and feelings of multiple characters.

Strengths:

- Provides a wide-angle view of the entire story world.
- Reveals the inner thoughts of both protagonists and antagonists.
- Useful for delivering moral or social insights.

Challenges:

- Can feel less personal and more detached.
- Risk of overwhelming readers with too much information.

> ***Third-Person Omniscient Narrative:***
>
> *Use third-person omniscient when you want to explore multiple viewpoints or convey a bigger message. Ideal for stories with broader themes or when secondary characters' motivations deepen the plot.*

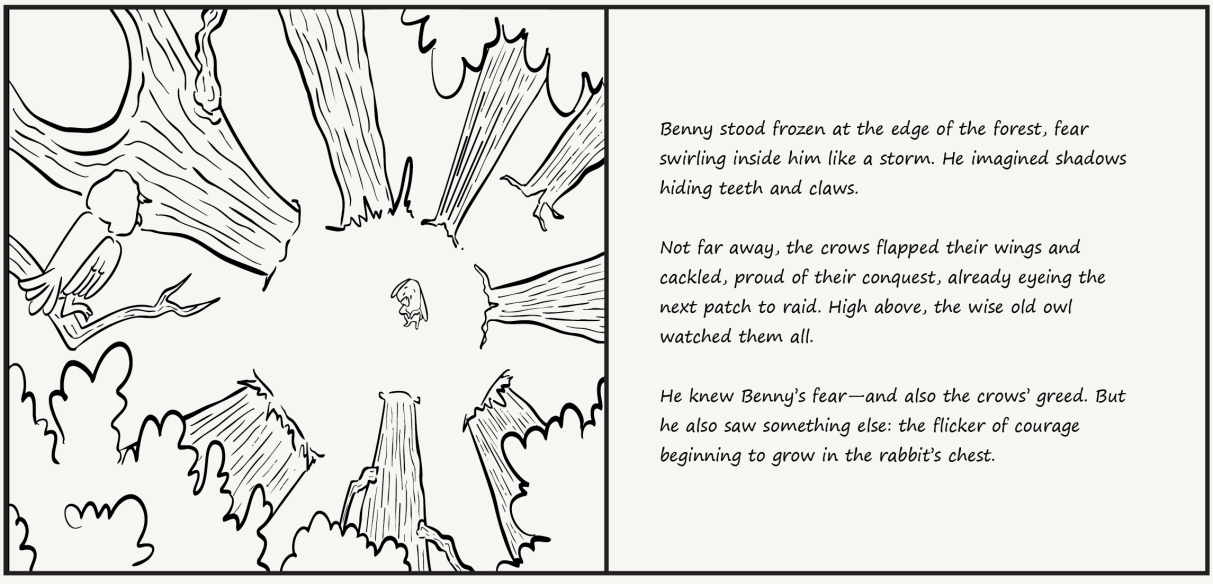


Figure 3.61: ***Third-Person Omniscient Narrative***
The narrator describes both the rabbit's fear and the crows' greed: "Benny hesitated at the edge of the forest, while the crows cackled, plotting to keep the carrots for themselves."

Illustrations Completed by Sajitha Vimukthi

4) Second-Person Narrative (Rare in children's fiction books)

The story directly addresses the reader using "you."

Strengths:

- Creates a highly immersive, interactive reading experience.
- Encourages emotional engagement by making the reader feel part of the story.

Challenges:

- Can feel unnatural if not handled carefully.
- Requires careful pacing and tone to sustain believability.

Second-Person Narrative:

Use second-person when the goal is to draw the reader directly into the adventure. Best suited for interactive or emotionally immersive picture books where the reader's choices or feelings are part of the journey.

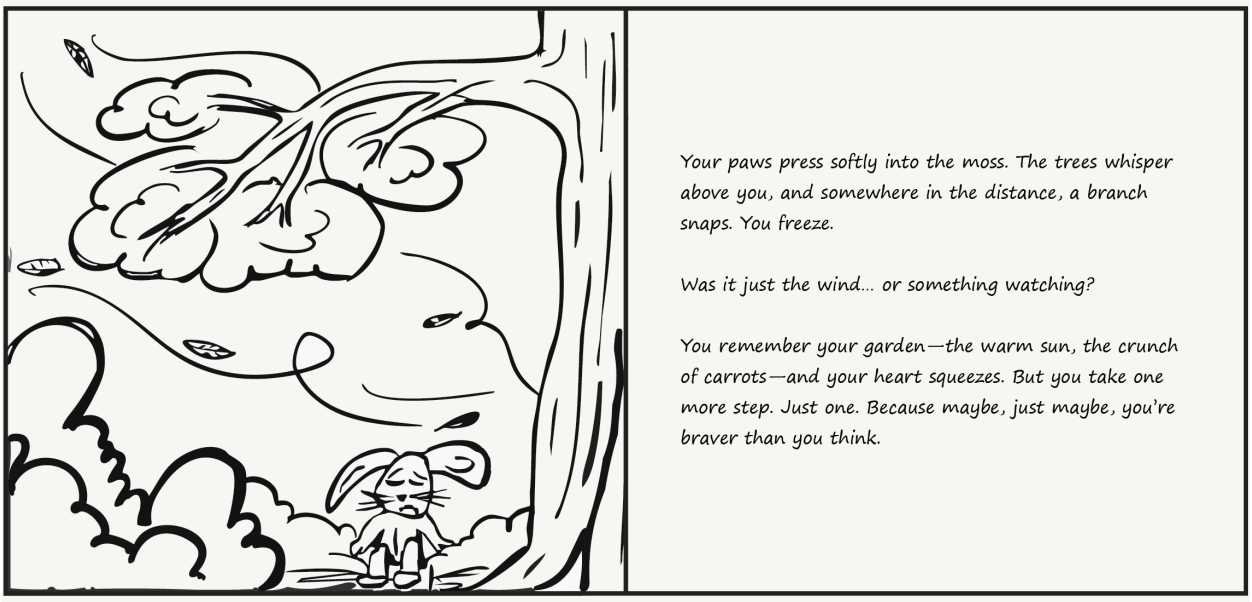


Figure 3.62: ***Second-Person Narrative***
The narrator places the reader directly into the story as the protagonist, making them feel Benny's fear and uncertainty. This perspective turns the forest journey into a personal experience, deepening emotional engagement.

3.7.6 Voice and Tone

Voice is the distinct personality or style of the narrator or characters. Tone is the emotional atmosphere created by word choice, imagery and pacing. Together, they shape how the story feels to the reader.

1) Childlike Voice:

Simple, playful and mirrors a child's thinking. Ideal for early readers. Use short sentences, wonder-filled phrasing and lots of sound-based words (like "pop," "shhh," or "whoosh!").

Refer to the example from Benny the Rabbit, Figure 3.63.

2) Whimsical Voice:

Quirky and magical, often using imaginative phrasing. Great for fantasy worlds. Let the visuals be echoed through lyrical, unexpected wordplay.

Refer to the example from Benny the Rabbit, Figure 3.64.

3) Serious or Reflective Voice:

Thoughtful, poetic and introspective. Use when exploring themes of courage, empathy or emotional transformation.

Refer to the example from Benny the Rabbit, Figure 3.65.

4) Playful Tone:

Light-hearted and humorous. Perfect for laugh-out-loud moments. Exaggerate expressions and use silly metaphors.

Refer to the example from Benny the Rabbit, Figure 3.66.

5) Suspenseful Tone:

Builds tension, ideal for overcoming fear. Control pacing. Use short sentences, sounds, and tight framing in the language.

Refer to the example from Benny the Rabbit, Figure 3.67.

6) Warm and Reassuring Tone:

Comforting and gentle, ideal for bedtime or emotional stories. Use rhythm, soft consonants, and cozy imagery to calm and reassure.

Refer to the example from Benny the Rabbit, Figure 3.68.

7) Melancholic Tone:

Evokes sadness or nostalgia. Use sparingly in children's books. When used, always return to hope or comfort by the end.

Refer to the example from Benny the Rabbit, Figure 3.69.

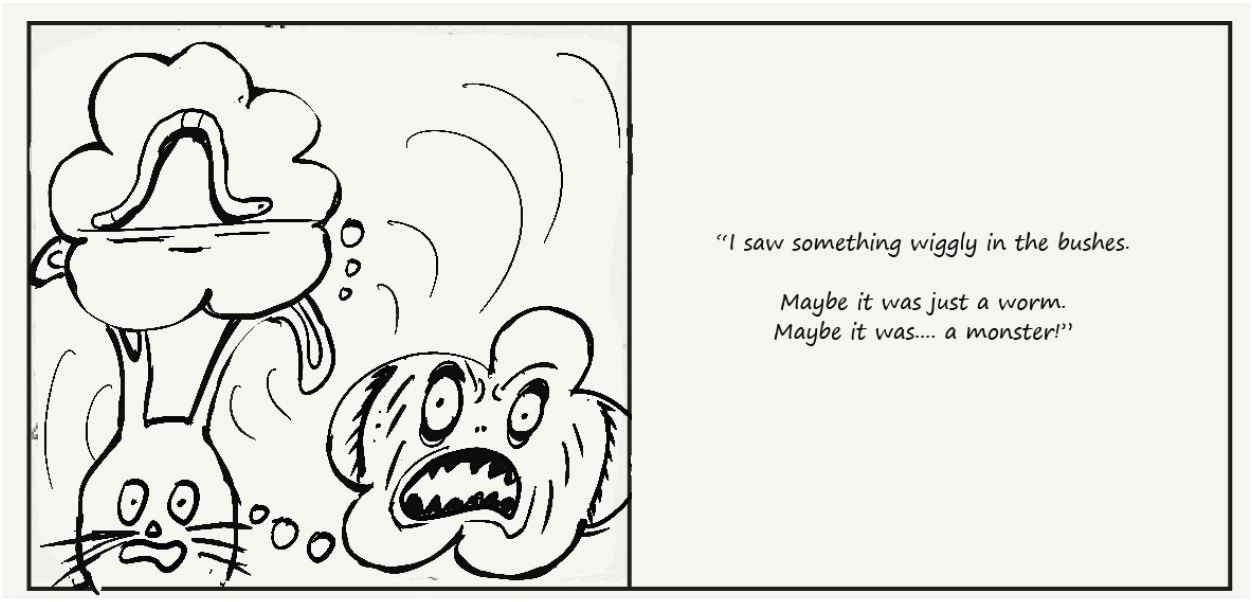


Figure 3.63: ***Childlike Voice***
"I saw something wiggly in the bushes. Maybe it was just a worm. Maybe it was... a monster!"

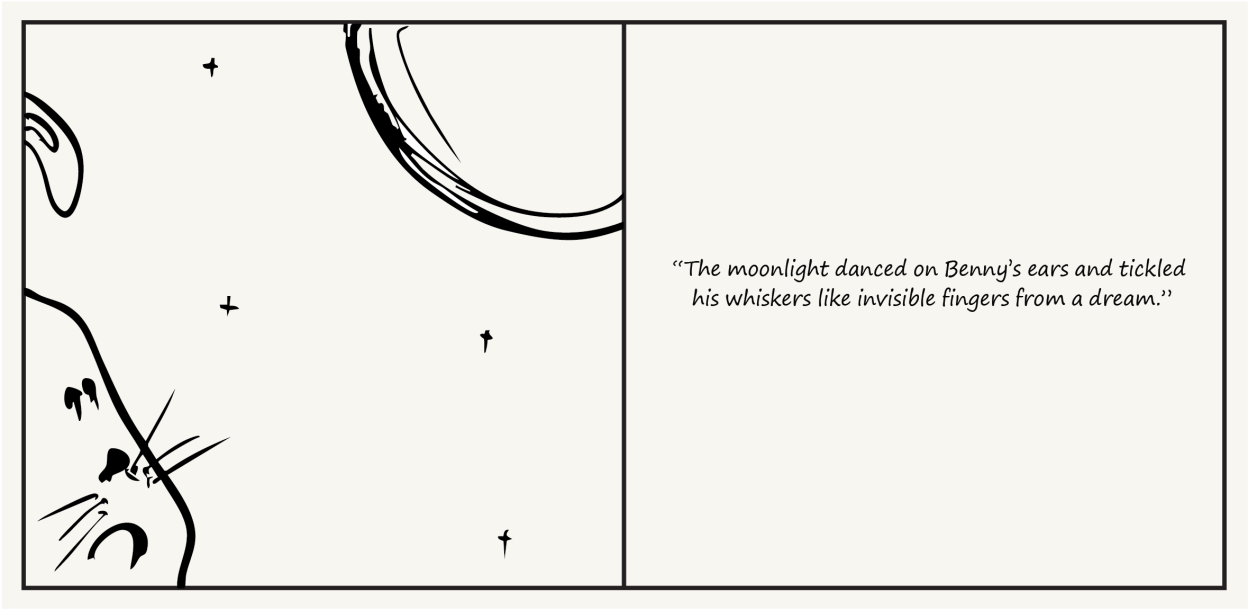


Figure 3.64: ***Whimsical Voice***
"The moonlight danced on Benny's ears and tickled his whiskers like invisible fingers from a dream."

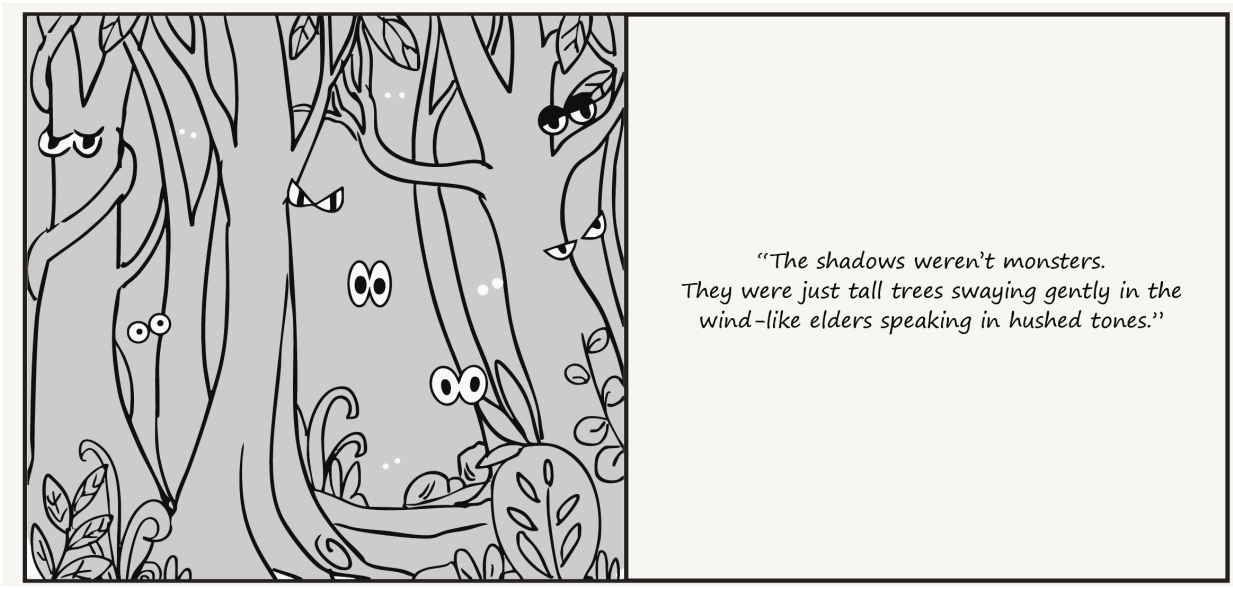


Figure 3.65: ***Serious or Reflective Voice***
"The shadows weren't monsters. They were just tall trees swaying gently in the wind—like elders speaking in hushed tones."

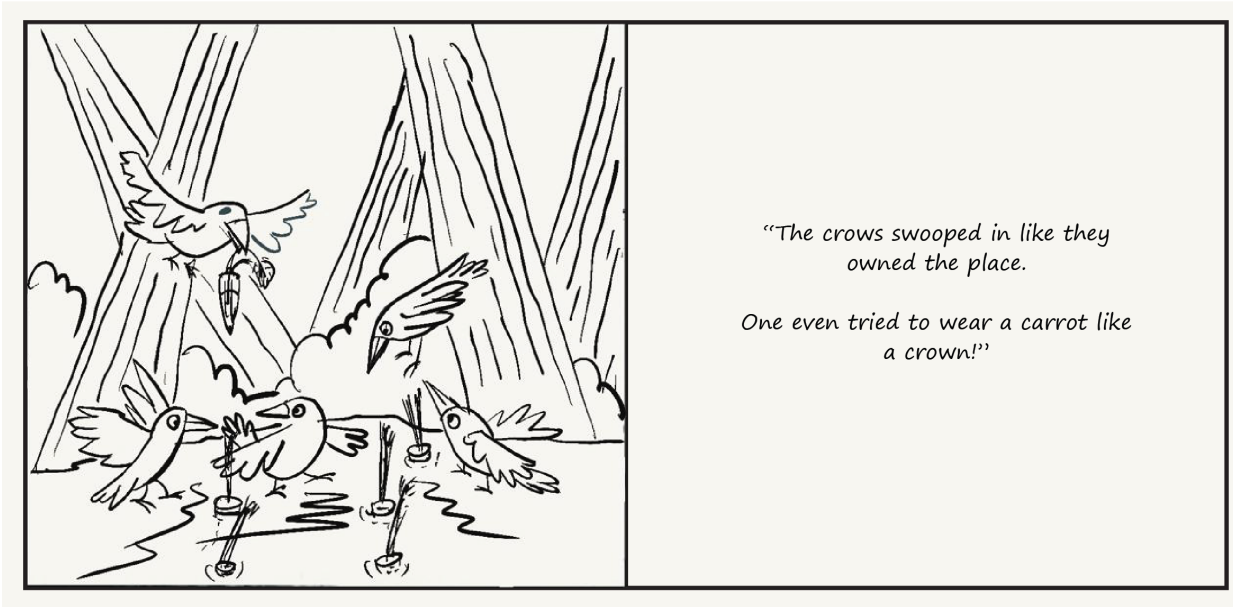


Figure 3.66: ***Playful Tone***
"The crows swooped in like they owned the place. One even tried to wear a carrot like a crown!"

Illustrations Completed by Sajitha Vimukthi

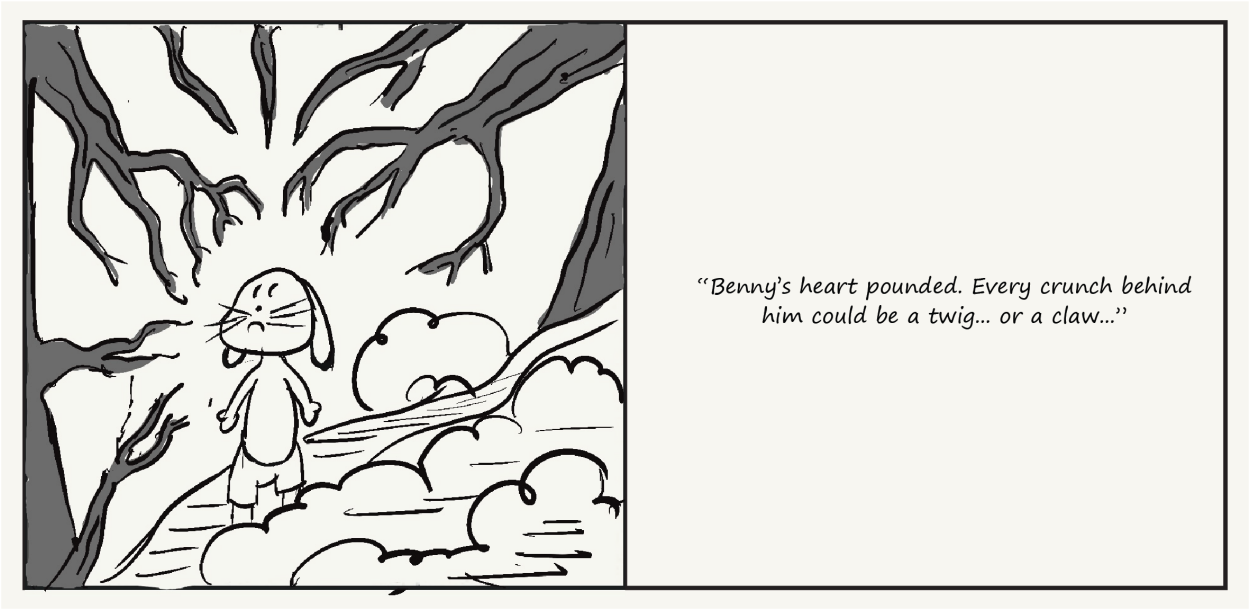


Figure 3.67: ***Suspenseful Tone***
"Benny's heart pounded. Every crunch behind him could be a twig... or a claw..."

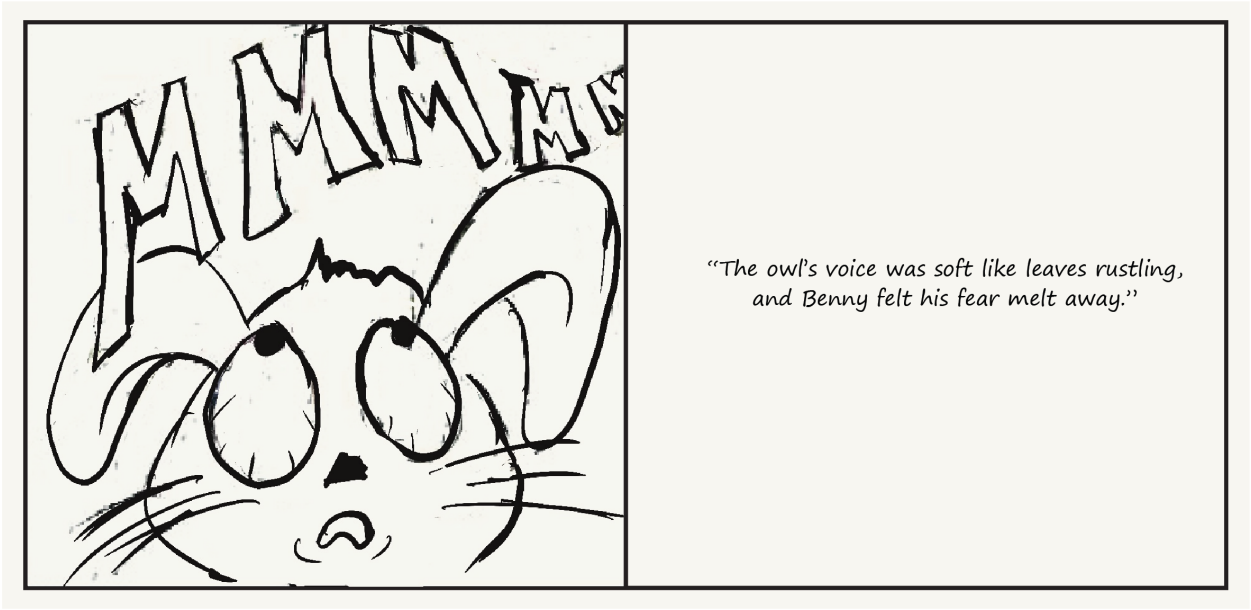


Figure 3.68: ***Warm and Reassuring Tone***
"The owl's voice was soft like leaves rustling, and Benny felt his fear melt away."

Figure 3.69: ***Melancholic Tone***
"Benny stood where his garden once was, a patch of turned earth and memory."

Quick takeaway!

Connection Between Voice and Tone

Aspect	**Voice**	**Tone**
What is it?	The narrator or character's unique personality and style of speaking	The emotional mood or atmosphere of the story
	Voice sets who is telling the story; tone sets how the story feels	Together, they shape the emotional and narrative experience
Purpose	Builds the character's identity and makes the story relatable	Influences how the reader feels about the events
Example with Benny the Rabbit	"I peeked under the bush. Nope. No monster. Just a wiggly worm!" (Childlike)	"The forest whispered in the dark. Benny's ears twitched at every snap." (Suspenseful)
	A playful voice + a warm tone = comforting bedtime story	

3.7.7 Spelling and Grammar in Children's Fiction Books

Spelling and grammar form the foundation of written language, especially in children's fiction books, where the text is not only a tool for storytelling but also a medium for early language acquisition and literacy development.

In the context of Sri Lanka, where children's books are produced in Sinhala, Tamil, and English, linguistic accuracy becomes even more critical. These books often serve as supplementary readers in primary education, supporting the formal curriculum by strengthening vocabulary, sentence construction and grammatical understanding.

1) Importance of Spelling and Grammar in Children's Literature

Supports Literacy Development:

Accurate spelling and grammar help children internalize language rules, which are essential for developing reading and writing skills

Builds Confidence:

Clear and correct language allows young readers to engage with texts independently, building confidence in their language abilities.

Reflects Cultural and Linguistic Integrity:

In multilingual contexts such as Sri Lanka, correct usage preserves the integrity of language and conveys respect for cultural identity.

Provides Educational Value:

Many children's fiction books are read both at home and in classrooms. Mistakes in spelling or grammar can hinder comprehension and propagate incorrect usage.

Allows for Creative Flexibility:

In some cases, especially in dialogue, rhyme, or playful narration, the structure of language may be intentionally altered. For example, a character might speak in incomplete sentences or use imaginative words or phrases ("skippity-skip!") to reflect personality or mood. This intentional deviation from standard grammar or composition order is acceptable when used meaningfully and sparingly, without confusing the reader.

2) Writing in Sri Lankan Languages

Children's fiction books in Sinhala, Tamil and English, contribute to inclusive education and cultural representation. While English-language books often follow international conventions, Sinhala and Tamil books must adhere to localized linguistic standards.

Sinhala Language Books

For Sinhala fiction, writers and illustrators must be particularly attentive to:

- Grammatical structure (vyākaranaya)
- Correct usage of particles and affixes
- Standard spelling conventions (nipuna lipi kriyā)

For Sinhala fiction, writers and illustrators must be particularly attentive to:

- *Sinhala Lekhana Viyawaharaya Upadesha Sangrahaya* – Educational Publications Department
- *Sinhala Lekhana Kruthiya* – National Institute of Education (NIE)
- *Sinhala Shabdhakoshaya* – by Prof. J. B. Disanayaka
- Official Dictionary on Spelling – Department of Official Languages
  Works of Prof. Sandagomi Coperahewa on Sinhala orthography and grammar

Tamil Language Books

Sri Lankan Tamil varies regionally, with Up-country Tamil, Northern Tamil and Eastern Tamil showing differences in vocabulary, usage, and pronunciation. When writing Tamil children's books, it's important to:

- Respect the dialectical variations without distorting standard grammar
- Choose terminology appropriate to the target community while ensuring clarity and consistency
- Follow guidelines provided by the Tamil Language Unit of the Department of Official Languages

For Tamil fiction, writers and illustrators must be particularly attentive to:

- *Ilakkana Vilakkam* – National Institute of Education
- *Thamizh Mozhi Agaraathi* (Tamil Dictionary)
- Guidelines by Sri Lanka Tamil Language Promotion Board

Section 04

Section 04

Visualizing Stories

Visual Creation Essentials

Whether you are a novice illustrator stepping into the world of visual storytelling, or a seasoned art director or illustrator refining your practice, this section offers essential principles for creating compelling and developmentally meaningful visuals for children's fiction. It serves as a foundational guide to illustrations that do more than decorate — they enrich the narrative and support children's cognitive, literacy, imaginative, emotional and moral development.

Chapter 4 explores the visual dimension of children's fiction, focusing on how illustration supports narrative meaning, emotional tone, character development and world-building. It introduces foundational tools such as visual characterization, world design, thumbnailing, storyboarding, layout, colour and typography, each tailored to enhance a child's reading experience through clarity, emotional resonance and cognitive engagement.

The chapter also emphasizes the collaborative nature of children's book creation, where writers, illustrators, and art directors work together to build inclusive, culturally relevant and visually compelling stories. From moodboards and character sheets to spread compositions and final cover design, this chapter offers a step-by-step framework to develop visual narratives that are not just supportive of text, but powerful storytelling agents in their own right, capable of guiding, delighting, and emotionally moving young readers.

Contents of this Section

4.1 Develop Your Characters Visually:
Purposeful Character Visualization

4.2 Be Creative with the World:
Visual World-Building and Setting Design

4.3 Plan the Flow of Your Story:
Narrating, Thumbnailing for Visual Rhythm and Structure

4.4 Final Visual Journey:
Refining Compositions and Reading Experience

4.5 Experiment with Composition:
Perspectives, Layout and Angles

4.6 Power of Typography and Cover:
Placement, Legibility and Expression

At the end of this section you should be able to:

- Define and Apply Core Componants of Visual Characterization and World-Building in Children's Fiction.
- Recognize the Importance of the Use of Research Tools: Inspiration Boards, Moodboards etc.
- Plan the Visual Flow of a Story by Recognizing Importance of Narrative Arcs, Thumbnails etc.
- Understand the Impact of Composition: Storyboarding, Final Artwork, Pre-press Layout and Preparation Before Production.
- Evaluate the Role of Typography, Titling and Cover Design: Placement, Legibility etc. to Ensure Accessibility, Appeal and Impactful Storytelling.
- Complete the Technical Script of the Story.

4.1 Develop Your Characters Visually

Purposeful Character Visualization

4.1.1 What Is Character Visualization?

Characters are at the heart of any story, providing structure and driving the narrative forward. In children's books, characters may take the form of humans, animals, or even inanimate objects, each playing a unique role in crafting imaginative and emotionally engaging stories. Unlike general fiction, in which character development may unfold over pages of text, children's literature often relies on action and imagery to convey personality, making visual representation a vital tool for storytelling.

Visual characterization is the process of defining how a character looks, moves and expresses emotion through illustration. It is a fundamental aspect of children's fiction, shaping how young readers perceive, interpret and connect with the characters they encounter. Through careful design of physical features, facial expressions, gestures, silhouettes, color palettes, and clothing, illustrators bring characters to life making them visually distinct, emotionally resonant and deeply memorable.

4.1.2 Why Character Visualization Matters in Children's Fiction

Visual characterization is essential in children's fiction because young readers often understand stories through what they see before they fully comprehend written text. In picture books, illustrations don't just support the story — they carry it. The way a character looks, moves and expresses emotion directly influences how children interpret who they are, what they feel, and why they matter within the narrative. Here are several reasons why visual characterization is so important:

a) Supports Early Comprehension and Visual Literacy

Children are still developing reading skills, so they rely on visuals to follow the plot and understand characters' roles and emotions. A well-illustrated character can visually communicate fear, joy, bravery or confusion — even without words.

b) Builds Emotional Connection and Empathy

Visual cues such as big, curious eyes or drooping ears — make characters feel alive and relatable. When children see expressions and gestures that mirror their own feelings, they are more likely to connect emotionally, fostering empathy and understanding.

c) Reinforces Identity and Role

Distinct visual traits such as shape, size, posture and color palette help signal whether a character is a hero, a helper or a troublemaker. This helps children navigate the narrative and remember who is who, even across multiple pages and scenes.

d) Encourages Engagement and Imagination

Well-designed characters spark curiosity. Children often imitate or imagine themselves as the characters they see. This deepens their engagement with the story and opens up imaginative play beyond the book.

e) Enhances Narrative Clarity and Flow

Characters with consistent, recognizable features help children track the story visually — especially when the plot involves changes in setting, mood, or time. Silhouette, costume, and expression all help maintain visual and narrative continuity.

4.1.3 Use Visual Research Tools to Start the Process

In the early stages of visual characterization, it is essential to gather visual references that guide the development of your characters. There are several fundamental tools in this process such as inspiration boards, mood boards, colour palette boards, genre and style references, visual world-building references sheets etc. Though often used interchangeably, each serves a slightly different purpose in helping you clarify the look, personality and visual style of your character and setting.

Creating 'Benny' the Character

a) What Is an Inspiration Board?

An inspiration board is a curated collection of visual references that guide the design direction of a character. It helps establish the personality, emotional tone, cultural background and narrative function of the character within the story. For illustrators, it acts as a visual thinking tool — a place to gather ideas, experiment with concepts, and ground artistic choices in a specific context. Inspiration boards often include:

- Photographs of real animals, people or environments etc.
- Character sketches from other books, films or animations etc.
- Visual references from history, folklore or traditional crafts etc.
- Environmental or symbolic motifs (e.g. patterns, plants, textures)

By analyzing these images collectively, you can begin to shape the visual identity of a character — from posture and form to costume and expression. There is no fixed limit to the number of inspiration boards or visual research tools you can create; however, they should all contribute to a coherent visual concept and reflect a unified design direction.

Example with Benny the Rabbit:
Inspiration Board for the Plot Type 01 “Overcoming the Monster”

Refer Figure 4.1: Sample Inspiration Board Reflecting Protagonist ‘Rabbit’
Refer Figure 4.2: Sample Inspiration Board Reflecting Antagonists ‘Wildboars and Crows’

In Benny the Rabbit, the character begins as gentle and timid, with a deep fear of the forest and unfamiliar sounds. His transformation into a courageous figure happens through inner growth, not physical strength. Therefore, Benny’s inspiration board should reflect both his vulnerability and emerging resilience.

To develop Benny visually, the inspiration board draws from:

- **Sri Lankan Rabbit Species –** to reflect local biodiversity and bring regional authenticity to Benny’s appearance (e.g. fur color, ear length, posture)
- **Anatomical Structure Studies** – to understand how a real rabbit moves and expresses emotion through body language (twitching ears, crouching posture, large eyes)
- **Rabbit Illustrations –** both local and international, to analyze how rabbits have been stylized across genres (from hyperrealistic to whimsical)
- **Textural and Cultural Elements –** natural textures like bark, soil or vegetables are added to reflect Benny’s connection to his garden and the forest.

This board helps position Benny as a realistic yet emotionally expressive character, able to evolve from a scared figure into a quiet hero. His initial posture is low and guarded, but the board includes sketches and references showing open, upright poses to anticipate his character arc.

By assembling these visuals thoughtfully — the illustrator gains a clear direction, one that aligns with the narrative theme of overcoming fear while embedding the character in a culturally grounded and emotionally engaging visual world.

Disclaimer: Images acknowledged; references listed at the end of this book.

“An inspiration board is more than a collection of images, it is a compass for creativity, guiding ideas, aligning visions and shaping stories into meaningful design”

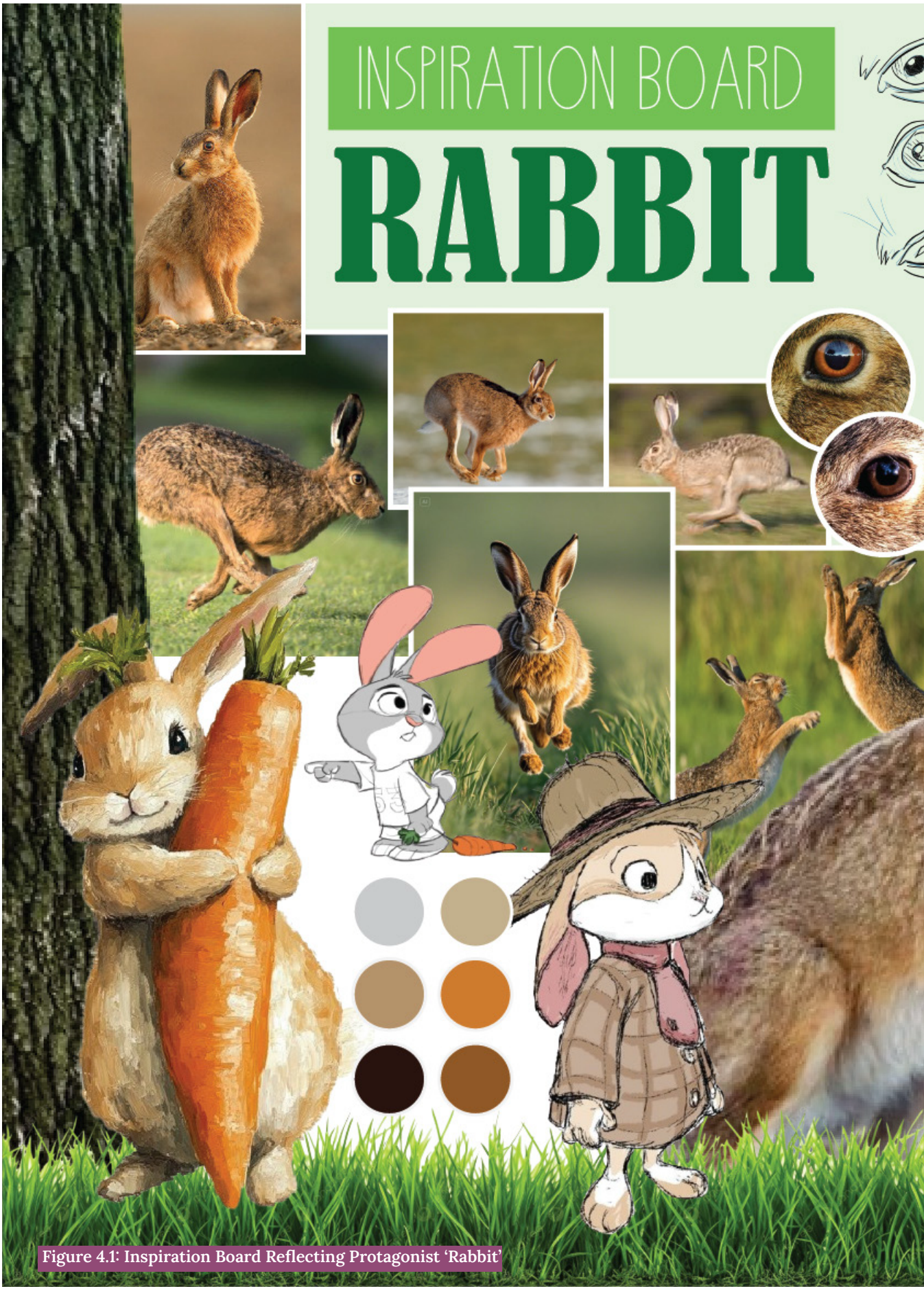


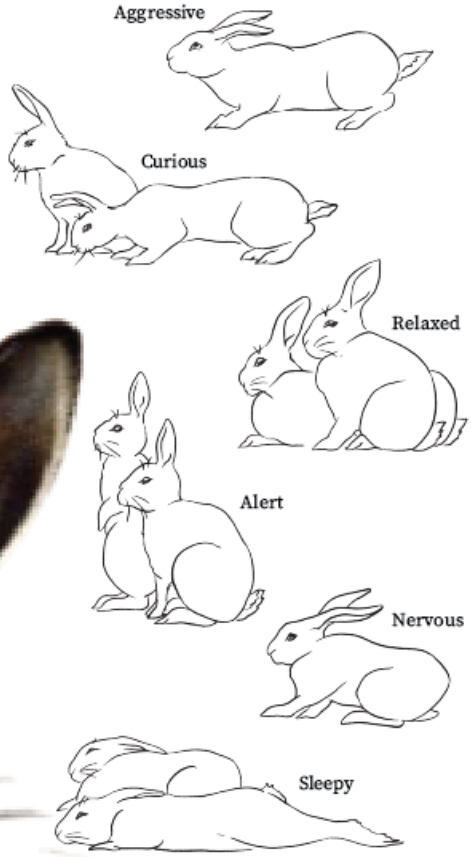
Figure 4.1: Inspiration Board Reflecting Protagonist 'Rabbit'

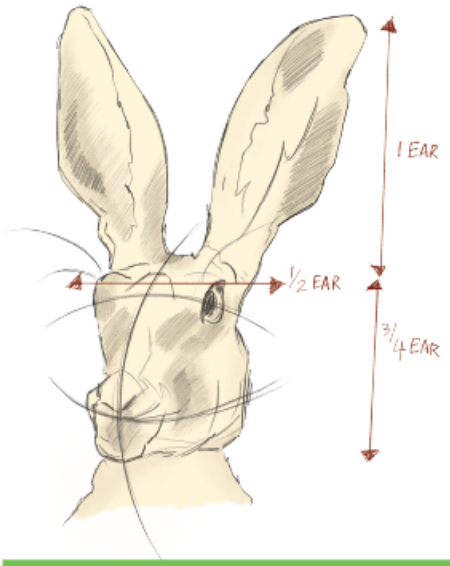
General Eye - Oval shape
Large pupil

Round Eye - For Young Rabbits
Bigger Iris
More shine

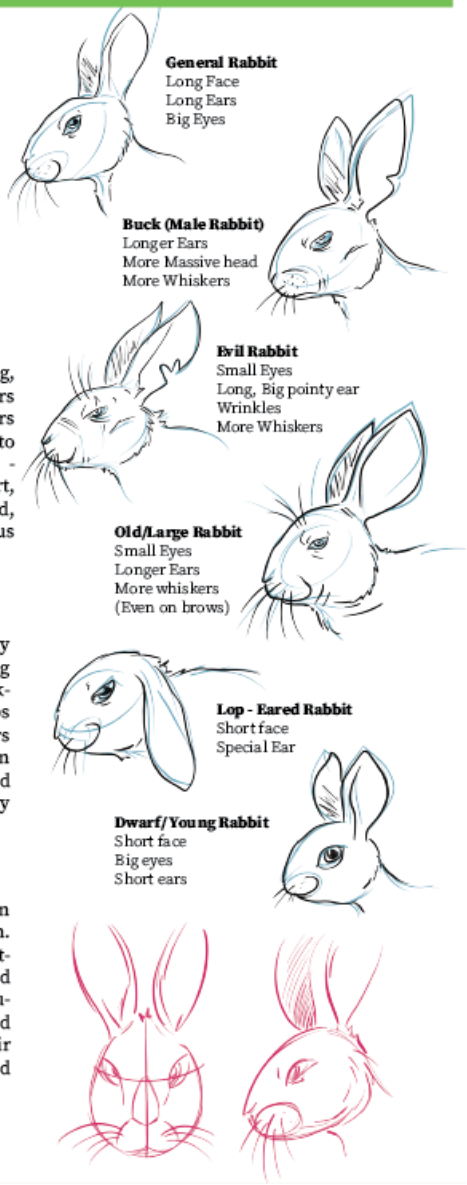
Evil Eye - Droe Eyes
Wrinkles

Behaviours of Rabbit





Types and Characteristics of Rabbit



Rabbits have great hearing, and can rotate their ears independently. Their ears are also a quick guide to how they feel: forward - curious, upright - alert, backwards 45° - relaxed, laid back further - nervous or aggressive.

A rabbit's posture, the way they sit or stand, is a big clue to what they are thinking - particularly for lops who don't move their ears much. Rabbits lean forwards to investigate and lean away from scary things.

Pay attention to changes in normal hopping motion. They go faster when excited or running away, and slower when being cautious. Cautious or scared rabbits also keep their body closer to the ground when moving.

Figure 4.2: Another Inspiration Board Reflecting Protagonist 'Rabbit'

Realistic character features

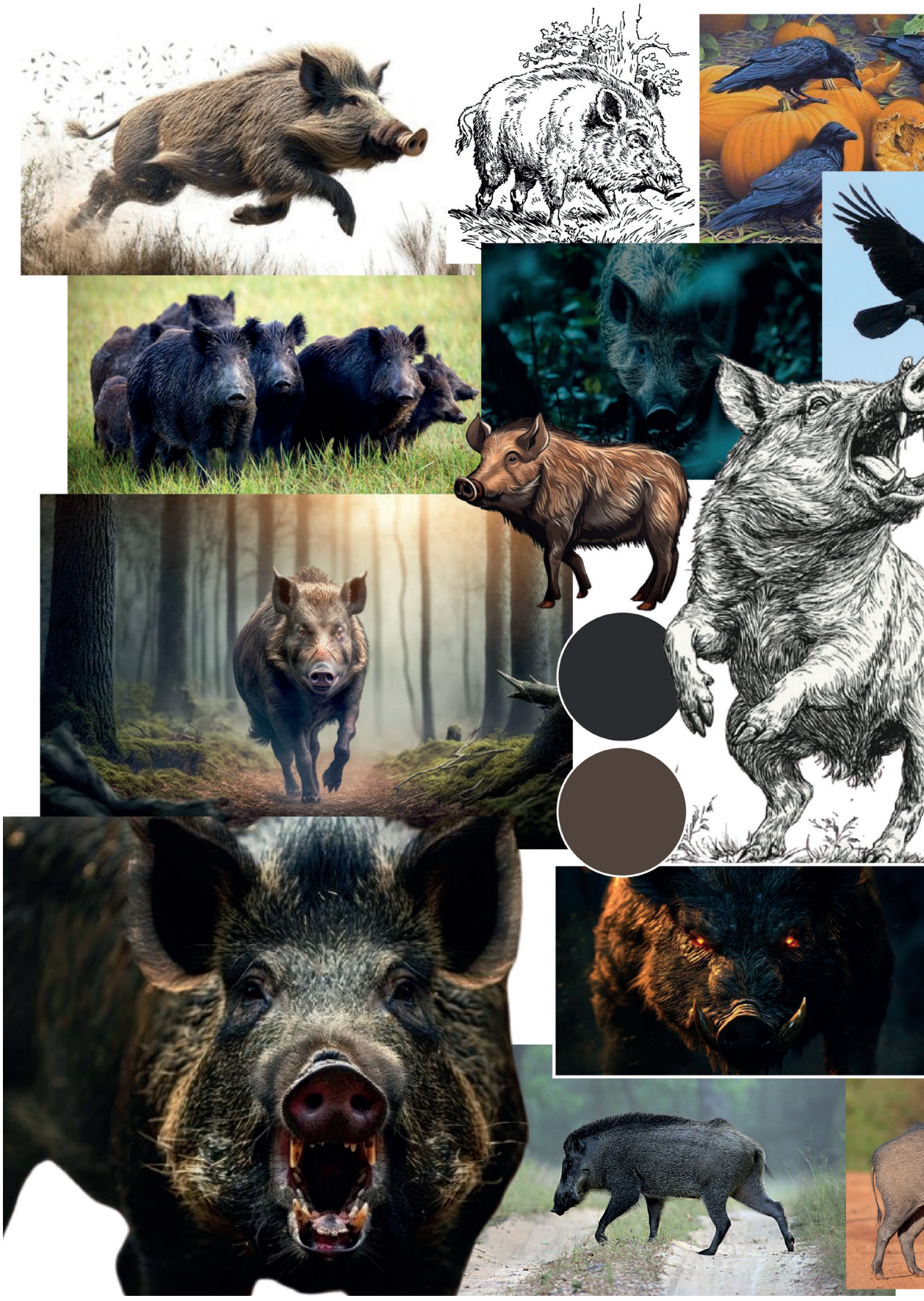


Figure 4.3: Inspiration Board Reflecting Antagonists 'Wildboars and Crows'

INSPIRATION BOARD

‘WILDBOARS AND CROWS’

b) What Is a Mood Board?

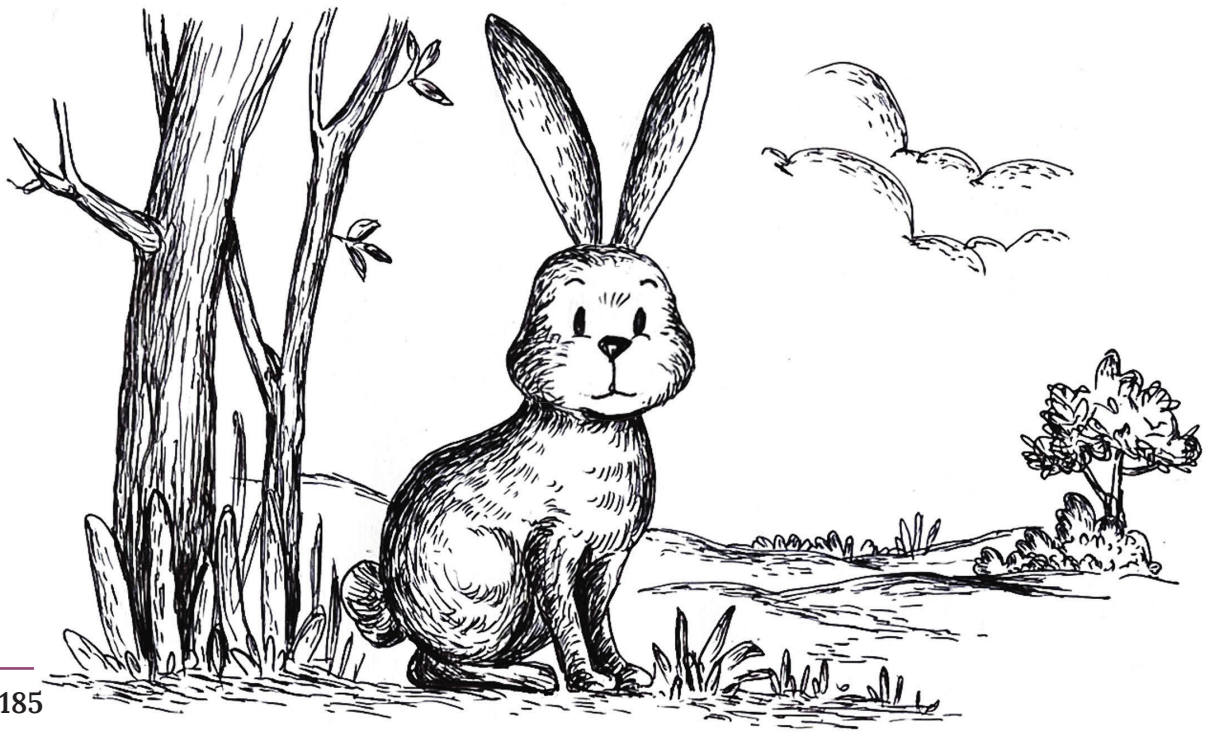
A mood board is a visual tool that captures the emotional tone, atmosphere, and sensory experience of a character or story. While inspiration boards focus on the what — form, costume, anatomy — mood boards focus on the how — how the character should feel, how the world should look under specific lighting, and what emotional cues the visuals will communicate to the child reader. A mood board helps guide decisions on:

- Color palettes (warm, cool, muted, saturated)
- Lighting and texture (glow, shadow, contrast)
- Emotional tone (calm, energetic, mysterious, anxious)
- Symbolism and visual metaphors (e.g. fog for confusion, light for clarity)

These elements work together to establish the atmospheric direction for a character or scene, helping illustrators and writers stay visually and emotionally consistent. To shape the emotional and visual atmosphere, a mood board might include:

- Paintings, photographs, and film stills that capture lighting or emotion
- Textures and surface samples (e.g. wood grain, cloud mist, fabric)
- Color swatches that reflect the mood at different points in the story
- Emotive visual cues (e.g. glowing lanterns, lonely trees, playful sparkles)
- Scene references from other books, animations, or nature photography
- Typography snippets (if part of a broader design direction)
- Lighting references (soft morning light vs. moody moonlight)

In children's fiction, where emotional tone is often communicated visually, mood boards are especially valuable. A shift from dark blue to golden yellows can signal change just as effectively as a sentence. For children, visual storytelling provides emotional clarity, and mood boards help ensure those visual signals are deliberate, meaningful and developmentally appropriate.



Example with Benny the Rabbit:
Mood Board for the Plot Type 01 “Overcoming the Monster”

Refer Figure 4.3 : Sample Mood Boards Reflecting Protagonist ‘Rabbit Character’s Mood’
a - ‘Rabbit Character’s Early Mood’
b - ‘Rabbit Character’s Middle Mood’
c - ‘Rabbit Character’s Late Mood’

In Benny the Rabbit, the emotional arc centres on Benny’s internal transformation from fear to courage. The Rabbit’s mood board reflects contrasting emotional states and support the visual journey across the pages.

To develop Benny’s story visually, the application of mood draws from:

- **Fear and Uncertainty (Early Mood):**
  Color palette : muted greens, dark blues, grey-browns
  Lighting : heavy shadows, strong contrasts, nighttime tones
  Texture : rough bark, scratchy underbrush, rustling leaves
  Imagery : twisted trees, distant animal eyes, uncertain paths

- **Discovery and Transformation (Middle Mood):**
  Color palette : soft blue, warm greys, pale moonlight
  Lighting : gentle glows, filtered light, calming contrast
  Imagery : the owl’s eyes, moonlight over fur, stars through trees
  Mood : mystery shifting into understanding

- **Courage and Resolution (Late Mood):**
  Color palette : warm golds, earthy greens, soft oranges
  Lighting : morning light, open shadows
  Imagery : Benny standing tall, garden reclaimed, birds flying away
  Mood : empowerment, calm, joy

The contrast between early and late visuals helps reinforce Benny’s transformation. It also prepares the illustrator to keep emotional consistency in each spread, using color, texture and visual tone, as cues for the reader.

Disclaimer: Images acknowledged; references listed at the end of this book.

“In children’s books, a moodboard is the first step in building a world — capturing colors, textures and emotions that guide illustrators and writers to create stories children can see, feel and believe in.”

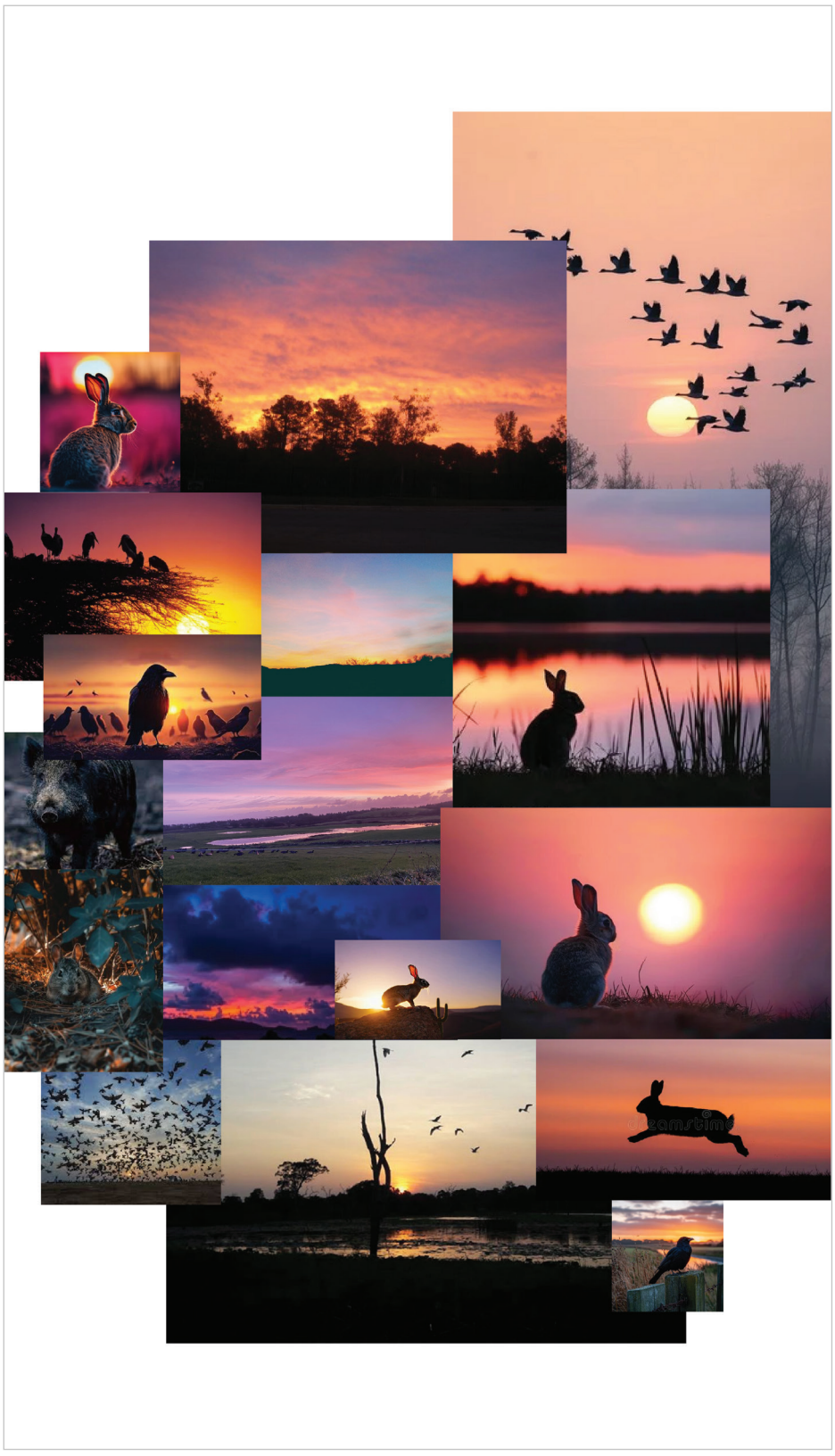


Figure 4.4a

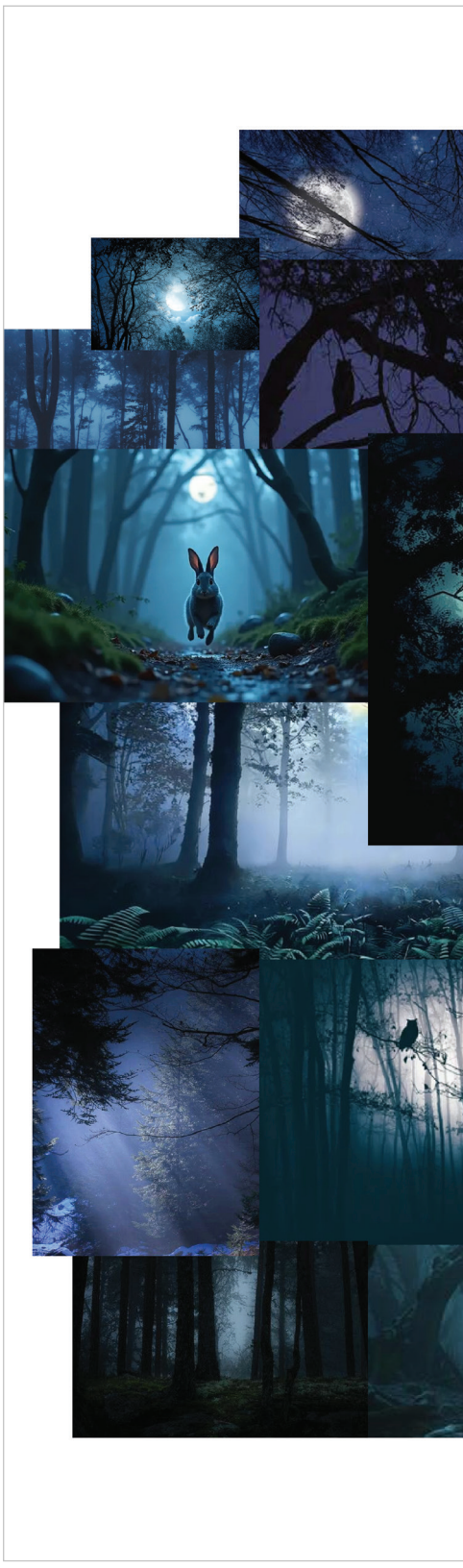


Figure 4.4b

Figure 4.4a: Mood Boards Reflecting Protagonist, Rabbit Character's Early Mood

Figure 4.4b: Mood Boards Reflecting Protagonist, Rabbit Character's Middle Mood

Figure 4.4c: Mood Boards Reflecting Protagonist, Rabbit Character's Late Mood

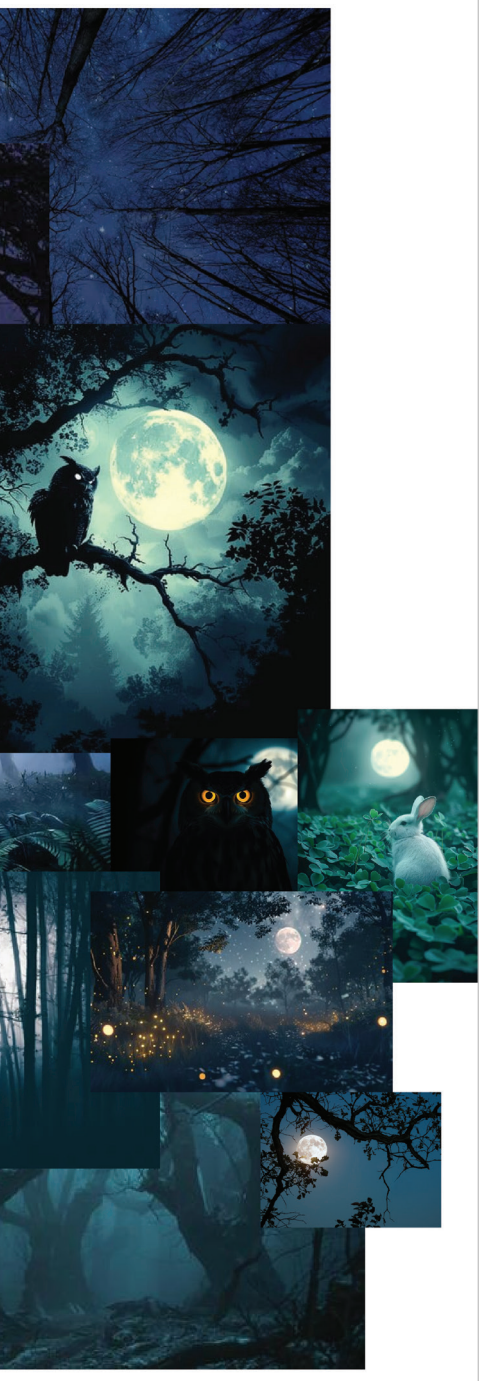


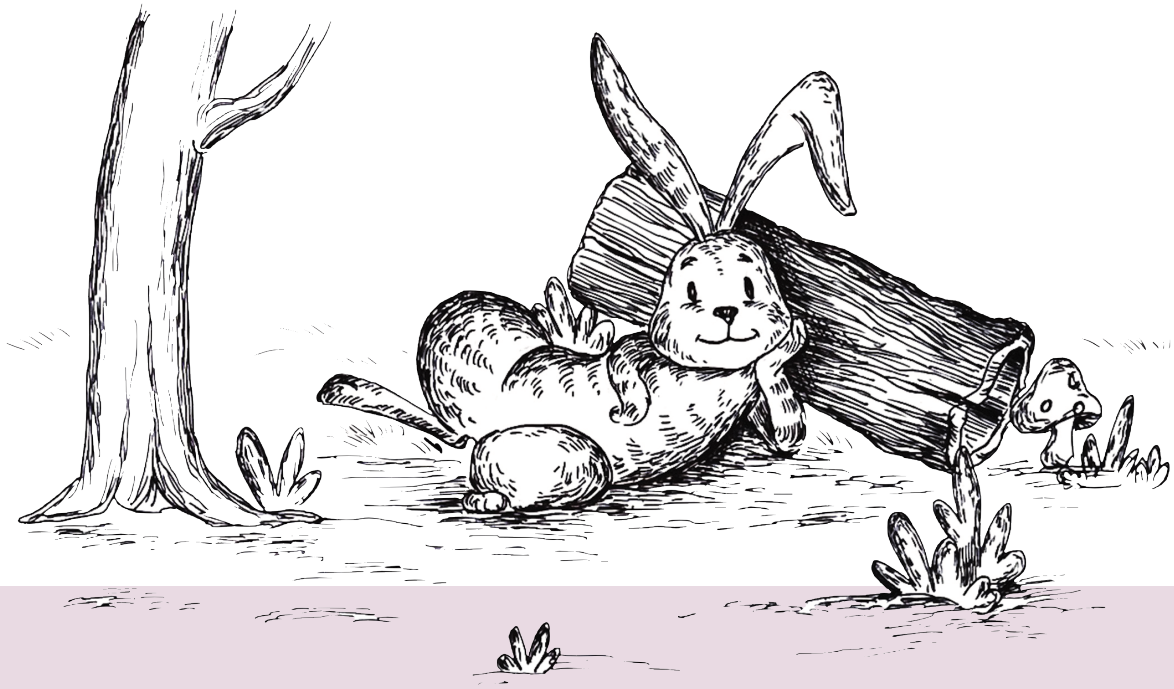
Figure 4.4c

c) What Is a Colour Palette Board?

A colour palette board or a colour board is a curated reference that defines the core and supporting colours used consistently throughout a children's fiction book. It establishes the visual identity of the story by setting the emotional and aesthetic tone for characters, settings, and scenes. While mood boards suggest atmosphere and emotion broadly, the colour palette board focuses more precisely on which colours will be used, how, and where.

For illustrators and art directors, it serves as a visual control guide ensuring consistency across pages, character appearances and environments. It also helps align the story's visuals with its emotional arc, genre and developmental audience. A colour palette board typically includes:

- Primary colours – core tones associated with protagonists or key elements
- Secondary or accent colours – used for background elements, clothing, props, or contrasts
- Emotion-based colours – tied to key emotional moments in the narrative
- Shade and tint variations – for flexibility in lighting and mood transitions
- Scene-based palettes – e.g. night scenes vs. daytime scenes
- Cultural or symbolic colours – reflecting context, tradition, or setting



"A colour palette board sets the emotional tone of a children's book — shaping atmosphere, guiding consistency and ensuring every page speaks to the child's imagination."

Example with Benny the Rabbit:
Colour Palette Board for the Plot Type 01 “Overcoming the Monster”

Refer Figure 4.5: Sample Colour Palette Boards Reflecting Protagonist and the Story’s Mood
a - ‘Rabbit Character’s ‘Early Mood’
b - ‘Rabbit Character’s ‘Middle Mood’
c - ‘Rabbit Character’s ‘Late Mood’

Refer Figure 4.6: Application of Colour Palette Across the Pages
Refer Figure 4.7: Application of Colour Palette Across the Narrative Arc

Benny the Rabbit’s journey from fear to courage is accompanied by a transformation in his colour environment. The palette board for his story is built to support this emotional arc visually moving from cool, shadowy tones to warm, confident hues.

To develop Benny’s story visually, the application of colour board draws from:

- **Primary Palette – Benny**
  Soft grey-browns, warm off-whites, muted brown for ears and nose — conveying gentleness and emotional openness.

- **Fear and Uncertainty (Beginning/ Early) - Disaster in the patch**
  Background : muted greens, deep forest blues, dusty greys
  Accents : sharp black crow feathers, shadow shapes
  Mood : quiet, anxious, closed-in

- **Discovery and Reflection (Middle) - Meeting the owl**
  Background : pale blue, faded blue, soft moonlight whites
  Mood : wonder, caution, awakening

- **Confidence and Return (End/late mood) - Coming out of the forest**
  Background : rich golds, lush greens, warm oranges
  Mood : warmth, power, joy
  Contrast : the dark crow palette remains sharp to emphasize Benny’s transformation

This colour palette board ensures that colour supports not only Benny’s emotional development, but also the narrative pacing. It allows the illustrator to control tone shifts from page to page, helping the child reader visually feel the journey without relying solely on text.

Disclaimer: Images acknowledged; references listed at the end of this book.

Figure 4.5: Colour Palette Boards Reflecting Protagonist, Rabbit Character's and the Story's Mood
a - Early Mood, b - Middle Mood, c - Late Mood

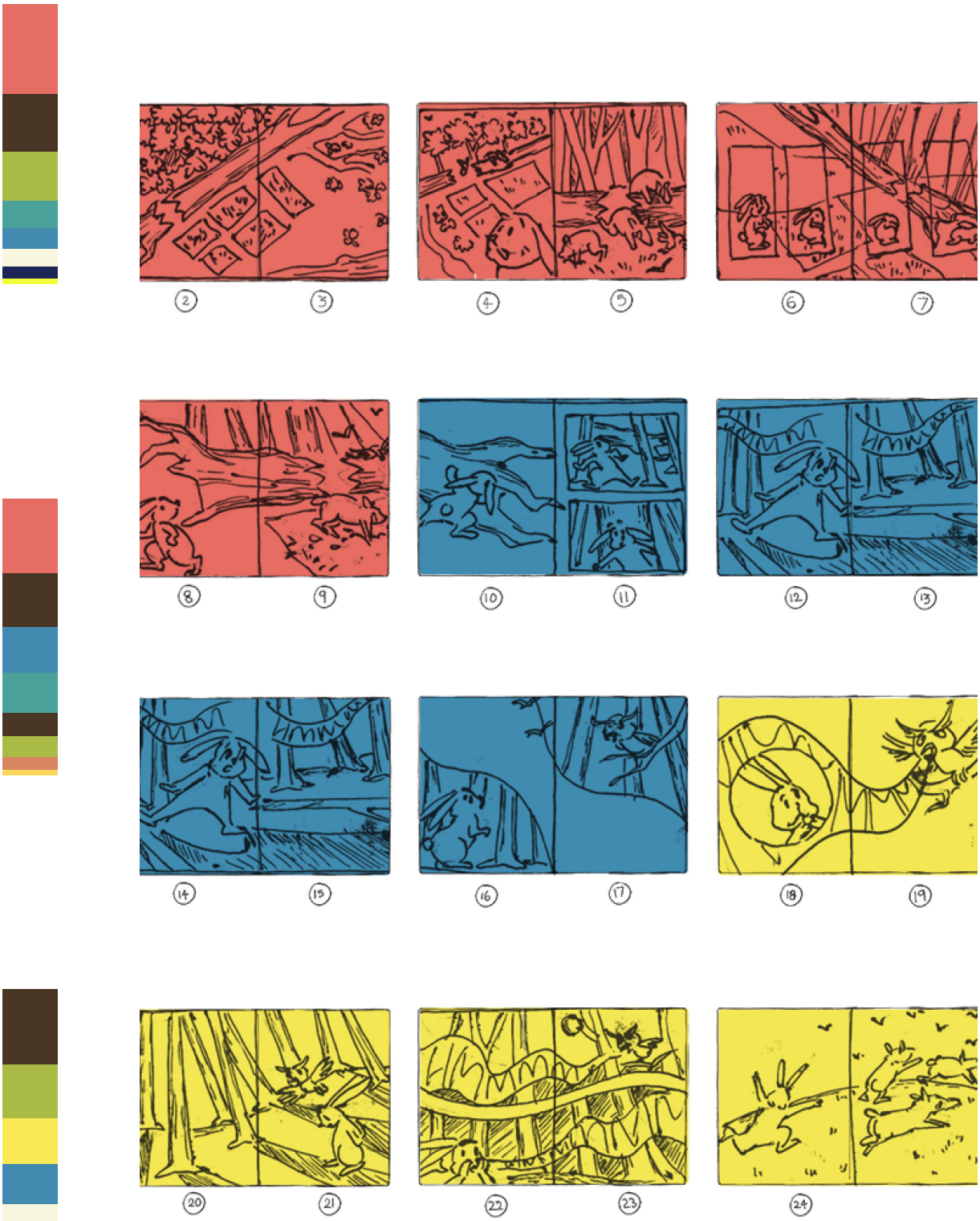


Figure 4.6: Application of Colour Palette Application Across the Pages

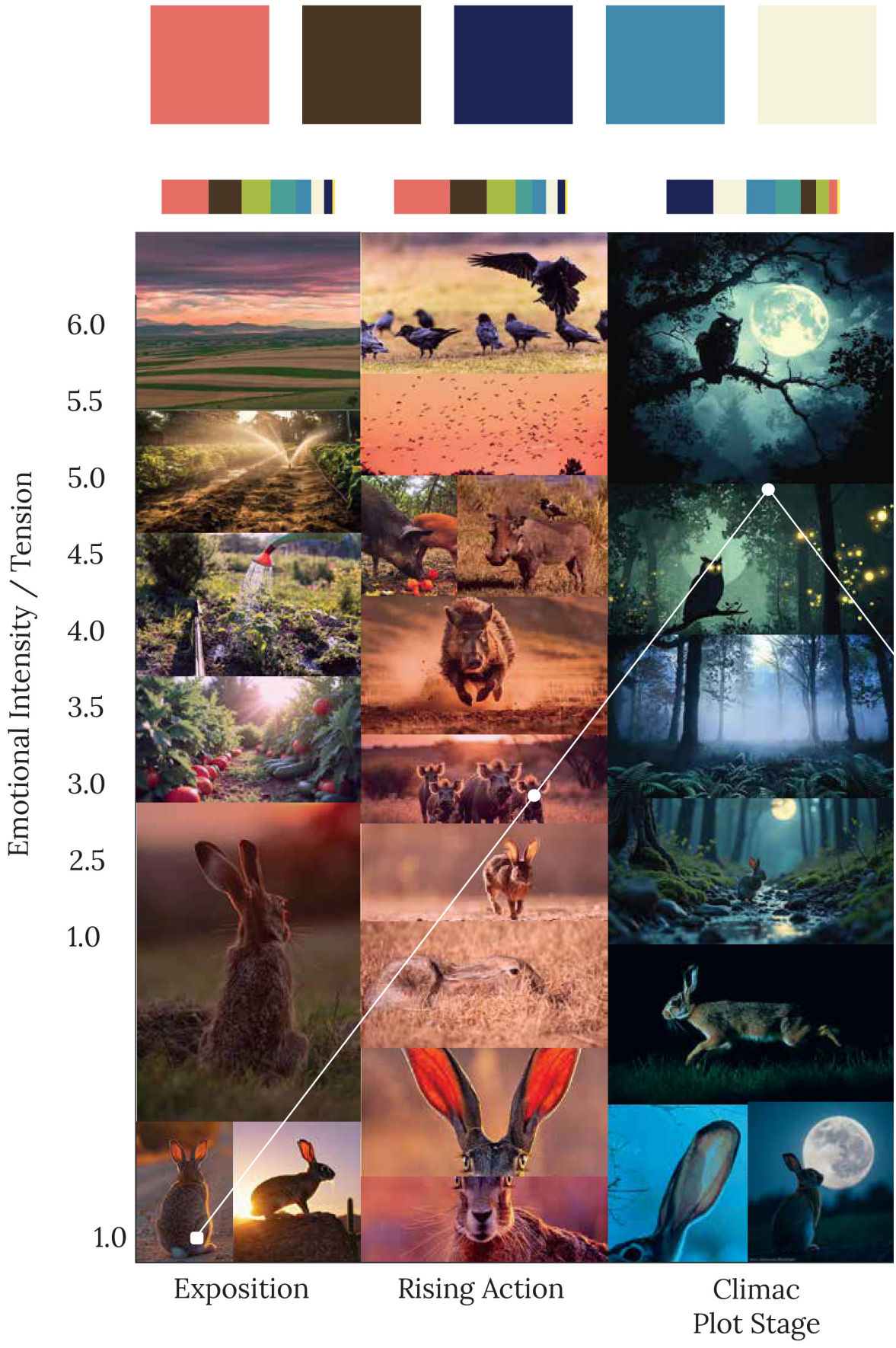


Figure 4.7: Application of the Colour Palette Across the Narrative Arc

Falling Action Resolution

d) Genre References

In children's fiction, genre refers to the category or type of story being told — such as fantasy, adventure, realism, historical fiction, or fable. Each genre carries its own visual language, setting clear expectations for how characters should appear, behave and be interpreted by the reader. Identifying the genre early in the process is essential, as it helps illustrators make informed visual decisions that align with the story's tone, setting and emotional goals. For example:

- A realistic fiction story may require grounded character designs, subtle facial expressions and naturalistic color palettes.
- A fantasy or folklore-based narrative may call for stylized costumes, symbolic props and exaggerated features to convey magic or tradition.
- A humorous story might benefit from bold lines, simplified forms and cartoon-like proportions, that heighten energy and exaggerate emotion.

Choosing a genre not only informs character and setting design but also ensures stylistic and thematic coherence throughout the book. Each genre introduces distinct visual characteristics that should be carefully selected to enhance the narrative's emotional and conceptual depth.

Refer the next two pages to observe how a rabbit character can be visualized differently across multiple genres. Depending on your story's plot and tone, it is important to determine the visual language and design conventions that best support how the character should look, move, and emotionally resonate with the reader.

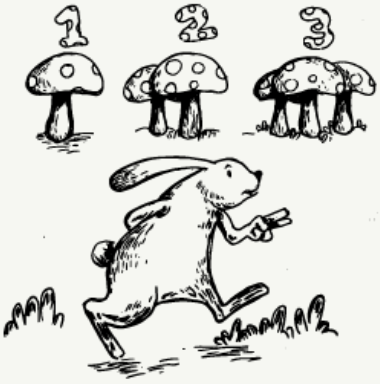
"Genres in children's books are more than labels, they help shape expectations, guide creativity and connect young readers with stories that nurture their curiosity, emotions, and growth."

Fantasy

E.g. A rabbit follows a firefly into a magical forest — set in an imagined, fantastical world.

Realistic Fiction

E.g. A rabbit eats in a meadow — realistic in detail, fictional in being able to walk and talk.



Concept Books

E.g. A rabbit leads the story to teach numbers — narrative built around an educational concept.

Historical Fiction

E.g. A rabbit discovers ancient carvings — his journey unfolds in a historically inspired setting and story.

Biographies

E.g. The story follows a remarkable rabbit/ character — inspiring a life tale that young readers can relate.

Adventure

E.g. A rabbit journeys to uncover the forest's secrets — set in a dynamic, visually adventurous landscape.

Mystery

E.g. A rabbit unravels a forest mystery — claw marks and glowing eyes set the mysterious tone.

Wordless Books

E.g. An owl comforts a rabbit — visuals alone carry the story from page to page, with no text.

Humour

E.g. A funny rabbit's antics unfold through cartoon-like visuals and exaggerated expressions.

Illustrations Completed by Udari Gunawardena

Fairy Tales, Folktales, and Myths

E.g. The rabbit's story unfolds in a fairy-tale land — rooted in myth and magical tradition.

BENNY
IN THE DARK
BENNY
BENNY
BENNY

Example with Benny the Rabbit:

Selection of Genre for the Plot Type 01 “Overcoming the Monster”

Refer Figure 4.19 : Application of ‘Realistic Fiction’ Genre When Visualizing a Rabbit into the Character ‘Benny’

In this plot, Benny the Rabbit faces everyday emotions and challenges such as fear of the unknown that many young readers can relate to. Therefore, the most suitable genre for this story is ***Realistic Fiction.***

Realistic fiction is a genre in which the characters, settings and events are imaginary but entirely plausible. They could happen in real life. In children’s fiction, these stories reflect familiar experiences, allowing children to see versions of their own lives within the story. While characters like Benny may talk or wear clothing, the world they live in follows real-world logic, with recognizable settings and believable outcomes. This genre helps children connect emotionally, offering a safe space to explore real-life situations through imaginative yet grounded storytelling.

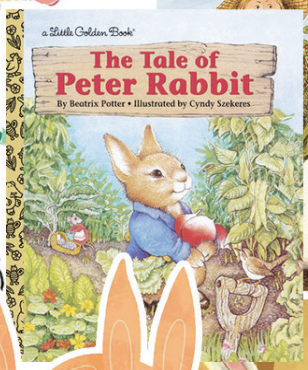
To develop Benny’s story visually, the application of the genre draws from:

- **Realistic Setting:** A dense forest based on actual vegetation: such as ferns, tree bark textures, and undergrowth found in local or tropical woodlands. Environmental elements such as shadows cast by moonlight, the sound of crickets or nocturnal birds enhance the believability of the night scenes.
- **Atmospheric Realism:** Forest sounds, animal calls, and natural lighting are illustrated to follow the physical rules of nature. For example, moonlight appears cool and diffused, and shadows shift naturally across Benny’s surroundings.
- **Realistic Character Features:** Benny’s anatomy reflects that of a real rabbit — fur texture, large hind legs and twitching ears while still allowing gentle stylization for expression. His fur colour matches local rabbit species, supporting regional authenticity.
- **Emotion Through Subtlety:** Instead of exaggerated features, Benny’s emotions are conveyed through small changes in posture, facial expression and body language twitching ears, for nervousness, crouched body for fear or an upright stance for courage.

This grounded visual approach supports the emotional journey of the character and maintains genre integrity, making the story both relatable and developmentally appropriate for children.

Disclaimer: Images acknowledged; references listed at the end of this book.

Grab that Rabbit!


a Little Golden Book
The Tale of Peter Rabbit
By Beatrix Potter • Illustrated by Cyndy Szekeres

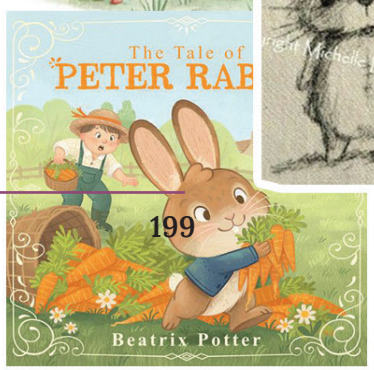

The Tale of
PETER RAB
Beatrix Potter

Figure 4.8a: Visual Style Reference Board Reflecting Protagonist 'Rabbit'

Figure 4.8b: Selected Visual Style for Benny the Rabbit

Illustrations Completed by Udari Gunawardena

e) Visual Style References

In children's fiction, visual style refers not only to the look and feel of illustrations but also to the media and techniques used to create them. Visual style shapes how children emotionally engage with the narrative, how they process visual information, and how they interpret character, mood and meaning. From textured watercolours to bold digital vectors, each technique carries a distinct aesthetic and emotional impact.

Choosing a visual style early, especially in relation to illustration media helps ensure consistency in tone and developmental appropriateness. The medium you select should align with the story's genre, mood and the cognitive needs of your intended age group. For example:

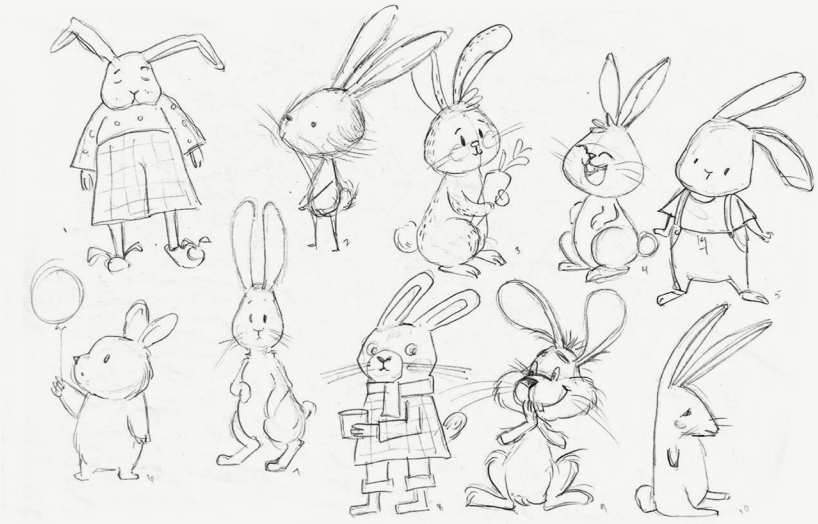
- Watercolour and pencil create softness and subtlety, ideal for poetic, emotional or nature-based stories (Figure 4.10, 4.11, 4.16).
- Digital painting allows control over layering, lighting and texture, well-suited for atmospheric storytelling and complex settings (Figure 4.17).
- Crayon or oil pastal drawing provide bold shapes and clean lines, helpful for clarity in concept books or early readers (Figure 4.14).
- Collage or mixed media can enhance tactile storytelling, especially for younger children or stories focused on creativity and exploration.
- Ink and linework emphasize detail and contrast, commonly used in humorous, adventurous or stylized narratives (Figure 4.12).

These styles also vary in how they support narrative flow, emotional tone and readability. For example, textured media may evoke warmth or nostalgia, while clean digital lines may aid focus and comprehension for emerging readers.

Depending on the story's tone, age group and emotional intent, the illustration medium and technique you choose will significantly influence how the character is experienced by the child reader.

There are no limits to the use of visual styles or media — you can even create your own.

These can be mixed and matched to best suit your story.



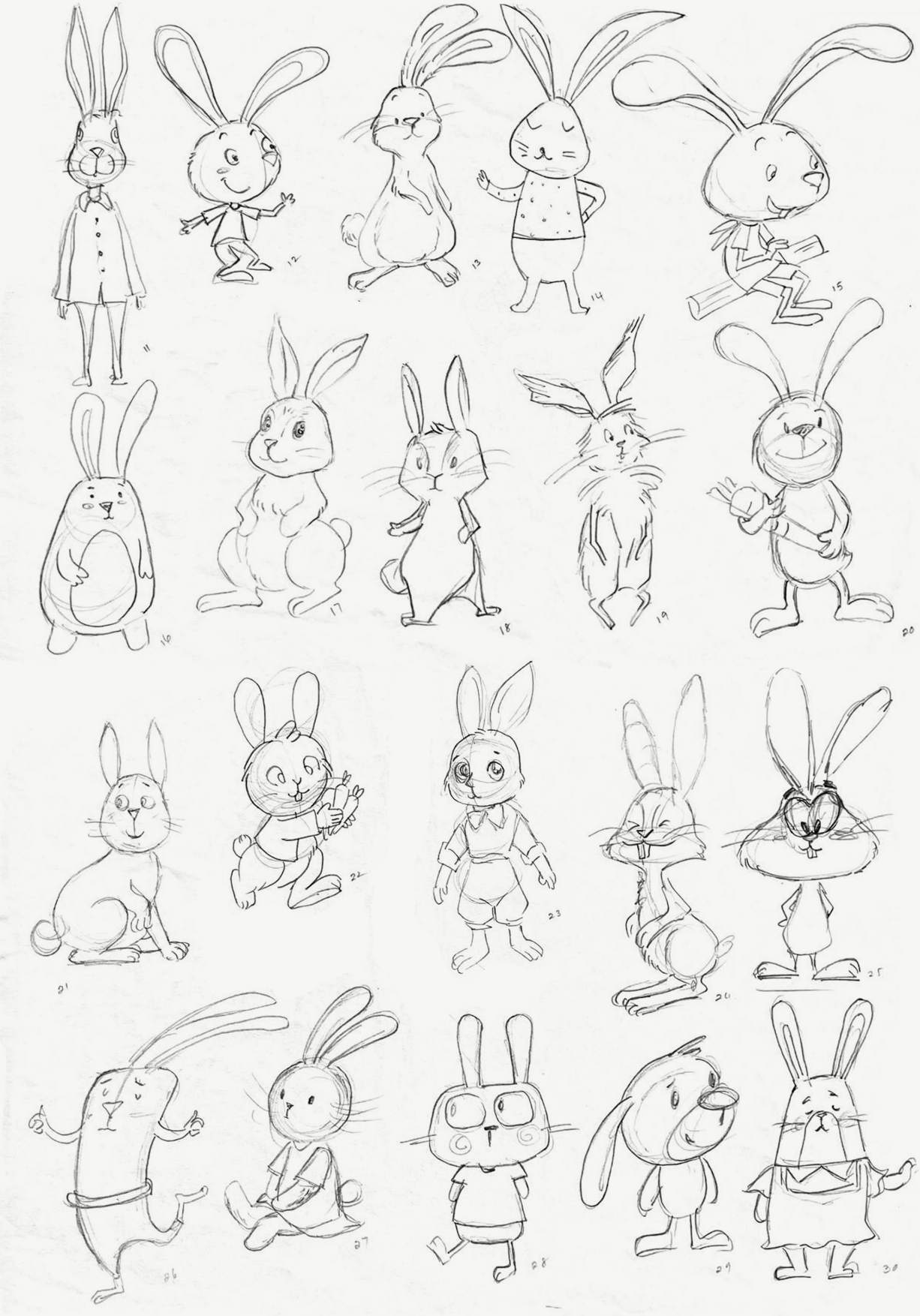


Figure 4.9 : Visual Style Variations Applied to a 'Rabbit',Sketches explaining how the same character — a rabbit — can be visualized

Illustrations Completed by Udari Gunawardena

Figure 4.10

Watercolour

Painted in soft watercolour washes, with diffused shadows and translucent layers that evoke calm and reflection.

Ideal for poetic, emotional, or nature-centered stories.

Figure 4.11

Coloured Pencil

Illustrated in coloured pencils with visible texture and delicate hand-drawn marks, giving the scene warmth and charm.

Suitable for quiet, heartfelt stories with a handmade feel.

Figure 4.12

Ink and Line Drawing

Depicted through expressive ink lines and cross-hatching, with strong contrasts and detailed strokes showing anxiety and movement.

Best for humorous or adventure driven stories with dramatic visual expression.

Figure 4.13

Soft Pastel Drawing

Illustrated in soft pastels with visible texture and delicate hand-drawn marks, giving the scene warmth and charm.

Suitable for quiet, heartfelt stories with a handmade feel.

Figure 4.14

Crayon / Watercolour Drawing

Illustrated with bold crayon strokes and strong colour contrasts, conveying childlike energy and spontaneity.

Ideal for lively, high-energy stories or reader-created characters.

Figure 4.15

Flat Application

Shown in bold, flat colours and simplified shapes with minimal outlines, ensuring clarity and consistency.

Great for concept books or stories for early readers.

Figure 4.16

Pencils Drawing

Created through hand-drawn pencil lines scanned and enhanced digitally with stitched textures and colour overlays, giving the illustration a layered, tactile quality.

Figure 4.17

Digital Painting

Rendered in rich, layered digital brushstrokes with controlled lighting and atmospheric depth.

Effective for fantasy, mystery, or emotionally immersive narratives.

Hand-Drawn Pencil with Digital Colouring

Created through hand-drawn pencil lines scanned and enhanced digitally with stitched textures and colour overlays, giving the illustration a layered, tactile quality.

Well-suited for stories that blend realism and fiction, offering both emotional depth and imaginative flexibility. This approach maintains the warmth of traditional drawing while adding visual polish and consistency through coloured pencil.

Figure 4.17

Illustrations Completed by Udari Gunawardena and Imalka Sewandi

Illustrations Completed by Udari Gunawardena

Figure 4.19: Application of the 'Realistic Fiction' Genre Visualized Using Pencil Drawing and Digital Colouring for the Rabbit Character 'Benny'

Example with Benny the Rabbit:

Selection of Illustration Medium to Enhance the Selected Genre for the Plot Type 01 "Overcoming the Monster"

Refer Figure 4.19 : Application of 'Pencil and Digital Colouring' as a Mediam to Enhance the Selected Genre; Realistic Fiction

In this story, Benny the Rabbit experiences a personal transformation, overcoming his fear of the forest and learning to find courage within. The emotional tone is gentle, grounded and reflective, requiring a visual style that balances realism with expressive warmth. For this reason, the selected visual style is Mixed Media: Pencil Drawing enhanced with Digital Techniques.

This approach merges the organic sensitivity of hand-drawn pencil linework with the flexibility and clarity of digital colour and texture. It allows the illustrations to feel emotionally textured and tactile, while still maintaining visual consistency and polish across multiple spreads.

To develop the Benny story visually the application of media was based on:

- **Character Illustration:** Benny is first drawn in pencil using soft, textured strokes that communicate vulnerability and quiet strength. His twitching ears, rounded form, and cautious posture are gently rendered by hand. Once scanned, these drawings are digitally layered with soft colour washes and minimal texture overlays bringing emotional depth and modern clarity to the illustrations.

- **Linework and Texture:** The combination of fine graphite lines and digitally enhanced shadows allows Benny's emotions to be conveyed subtly. The pencil sketch lines remain visible, adding a handcrafted quality that resonates with younger readers.

- **Atmosphere and Background:** The forest setting is built through a blend of hand-textured details (such as bark rubbings, soil patterns, or real leaf scans) and digital lighting effects. Moonlight is rendered softly, with layered transparency to evoke the shifting mood from fear to calm.

- **Emotional Tone:** This hybrid technique is particularly effective in depicting Benny's emotional arc. The transition from darker, muted colours in early scenes to warmer, more open tones in the final spreads visually echoes Benny's inner transformation.

- **Tactile and Accessible:** The mixed media approach invites a sense of visual familiarity, making the story feel handcrafted and emotionally grounded, ideal for young readers navigating their own fears and challenges.

This style honours the realism of Benny's world while introducing an artisanal warmth that deepens emotional engagement. It offers both illustrators and readers a richly layered visual journey that mirrors the character's growth making the story not just seen, but felt.

f) Visual World-Building References

Visual world-building is the process of creating a believable and emotionally resonant environment in which the story unfolds. In children's fiction, world-building goes beyond just drawing a forest or a home it involves constructing a setting that supports the narrative's emotional tone, developmental relevance, and storytelling flow. It defines where the story happens and how that place feels, looks, and evolves across the pages. World-Building will be discussed further in 4.2.

While character design focuses on "who" the story is about, visual world-building addresses "where" and "why it matters." It incorporates elements such as topography, light, texture, architecture, season, weather, flora and fauna, and even symbolic environmental cues. These visual cues help young readers intuitively understand the story's context, tone and progression even before reading the text. World-building references include:

- Inspiration Boards – featuring real-life landscapes, environments, or cultural settings that influence the tone and visual authenticity of the story world. Refer figure 4.20.
- Moodboards – capturing emotional atmosphere, light direction, texture (e.g. mist, bark, moonlight) and emotional symbolism of the environment (e.g. twisted trees for fear, open meadows for hope)
- Colour Palette Boards – defining consistent environmental tones for day/night, seasons, or emotional shifts in setting. Refer figures 4.4-4.7.
- Environmental Layout Sketches or Maps – rough drawings or diagrams of spatial flow (e.g. forest path, garden, home) that help plan continuity and transitions. Figure 4.21.
- Symbolic Elements – objects, landmarks, or visual metaphors (e.g. a fallen tree as a place of transformation). Refer figure 4.40.
- Scene-based Visual References – stills from animation, film, photography, or other books that help establish scale, depth, and storytelling potential of a scene. Layout and composition angles will be discussed further in 4.5.

Example with Benny the Rabbit:

Inspiration Board of the World-Building for the Plot Type 01 “Overcoming the Monster”

Refer Figure 4.20 : Inspiration Board Reflecting the Setting – ‘Forest and Garden Environments’

In Benny the Rabbit, the environment is more than a setting, it actively supports the story’s pacing, emotional transitions, and symbolic meaning. Mapping the spatial flow of key locations such as the vegetable patch, forest entry, owl’s perch, and hidden paths not only aids continuity but also reinforces the emotional beats of the narrative.

To develop Benny’s world visually, the inspiration board draws from:

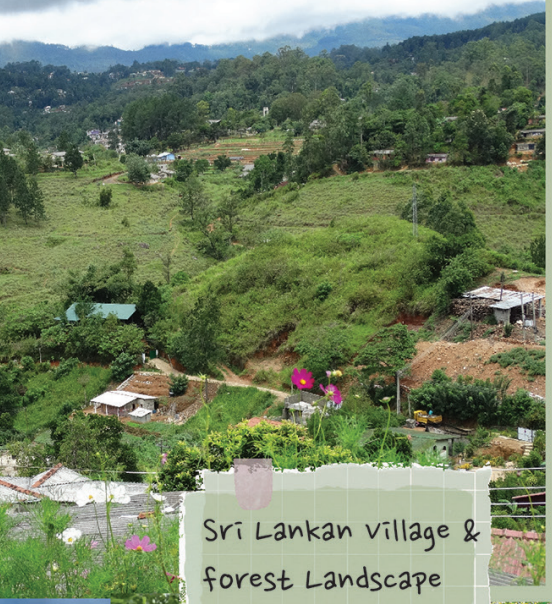
- **Local forest landscapes in Sri Lanka** – to ensure environmental authenticity. References include native tree types, ground textures, and undergrowth commonly found near rural home gardens and woodlands.
- **Nocturnal forest imagery** – photographs and paintings that depict moonlight filtering through trees, mist rising from the ground, or owl silhouettes perched on branches. These contribute to early “fear” scenes.
- **Garden textures and crop patches –** elements like carrot leaves, radish rows, soil beds, and woven fences to depict Benny’s vegetable patch as his safe zone and emotional anchor.
- **Environmental metaphors –** hollow trees, winding paths, foggy trails, and star-filled skies used as visual metaphors for confusion, transition and clarity.
- **Cultural landscape references –** terraced gardens, woven garden baskets, clay pots, and hand-dug wells offer grounding in a familiar Sri Lankan domestic setting.
- **Animal movement trails and nests –** visual cues such as scuffed earth, small burrows, or bird nests to add life and narrative possibilities to the environment.

This inspiration board helps construct a setting that transforms along with Benny. It starts as a dense, shadowy place filled with strange sounds and unknown shapes but becomes a place of guidance and calm, led by moonlight, quiet wisdom, and natural rhythm. The visuals guide the illustrator in developing spreads that are not only geographically grounded but also emotionally resonant.

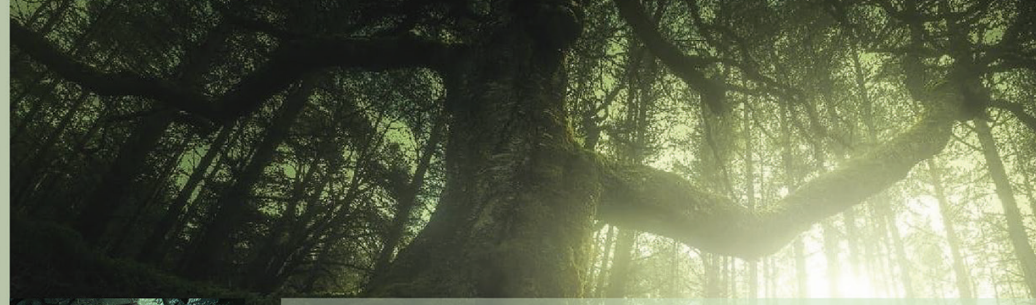
By assembling and reflecting on these references, the illustrator ensures that the forest becomes more than just scenery — it becomes a visual extension of Benny’s emotional journey, reinforcing the core message of overcoming fear and finding strength in familiarity.

Figure 4.20 : Inspiration Board Reflecting the Setting for the Sample Plot

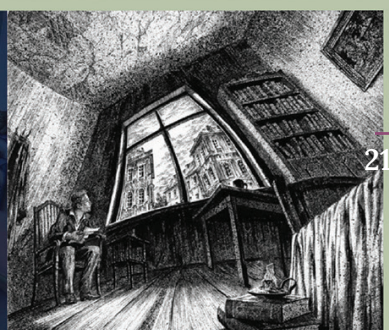
Inspiration Board
Setting



Sri Lankan village & forest Landscape



Dark Forest



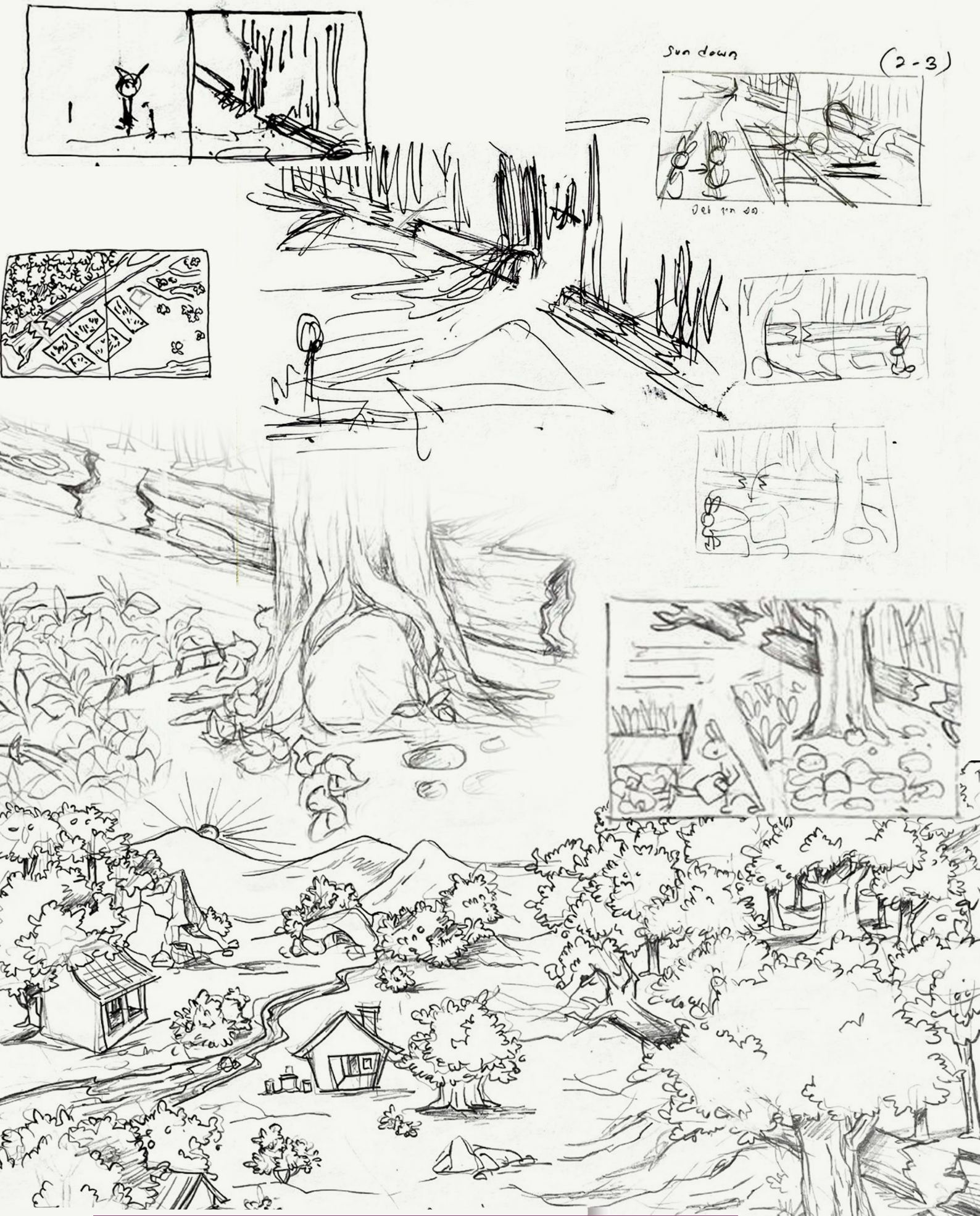


Figure 4.21 : Environmental Layout Sketches or Maps with Rough Drawings and Spatial Flow

Example with Benny the Rabbit:

Environmental Layout Sketches and Symbolic Elements for Benny's World

Figure 4.20: Spatial Layout and Symbolic Landmarks of the Forest and Garden

In Benny the Rabbit, the environment is more than a setting — it actively supports the story's pacing, emotional transitions and symbolic meaning. Mapping the spatial flow of key locations such as the vegetable patch, forest entry, owl's perch and hidden paths, not only aids continuity but also reinforces the emotional beats of the narrative.

To develop Benny's world visually, the environmental layout sketches serve as visual guides to:

- Plan scene transitions from one page to the next
- Ensure visual logic and orientation across spreads
- Establish spatial relationships between character and environment
- Reflect the emotional terrain Benny navigates through the story

The Layout Sketch includes:

- **Benny's Garden:** A well-tended, enclosed patch surrounded by soft fences and edible plants. This is Benny's safe space and emotional anchor.
- **Forest Entrance:** A narrow, partially shaded path leading away from the garden marked by twisted roots and uneven rocks, symbolizing hesitation and fear.
- **Mid-Forest Clearing (Owl's Perch):** A circular, moonlit glade deep in the forest, representing a space of reflection and transformation.
- **Hidden Trail:** A gently rising path that leads Benny back home, visually less chaotic than the entry path — symbolizing regained confidence.

In addition, symbolic elements are placed across the landscape to mirror Benny's inner growth:

- **Fallen Tree –** a transitional space where Benny pauses, symbolizing vulnerability and change
- **Fallen Log Bridge –** a narrow crossing symbolizing risk and first steps towards bravery
- **Moonlit Branch –** where the owl sits, offering wisdom, perspective and calm
- **Scattered Feathers and Scratch Marks –** remnants of the antagonists' presence, suggesting temporary disruption rather than lasting danger
- **Reclaimed Patch with New Shoots –** at the end, the garden is slightly changed but blooming again, signifying resilience and growth

These visual components guide the illustrator in crafting consistent, emotionally layered settings. They also support page layout decisions and ensure the reader experiences the story spatially, moving with Benny from fear, through learning, to empowerment.

4.1.4 Components of Character Visualization

Effective visual characterization is foundational in children's fiction. It not only helps define a character's personality and emotional depth but also supports a child's comprehension, empathy, and engagement with the story. Below are the key components that illustrators should consider when developing visual characters, each working together to create a memorable, relatable and developmentally appropriate figure for young readers.

a) Physical Features

The shape, size and structure of a character significantly influence how children perceive them. Features may be exaggerated for expressiveness or simplified for clarity especially for younger readers. For instance, large eyes can suggest innocence and curiosity, while short limbs or oversized heads create cuteness and accessibility. These proportions should match the emotional tone and intended age group of the book. Refer an example of rabbit characters visualized in varied shapes and sizes while maintaining consistent proportions (Figure 4.9).

b) Facial Expressions and Gestures

Non-verbal communication plays a powerful role in storytelling. Characters must be able to "show" emotions clearly, especially when children rely on visual cues to understand mood and motivation. A smile, slumped shoulders, or a raised eyebrow can speak volumes about a character's internal state. Refer an example of rabbit characters with expressive facial expressions and gestures (Figure 4.22).

c) Silhouettes and Recognisability

A distinct silhouette ensures that a character is instantly recognizable, even in simplified line work or from a distance. Especially in busy scenes or page transitions, a strong outline helps children differentiate one character from another. Refer an example of rabbit characters with recognisable silhouettes sketches (Figure 4.23).

d) Colour Palette

Colour is a direct emotional signal. Character colour choices should reflect personality, narrative function or developmental symbolism.

- Warm, bright colours often signal energy, warmth, or approachability.
- Cool or muted tones (greys, blues, purples) can suggest mystery, fear or calmness.
- A character's colour palette should remain consistent across scenes and should align with the book's overall emotional arc.

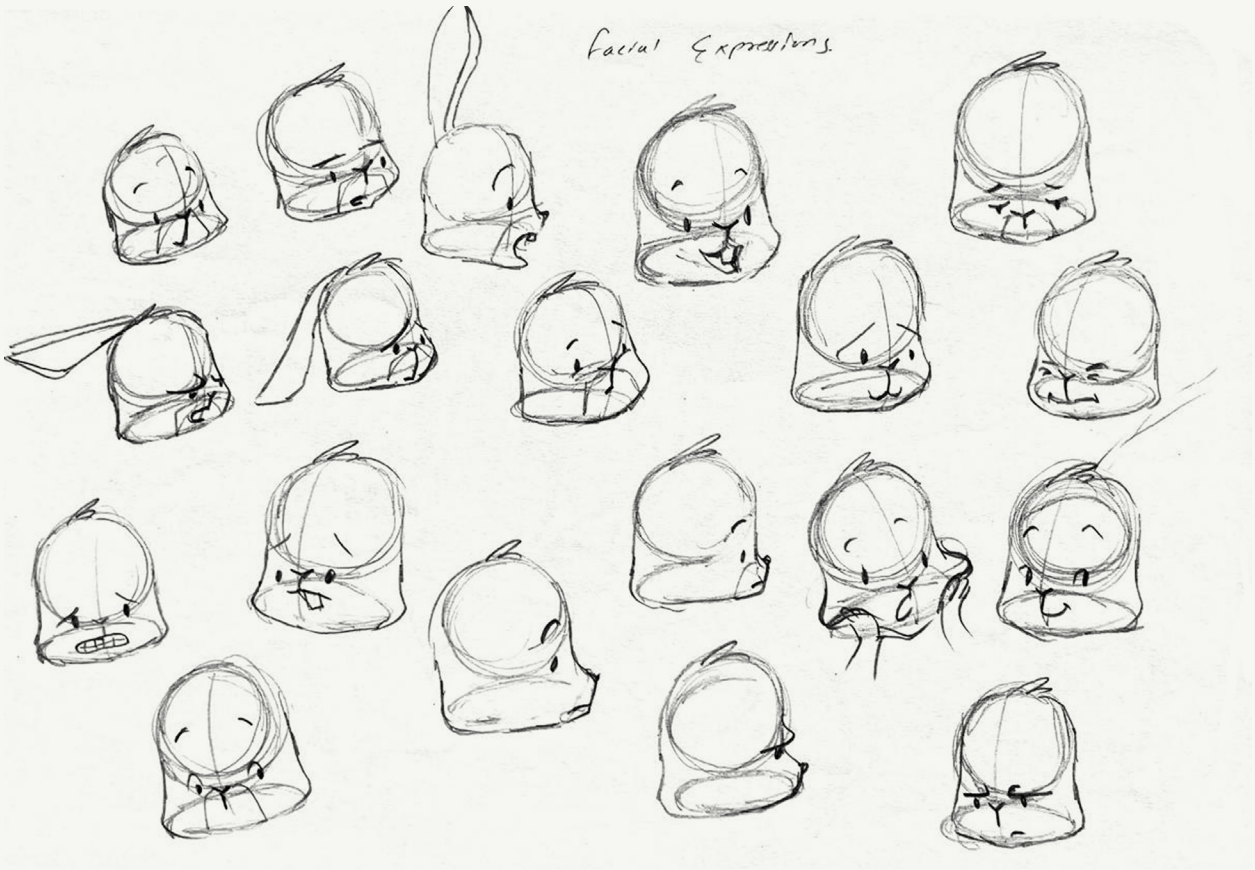


Figure 4.22: Facial Expressions of a Rabbit Characters

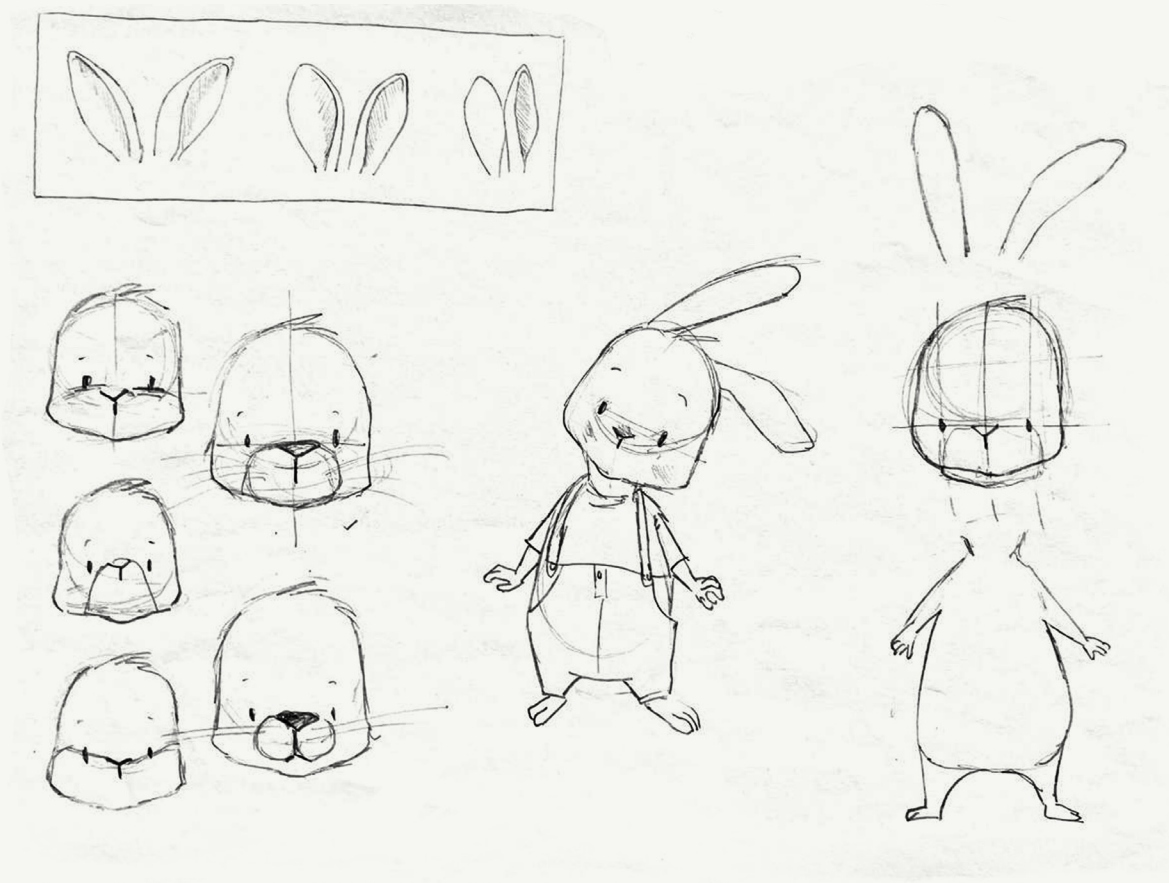


Figure 4.23: Silhouettes and Recognisability of a Rabbit Characters

Illustrations Completed by Udari Gunawardena

e) Costume and Accessories

Clothing and props offer the story context and help define a character's culture, time period, social role, or imaginative world. Accessories such as a backpack, cape, or garden hat reinforce traits (adventurous, magical, nurturing). In fantasy or historical fiction, these elements also support world-building. Refer an example of a defined rabbit character in different costumes- boy, girl, father, working mother (Figure 4.24).

f) Visual Engagement and Emotional Connection

Young readers gravitate toward characters they understand or aspire to be. Characters should struggle, evolve and solve problems, traits that children admire. Passive characters or overly perfect ones risk being unrelatable.

g) Visual Distinction and Continuity

In multi-character stories, each character must have distinct visual traits (e.g. size, shape, color, gesture). These distinctions help readers follow the plot and assign meaning to each character's role.

Protagonists might have softer lines, open body language, and warm colours, while antagonists often feature angular shapes, narrowed eyes, or cool, shadowy tones. Maintaining visual consistency is equally critical.

> "Visual characterization in picture books transforms figures into companions of the story. It is not just about drawing a face, but about shaping a presence that conveys emotion, drives the plot, and invites young readers to connect, imagine and care."

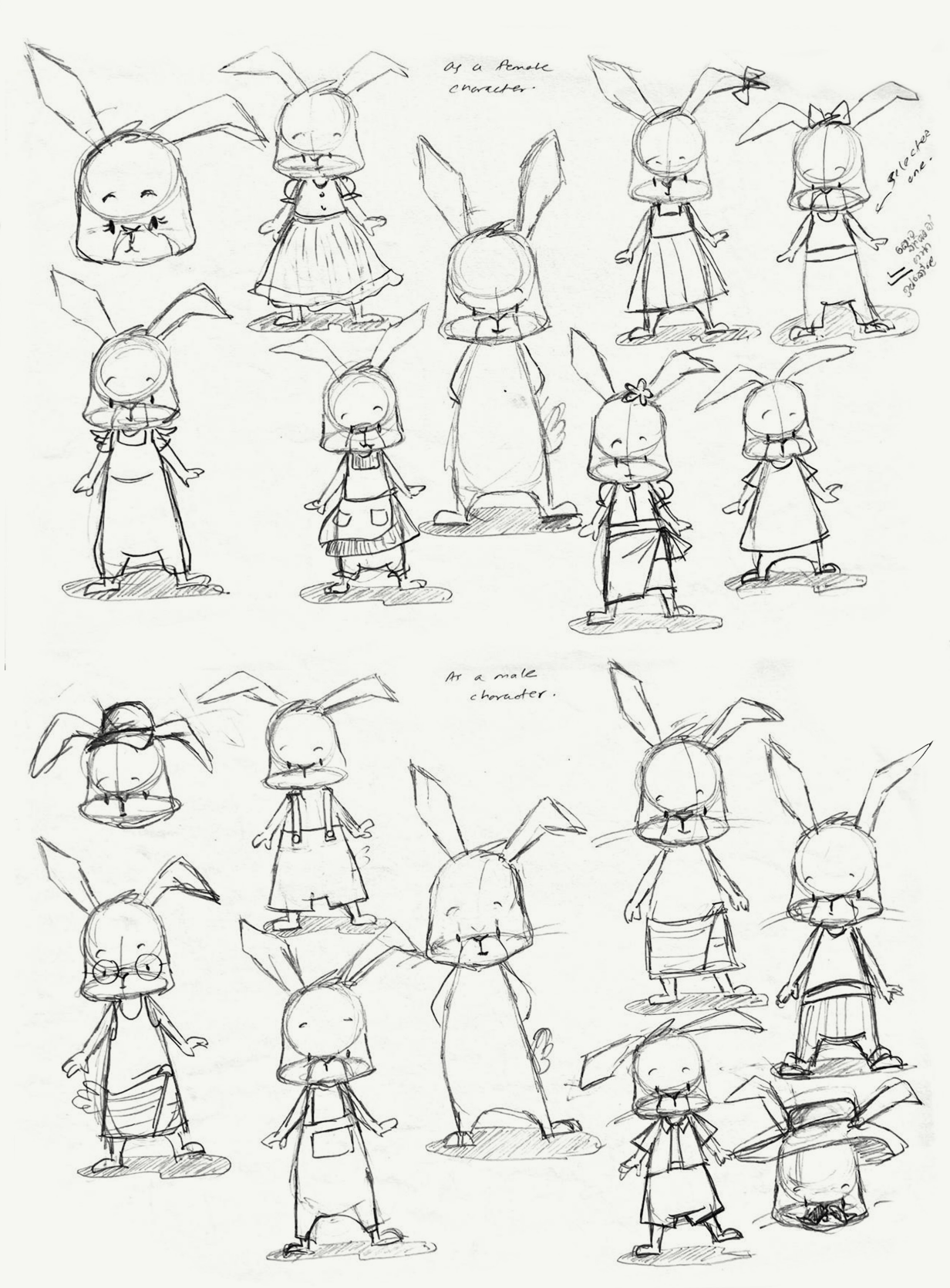


Figure 4.24: Costume and Accessories

Illustrations Completed by Udari Gunawardena

4.1.5 Visualize the Building Blocks of a Character

As discussed in Section 3.5, characters are the heart of a children's fiction book. They carry the plot, embody the emotional arc, and bring the story to life. For illustrators, visualizing these characters is not just about drawing a figure, but about interpreting the narrative function and emotional depth of each role: protagonist, antagonist, supporting characters, and more. Every character is constructed from key building blocks: Personality, Traits and Voice, Goals and Motivation, Conflict and Flaws, Growth and Change, Relationships and Interactions.

These blocks work together to create a believable and emotionally resonant character. The illustrator's task is to extract and express these narrative elements visually through posture, expression, shape, setting and interaction. By doing so, the visual design complements the written story and enhances the reader's connection to the characters.

To illustrate this process, we return to the protagonist introduced in Section 3.5.2: Benny the Rabbit, from the plot type "Overcoming the Monster." The following is an example of how each building block can be visualized through character design.

a) Visualizing the 'Personality' of Benny the Rabbit

Benny's personality is gentle, shy, and deeply attached to his quiet vegetable patch. He thrives on routine and avoids confrontation, finding calm in the simple act of nurturing his garden. This reserved temperament contrasts sharply with the chaos introduced by the crows and wild boars, making his transformation all the more meaningful. His personality becomes the emotional baseline of the story, grounded in peace, disrupted by fear and ultimately strengthened through quiet resilience (Figure 4.25).

b) Visualizing the 'Traits and Voice' of Benny the Rabbit

Benny is cautious but observant. His large, twitchy ears flap nervously when he's unsure, a subtle but consistent visual trait that mirrors his internal uncertainty. He speaks softly, using tentative phrases like "I think..." or "Maybe I could...", conveying his hesitance and self-doubt. As the story progresses, his voice gains strength, visually reflected in more upright posture, alert eyes and firm gestures (Figure 4.26).

c) Visualizing the 'Goals and Motivation' of Benny the Rabbit

Benny's immediate goal is to reclaim his vegetable patch, which represents safety and routine. However, his deeper motivation lies in regaining a sense of control and self-worth. The garden is not just land — it symbolizes comfort, pride, and his place in the world (Figure 4.27).

Example with Benny the Rabbit:

Illustration Ideas Towards Building Benny's Character

Illustration idea:

A soft morning light on Benny gently watering his carrots, with his big ears perked up, hinting at the peace he values. His posture is relaxed, his expression calm, and the scene bathed in warm tones to reflect his contentment.

Figure 4.25: Portraying Benny's Personality; Gentle, Shy Rabbit Deeply Connected to His Vegetable Patch.

Illustration idea:

Benny hiding behind a tree, nervously peeking out, ears slightly drooping — but his eyes wide with curiosity.

Figure 4.26: Illustrating Benny's Traits; Cautious but Observant through Posture and Expression

Illustration idea:

A wide-angle view showing Benny reclaiming his vegetable patch, symbolizing comfort, pride and a sense of control

Figure 4.27: Visualizing Benny's Accomplished Goal; His Identity and Emotional Grounding.

Illustrations Completed by Udari Gunawardena

d) Visualizing the 'Conflict and Flaws' of Benny the Rabbit

Externally, Benny faces intruding crows and wild boars; internally, his challenge is fear — fear of the dark forest, strange noises, and the unfamiliar. This fear causes him to hesitate and retreat. But it's also what makes his eventual courage meaningful (Figure 4.28).

e) Visualizing the 'Growth and Change' of Benny the Rabbit

Through guidance from the owl and his journey into the forest, Benny transforms. He begins to see the forest not as a threat but as a place of wonder and possibility. His fear turns into curiosity and, eventually confidence (Figure 4.29).

f) Visualizing the 'Relationships and Interaction' of Benny the Rabbit

Benny's transformation is made possible through his relationship with the wise owl. Their interaction, quiet, respectful and insightful, acts as a turning point. The owl helps Benny see the forest differently, not through his earlier lens, but gentle presence and confidence (Figure 4.30).

"For children, characters are not just read — they are seen, felt, and remembered. Visualizing characters gives shape to imagination, turning stories into companions that guide, comfort and inspire young readers."

Example with Benny the Rabbit:

Illustration Ideas Towards Building Benny's Character

Illustration idea:

Benny curled up in a burrow, eyes wide in fear, while shadowy tree branches loom outside like claws.

Figure 4.28: Portraying Benny's Fear of the Unknown; Conflict and a Relatable Emotional Flaw

Illustration idea:

Benny, as a self-transformed character, shows his confidence through his strong posture and steady walk.

Figure 4.29: Depicting Benny's Inner Transformation: Bold Posture and Use of Facial Features

Illustration idea:

The owl perched calmly above Benny, wings tucked, speaking softly while Benny listens intently with alert ears.

Figure 4.30: Illustrating the Emotional Connection: His Calm Body Language and Framing

Illustrations Completed by Udari Gunawardena

4.1.6 Character Reference Sheet

A character reference sheet is a detailed visual document that captures the full design of a character for consistent use throughout a book. It acts as a blueprint for illustrators, authors and art directors ensuring that the character remains visually coherent across all scenes and emotional moments.

In children's fiction, where visual recognition and emotional continuity are vital, the character sheet is especially important. It brings together all key visual components — appearance, posture, expression, costume, and accessories into one organized sheet that can be referred to during storyboarding, spread design or collaboration between creative team members. A well-prepared character reference sheet supports visual consistency across multiple spreads, enhances collaborative workflows between team members, and helps young readers recognize and connect with characters more easily. Most importantly, it ensures that even subtle emotional shifts are communicated clearly and consistently, an essential part of tracking character growth and sustaining engagement in children's visual storytelling.

a) What Does a Character Reference Sheet Typically include?

- **Full-body Views**
  - Front, side, and back poses of the character
  - Scale comparison (if relevant to other characters)
- **Facial Expressions**
  - A range of key emotions (happy, sad, scared, curious, angry, surprised)
  - Eye, mouth and eyebrow variations
- **Character Poses and Gestures**
  - Common actions or body language that express personality
  - Signature movements (e.g. Benny's nervous ear twitch)
- **Costume and Accessories**
  - Clothing design, seasonal variations, or context-specific outfits
  - Personal items such as backpacks, hats, glasses, tools etc.
- **Color Palette**
  - Skin/fur/feather color references
  - Clothing and accessory swatches
  - Lighting variations (day/night)
- **Notable Traits or Symbolic Elements**
  - Birthmarks, scars, unusual features
  - Symbolic motifs tied to theme or personality (e.g. leaves for nature)

Example with Benny the Rabbit:
Character Reference Sheet for Benny the Rabbit

1. Full-body Views (Some of these references are visualized in figure 4.31)

Front View : Benny in a calm, neutral pose with upright ears and soft fur texture.
Side View : Show the slight curve in his spine and the shape of his large back legs.
Back View : Illustrate his small tail, fur texture, and garden-soiled feet.

2. Scale Comparison (if Relevant to Other Characters)

Benny compared to the wise owl (smaller and ground-based) and a crow (similar size but with wings). Also compared with the wild boar (larger, heavier, more angular in form).

3. Facial Expressions (Some of these references are visualized in figure 4.32)

Happy : Big eyes, soft smile, ears slightly lifted.
Scared : Eyes wide, mouth small, ears pinned back.
Curious : One ear up, one tilted, head slightly turned.
Angry : Furrowed brows, tightened mouth, ears slightly forward.
Sad : Drooped ears, downward gaze, wrinkled brow.

4. Eye, Mouth and Eyebrow Variations

Teardrop-shaped wide eyes for fear. Soft, relaxed eyelids for peace.
Mouth variations: small 'o' shape for surprise, wide smile for happiness.
Eyebrows drawn low and inward to signal determination.

5. Character Poses and Gestures (Some of these references are visualized in figure 4.33)

Crouched under a leaf, observing noises in fear. Hopping gently near his garden with a small basket.
Standing alert with his ears perked, ready to confront the crows.
Clutching a carrot like a comfort item in a moment of doubt.

6. Signature Movements (e.g. Benny's nervous ear twitch)

One ear constantly flicking when he's anxious.
Twitching nose when thinking or sensing something unusual.
Light tapping of his foot when scared but trying to be brave.

7. Costume and Accessories ((Some of these references are visualized in figure 4.34)

Cotton bannian and shorts (inspired by Sri Lankan school uniform) : Simple, slightly oversized — symbolizing innocence and everyday familiarity.
A small woven basket: Used to carry vegetables or forest finds, representing his connection to nature, culture and daily chores.
A leaf tucked behind one ear: A playful and symbolic gesture, reflecting Benny's mood or the current season.
Seasonal variation: A lightweight woven cap during misty early mornings — common in the Sri Lankan highlands or forest edges.

8. Personal Items (Some of these references are visualized in figure 4.35)

Watering can : Part of his peaceful routine.
Lantern : Used when venturing into the forest at night.
Notebook : Given by the owl to navigate the forest, symbolizing learning and guidance.

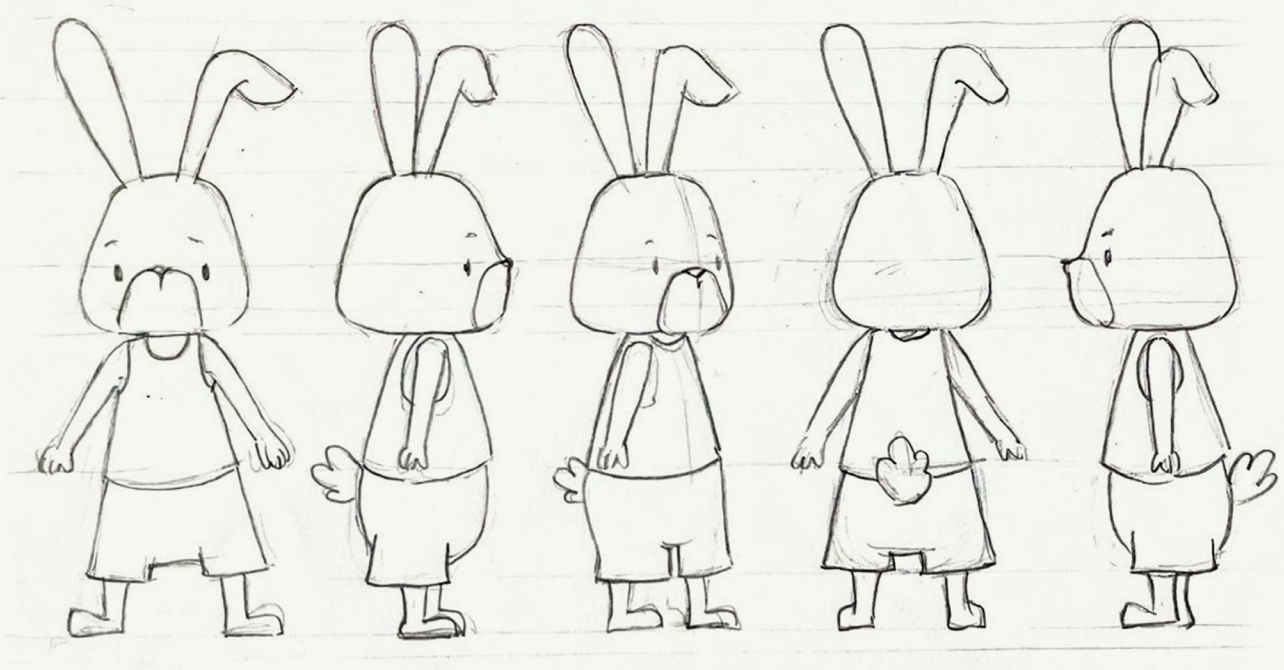


Figure 4.31: Full-Body Views

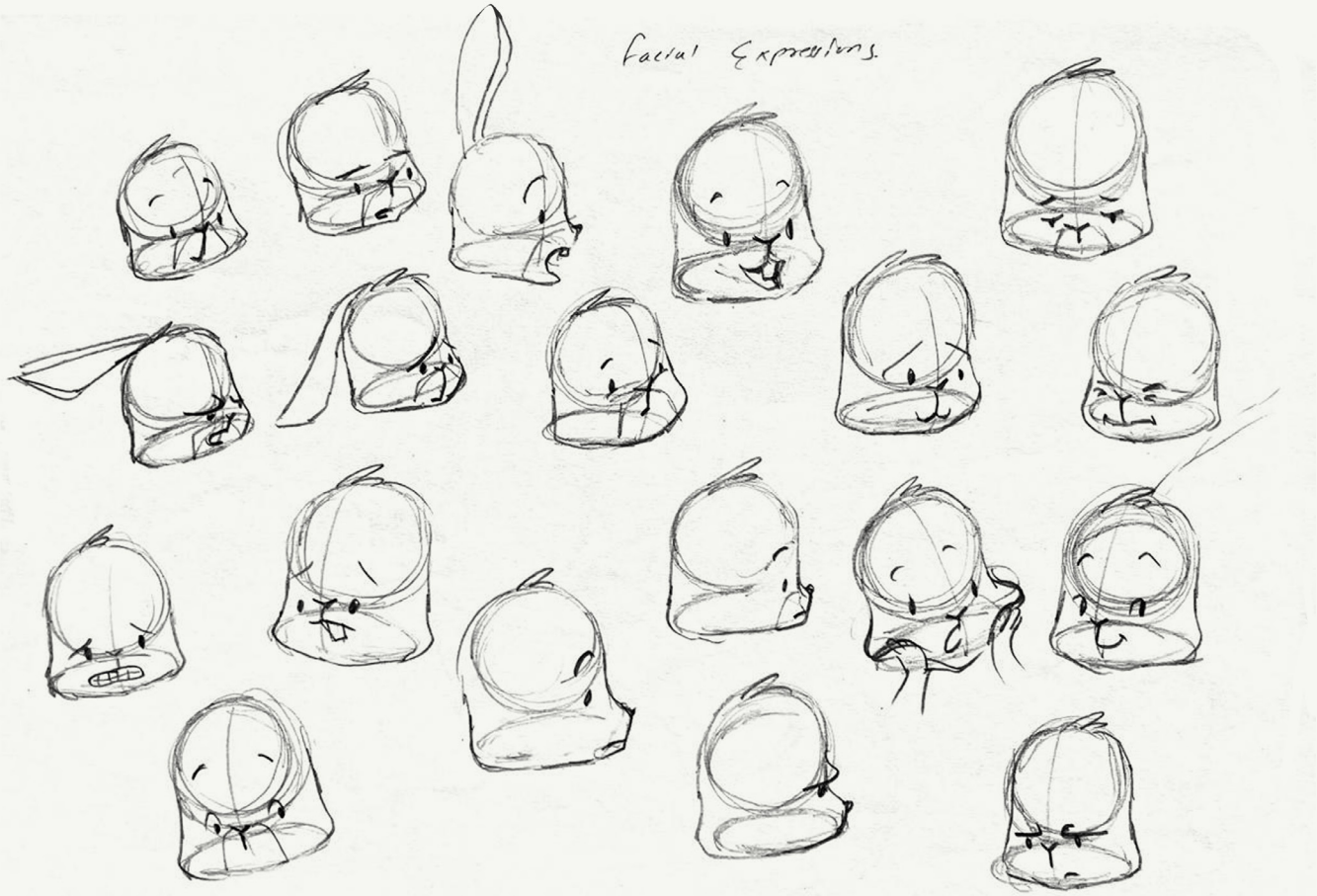


Figure 4.32: Facial Expressions

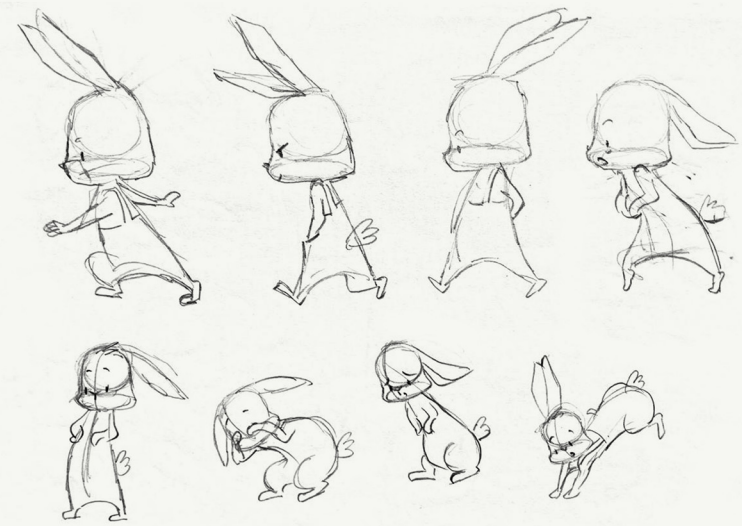


Figure 4.33: Character Poses and Gestures

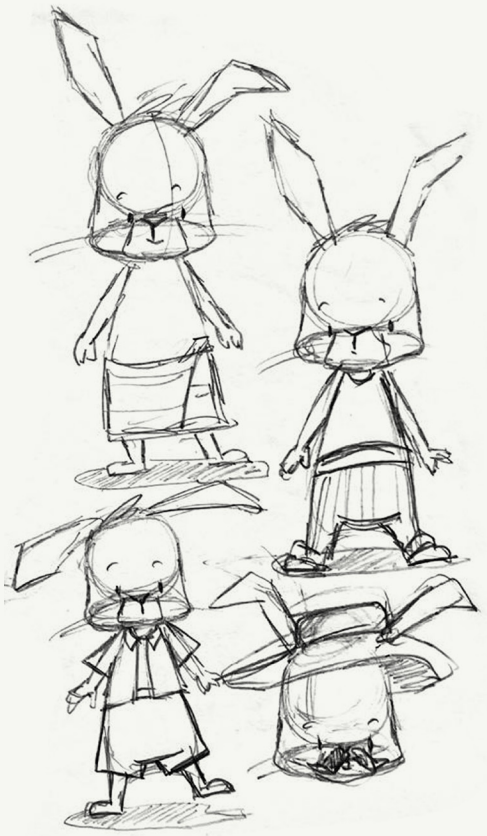


Figure 4.34: Costume and Accessories

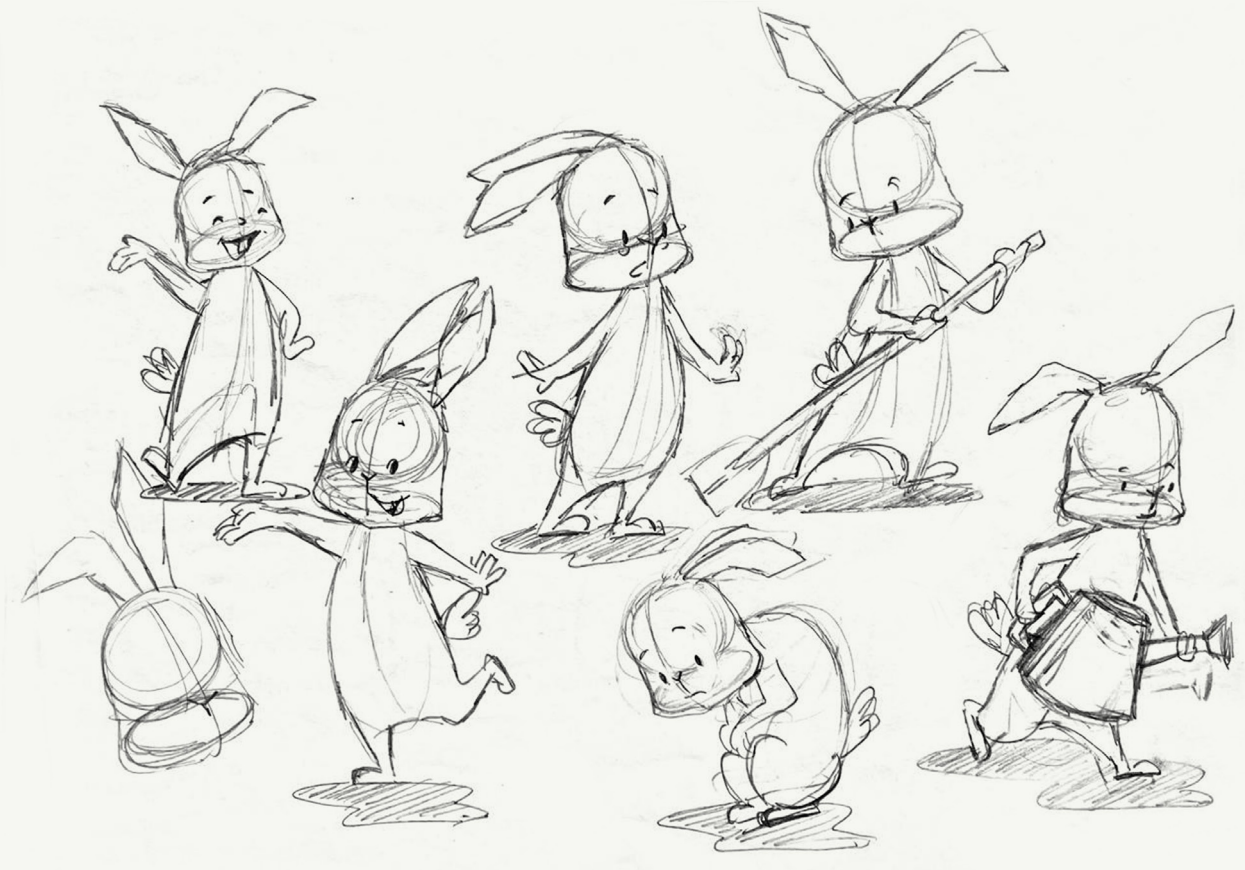


Figure 4.35 : Personal Items

Illustrations Completed by Udari Gunawardena

4.2 Be Creative with the World

Visual World-Building and Setting Design

4.2.1 What is Visual World Building?

Visual world-building is the process of constructing the visual environment in which a children's story unfolds. It defines the physical setting, spatial logic, atmosphere and sensory cues that shape the character's world — and by extension, the child reader's immersive experience. Just as characters are developed through appearance and behaviour, the world they inhabit is expressed through textures, lighting, objects and geography.

In children's fiction, where imagination and visualization are key to engagement, the setting is more than a backdrop. It is a storytelling agent. Whether it's a dense forest, a vibrant classroom or a fantastical floating island, each world is built to reflect the emotional arc of the story and the character's inner journey. Visual world-building involves detailed planning through sketches, inspiration boards, setting sheets and symbolic elements that support continuity across spreads. Every tree, shadow and horizon line serves a narrative purpose, helping young readers see the story come alive.

4.2.2 Why World Building Matters in Children's Fiction

Visual world-building is especially important in children's fiction because the setting is often a child's first entry point into the story. Before they fully grasp plot structures or language, children interpret and engage with the world through what they see. A well built world not only grounds the characters, it creates mood, invites curiosity, and guides emotional interpretation. Here are several reasons why visual world-building is so essential:

a) Creates Immersive Story Environments

Children don't just read about a world they step into it. Richly illustrated settings help young readers imagine themselves alongside the characters, making the story feel tangible and lived-in.

b) Establishes Mood and Atmosphere

Color palettes, lighting and texture can signal emotional tone. A cold, shadowy forest may evoke fear or tension, while a sunlit garden feels safe and comforting. These environmental cues help children anticipate narrative shifts.

c) Reinforces Narrative Logic and Spatial Continuity

Consistent visual details like recurring landmarks, paths, or room layouts help children understand where the story is taking place and how characters move within it — crucial for spatial and temporal comprehension.

d) Supports Character and Theme Development

The setting can reflect or contrast a character's inner world. For example, a once-intimidating forest that transforms into a place of wonder can mirror a character's journey from fear to courage, reinforcing the story's message.

e) Enhances Cognitive Engagement

Children learn to observe patterns, infer meaning from environmental clues, and build mental maps of the story world. This strengthens comprehension, imagination and memory.

4.2.3 Use Visual Research Tools on World-Building to Start the Process

In the early stages of visual world-building, it is essential to gather visual references that guide the design of your setting. These tools help establish mood, tone, atmosphere and spatial logic, ensuring that the world you create feels immersive and consistent.

Key visual referencing tools (as discussed in 4.1.3) include inspiration boards, moodboards, colour palette boards, genre and style references, and visual world-building references. While often used together, each has a unique role: inspiration boards help identify textures and architectural cues of the setting; moodboards capture atmosphere and emotional tone; colour palette boards guide visual consistency across spreads; and genre/style references align your setting with narrative tone and reader expectations.

You may refer to Section 4.1.3 – Visual World-Building References for a detailed breakdown and examples.

> **"World-building in children's books creates more than settings. It builds safe, magical spaces where young readers can explore, imagine and grow."**

4.2.4 Components of World-Building/Story Settings

Just as compelling characters drive a children's story, a well-constructed setting provides the immersive world they inhabit. The visual environment communicates emotional tone, supports narrative clarity, and provides young readers with a sense of place. Effective visual world-building allows children to orient themselves within the story and deepens their emotional engagement. Below are the key components illustrators should consider when developing story settings for children's fiction.

a) Spatial Layout and Structure

The physical organization of the setting such as paths, trees, homes or landscape features, guides how the story unfolds visually. Whether it's a cozy burrow or a dense forest, the environment should be arranged to support movement, transitions and page flow. Refer example of environmental layout sketches showing forest paths, garden layout and transitional areas such as clearings and the variety of trees (Figure 4.36).

b) Mood and Atmosphere

Lighting, shadow, weather and texture influence how a setting feels emotionally. A sunlit forest evokes warmth and safety, while a foggy wood may suggest uncertainty or suspense. These elements enhance mood and set the emotional stage for the events taking place. Refer example of the same house visualized under different moods: moonlit night and misty morning (Figure 4.37).

c) Recognisability and Repetition

Children benefit from repeated visual cues that help them recognize familiar spaces. Key landmarks (e.g. a crooked tree, Benny's house, a hill) should appear consistently across spreads, anchoring the reader's sense of place as the plot progresses. Refer example of repeated landmark and visual cue of a fallen tree behind Benny's house providing protection from wild animals (Figure 4.38).

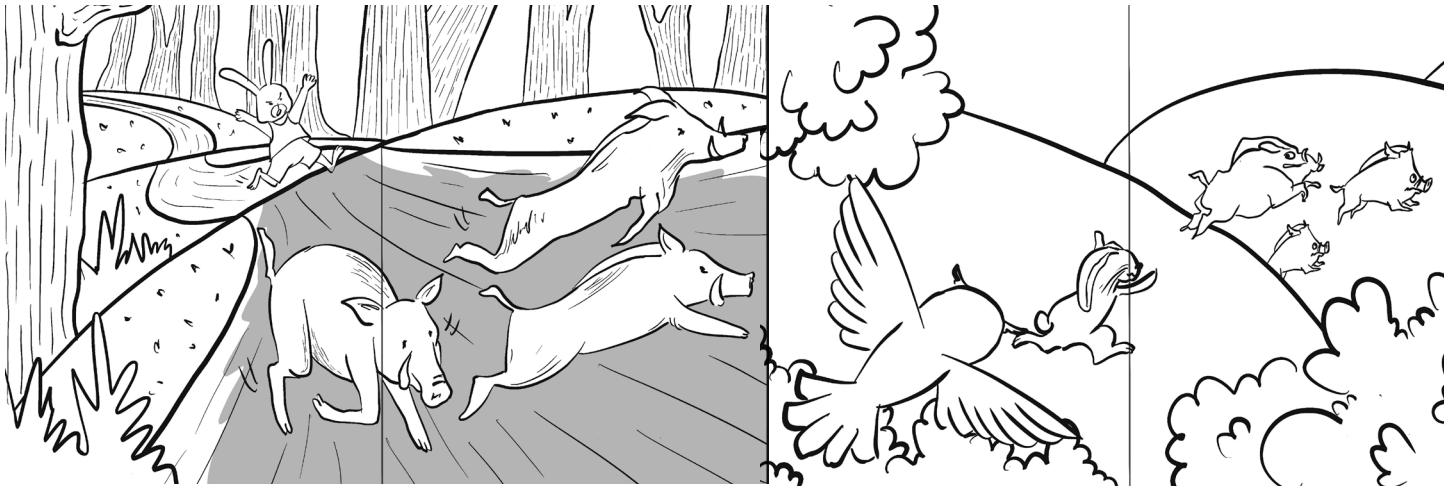


Figure 4.36: Spatial Layout and Structure of Benny's World: Forest Paths

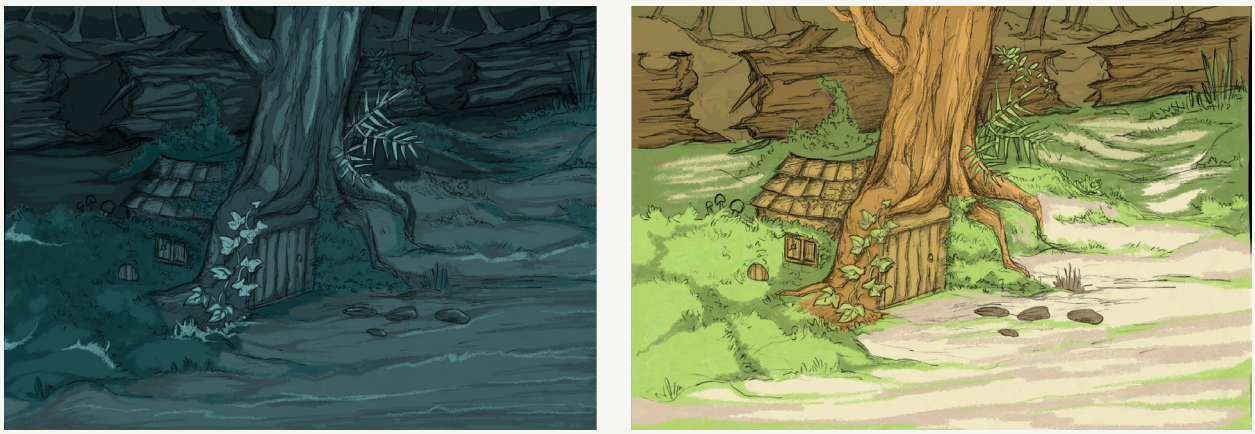


Figure 4.37: Mood and Atmosphere of Benny's World: Visualizing Night and Morning

Figure 4.38: Recognisability and Repetition of Benny's World: The Fallen Tree Trunk Behind the House

d) Colour Palette and Visual Tone

As with characters, the setting's colour palette carries emotional weight. Cool tones might indicate night, mystery, or reflection; warm tones suggest safety, happiness, or action. Setting palettes should evolve with the plot but remain visually cohesive.

e) Texture and Surface Detail

Children are highly responsive to visual texture, whether it's soft fur, rough bark, or damp earth. Including texture in the environment creates realism and stimulates sensory imagination. Visual cues like footprints, rustling leaves, or rain patterns also help convey movement and change. Refer example of tactile surface textures enhancing the interior of Benny's home (Figure 4.39).

f) Symbolic Elements

Settings can include objects or features that hold symbolic value, a fallen tree as a space of transformation, a broken fence as a boundary, or a glowing rock as a moment of discovery. These elements visually reinforce the story's themes. Refer example of the fallen tree behind Benny's house. When Benny is scared — it can be visualized dark and scary, when Benny discovers that fear is something within him and can be overcome, the same fallen tree can be visualized as a new path way bright and wide (Figure 4.40).

g) Accessibility and Navigability

Young readers need clarity to follow action across the page. Scenes should be composed so the reader understands where a character is, where they are going, and how the space changes. Avoid overly complex or cluttered settings that may confuse younger readers. Refer example of simple yet immersive settings that support easy navigation and story flow (Figure 4.41).

h) Setting as Character

In powerful children's stories, the setting is not just a backdrop—it reacts, evolves, and often mirrors the character's inner world. A forest that once felt frightening may later appear calm and beautiful, reflecting the protagonist's emotional transformation. Refer figure 4.40 illustrated at two stages of Benny's emotional journey — fear and empowerment.

By thoughtfully designing these components, illustrators can ensure that the setting becomes an active, engaging and emotionally rich part of the storytelling process, one that enhances narrative immersion and deepens a child's visual and imaginative experience.

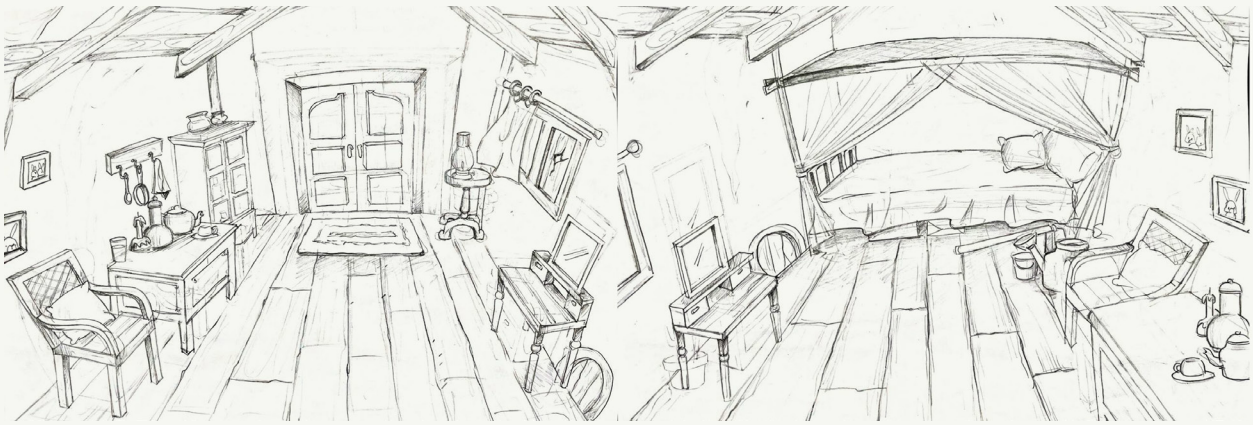


Figure 4.39: Texture and Surface Detail of Benny's World: Interior of Benny's House

Figure 4.40: Symbolic Elements of Benny's World: The Fallen Tree Trunk

Figure 4.41: Accessibility and Navigability of Benny's World: Visualizing Benny's Run to the Deep, Dark Forest

4.2.5 Visualize the Building Blocks of World-Building/ Story Settings

As discussed in Section 3.6.2, world-building is not merely the background of a story — it is the immersive, visual environment that gives shape, logic and emotion to the narrative. In children's fiction, world-building anchors the plot while stimulating the imagination of young readers. It helps define where the story unfolds, how it feels, what is possible, and how characters interact within it.

For illustrators, visualizing the world is not just about landscapes, but about designing a space that reflects narrative themes, emotional arcs, cultural context, and developmental appropriateness. World-building is constructed from key visual building blocks: setting, rules and logic, culture and values, characters and inhabitants, conflict and challenges and simplicity and accessibility. These components work together to form a meaningful and visually coherent environment that children can explore, understand and relate to.

To illustrate this process, we continue using the example introduced in Section 3.6.2: Benny the Rabbit from the plot type "Overcoming the Monster." The following examples demonstrate how each world-building component can be visualized effectively.

a) Setting

The setting defines the physical place in which the story takes place. It should evoke curiosity, emotional tone and narrative function. Benny lives in a warm, peaceful meadow where he tends his vegetable patch. Beyond this safe space lies a dense, eerie forest full of shadows and unknown sounds. The contrast between these two spaces defines the emotional journey of the story (Figure 4.42).

b) Rules and Logic

The world must operate according to consistent rules, whether magical or realistic. These rules guide what is believable. In Benny's world, animals speak, but only when no humans are around. The forest is enchanted by nature and not magic. Shadows stretch and moonlight alters perception (Figure 4.43).

c) Culture and Values

A world with shared traditions and values adds emotional and thematic depth. Benny's garden is more than a private space, it's vegetables are shared by his friends. Benny has communal events for all. Losing the vegetable patch means losing tradition, joy and identity (Figure 4.44).

Example with Benny the Rabbit:

Illustration Ideas Towards Building Benny's World

Illustration idea:

A golden morning scene with Benny gardening under a blue sky, contrasted with the dark, bluish green silhouette of the forest on the horizon.

Figure 4.42: Setting - Portraying Benny's Comforting Meadow Against the Looming Forest

Illustration idea:

Benny cautiously walking a forest path lined with exaggerated shadows, but within the shadows is a wise owl.

Figure 4.43: Rules and Logic - Depicting the Rules of Benny's World, Where Animals Talk

Illustration idea:

Animals having a chat with Benny, their most valued farmer and good friend.

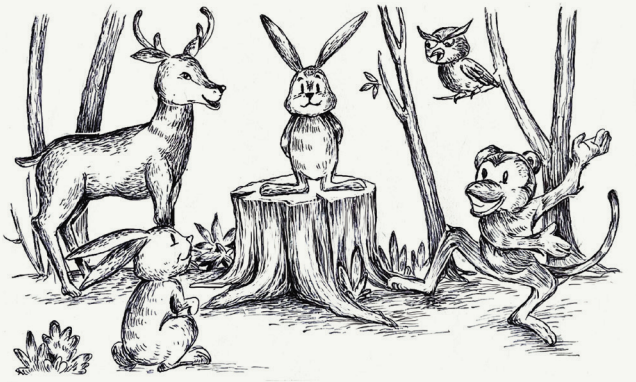


Figure 4.44: Culture and Values - Representing Culture in Benny's World, Multitude of Different Animals

Illustrations Completed by Udari Gunawardena

d) Characters and Inhabitants

Every world feels alive when its inhabitants are well designed and interactive. The owl glows softly with wisdom, while the crows are chaotic and loud. The wild boars are not villains, just unaware. Benny himself, with twitching ears and gentle features stands out visually through his softness (Figure 4.45).

e) Conflict and Challenges

Tension in the environment creates the space for character growth. The "monster" in Benny's world is not a creature but a series of fears: rustling leaves, towering shadows and haunting forest sounds. These natural cues create internal challenges. Visualized through a dark forest (Figure 4.46).

f) Simplicity and Accessibility

Children's worlds must be imaginative but not overwhelming. Benny's meadow vs. the forest is a symbolic division, light and warmth vs. darkness and fear. Visual cues like soft lighting, glowing mushrooms and expressive trees, help convey meaning without complexity (Figure 4.47).

> **"World-building in children's fiction is the stage in which imagination and story meet, giving young readers a world they can enter and believe in."**

Example with Benny the Rabbit:

Illustration Ideas Towards Building Benny's World

Illustration idea:

A moonlit forest clearing with Benny, the wise owl perched above, and distant glowing eyes of curious forest creatures.

Figure 4.45: Characters and Inhabitants - Visualizing Varied Inhabitants with Distinct Emotional Roles

Illustration idea:

Benny crouched behind a log, his own shadow exaggerated against crooked trees.

Figure 4.46: Conflict and Challenges - Using Environmental Design to Reflect Internal Conflict; Fear

Illustration idea:

Benny standing at the edge, visually caught between two moods.

Figure 4.47: Simplicity and Accessibility - Depecting Visual Simplicity to Reinforce the Thematic Depth

Illustrations Completed by Udari Gunawardena

4.2.6 Story Setting Sheet

A Setting Sheet is a comprehensive visual reference document that captures the design, atmosphere, and structural details of the story's environment to ensure visual consistency and narrative coherence across a children's fiction book. Much like a Character Reference Sheet, the Setting Sheet serves as a creative blueprint for illustrators, authors, and art directors—helping maintain continuity, reinforce tone, and visually ground readers in the story's world.

In children's fiction, where visual storytelling carries much of the narrative weight, the Setting Sheet becomes an essential tool. It brings together the spatial layout, environmental details, mood, light, and textural cues into one centralized reference space, supporting scene composition, emotional pacing, and collaborative decision-making across all production stages. A well-developed Setting Sheet enables:

- Visual continuity across story spreads and settings
- Emotional and narrative transitions using lighting, texture, and palette
- Enhanced clarity and immersion for young readers
- Creative collaboration among writers, illustrators, and designers

Above all, it ensures that the world itself evolves alongside the story, reflecting changes in mood, time, and perspective as the protagonist's journey unfolds.

a) What Does a Story Setting Sheet Typically Include?

- **Environmental Layout Sketches or Maps**
  Rough diagrams or bird's-eye views of key locations in the story (e.g. gar den, forest, owl's tree), showing spatial relationships and transitions.

- **Landmark Elements**
  Recurring visual anchors that reappear across scenes to help with orientation and symbolic resonance.

- **Time of Day and Lighting Variants**
  Visual studies of how the environment looks at different times; morning, dusk, night — using light and shadow to guide emotional tone and pace.

- **Textural and Surface Details**
  Close-up textures that bring depth and tactility bark lines, leafy grounds, soil patterns.

- **Symbolic or Narrative Anchors**
  Objects or locations that hold narrative meaning or emotional significance.

- **Supporting Objects and Props**
  Smaller elements that populate the world and contribute to storytelling.

- **Mood and Colour Palette**
  Curated environmental colour schemes that guide emotional flow, reflecting shifts from fear to safety, night to day, or conflict to resolution.

- **Perspective and Depth Indicators**
  Visual studies showing how to layer and frame spreads, foreground/ midground/ background cues that support immersion.

“Variation in layout — whether through spots, panels, or vignettes—keeps the reading experience dynamic, guiding the child’s eye while preventing visual monotony.”

- Salisbury & Styles -

4.3 Plan the Flow of the Story

Narrating, Thumbnailing for Visual Rhythm and Structure

4.3.1 What is Visual Narrative?

Visual narrative refers to how a story is communicated through images — how characters, worlds, and events are visually brought to life for the audience. It extends beyond the plot's framework, shaping the reader's experience through sequence, flow, tone, and style. While Chapter 3.2 discussed narrative in general, this section focuses on its visual dimension: how the arrangement of illustrations guides the reader's journey and communicates the story effectively.

4.3.2 Order of Storytelling in Children's Fiction Books

A key part of visual narrative is the order in which events are shown. While the plot defines what happens, the storytelling order determines when and how those moments are revealed — shaping clarity, pacing, and emotional engagement.

Choosing the right structure helps writers and illustrators ensure that the narrative style supports both the plot and the needs of the child reader. For example, in Benny the Rabbit, a chronological order provides younger readers with clarity, while circular or parallel structures add richness for slightly older audiences.

Here are six storytelling structures, with examples from Benny the Rabbit:

- Chronological – simple and clear, ideal for younger children.
- Non-linear – uses flashbacks or time shifts for mystery or depth.
- Flashbacks – reveal backstory to build suspense or empathy.
- Circular – emphasizes growth or returning home.
- Parallel – shows simultaneous events, adding complexity.
- Episodic - reveals the story in chapters or segments.

> **"The first lie of fiction is that the author gives some order to the chaos of life: chronological order, or whatever order the author chooses."**
>
> **— Isabel Allende —**

1) Chronological Storytelling

Events are presented in the order they occur, moving linearly from beginning to end.

How It's Used:

This is the most common structure in children's books because it is straightforward and easy for young readers to follow.
Works well for simple, action-driven stories in which cause-and-effect relationships are key.

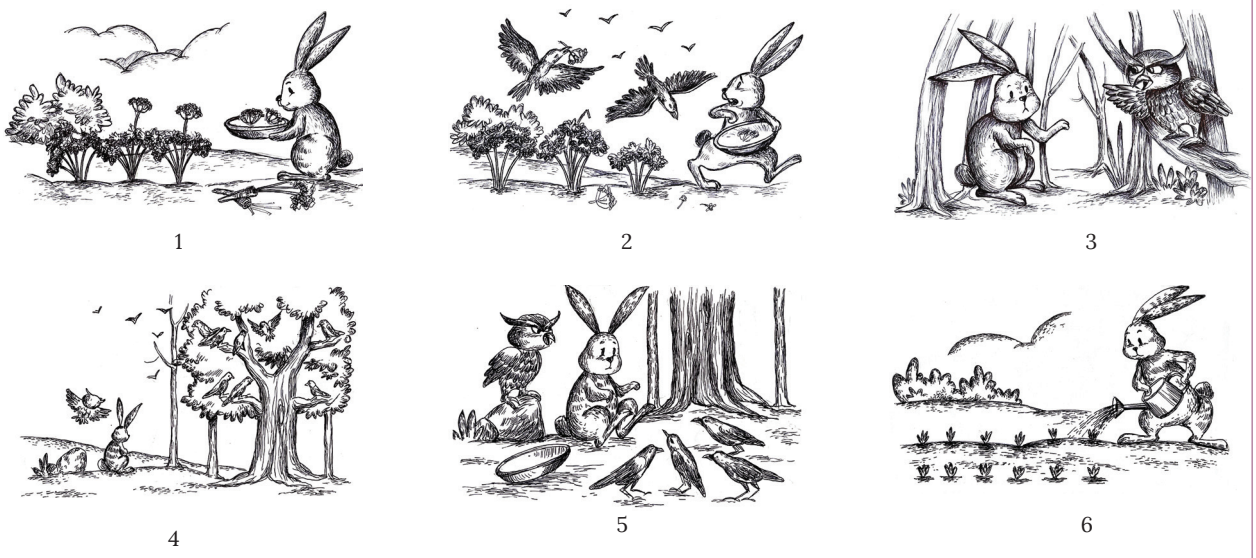
Considerations:

Ensure the progression of events maintains a logical and engaging flow.
Ideal for younger audiences who benefit from clear, linear storytelling.

1 2 3 4

1. Benny's vegetable patch is being destroyed by unruly crows and wildbows.
2. Scared Benny hides himself (unknowingly ventures into the dark forest).
3. Benny faces challenges in the forest (shadows, noises) and overcomes his fear.
4. With the help of an owl, he scares off the crows and regains his vegetable patch.

Figure 4.48: Chronological Storytelling - Sample 01



1 2 3

4 5 6

1. Benny lovingly tends his garden, saving carrot seeds.
2. Crows invade and steal his precious seeds.
3. Saddened, Benny ventures into the forest, facing fear and challenges but meeting helpful creatures.
4. With the owl's help, he finds the seeds and chooses sharing over confrontation.
5. The crows accept, and Benny returns with seeds and new confidence.
6. He replants his garden, gaining wisdom, empathy, and a sense of community.

Figure 4.49: Chronological Storytelling - Sample 02

2. Non-Linear Storytelling

Events are presented out of chronological order, often jumping between different time periods or moments.

How It's Used:

Rare but effective for stories that aim to intrigue, surprise, or deepen emotional engagement. Often used in advanced picture books for older children or when exploring complex themes like memory or imagination.

Considerations:

Ensure transitions between time periods are clear and do not confuse the audience.
Use visual cues such as different illustration styles or colours to indicate shifts in time.
Pair non-linear storytelling with a simple overarching plot to maintain clarity.

1. The story begins with Benny safe in his burrow, eating carrots, and reflecting on a scary adventure (present).
2. Flashback to Benny's journey into the forest to confront the crows (past).
3. Return to the present as Benny proudly tells the owl about how he overcame his fear.

Figure 4.50: Non-Linear Storytelling

3. Flashbacks

A specific type of non-linear storytelling where the narrative temporarily shifts to events from the past.

How It's Used:

Flashbacks can reveal backstory, motivation, or important context.
Typically used sparingly to avoid overwhelming young readers.

Considerations:

Keep flashbacks brief and clearly distinguish them from the main narrative.
Use them to add depth to the protagonist or conflict.

4. Circular Storytelling

The story begins and ends at the same point, creating a sense of closure and continuity.

How It's Used:

Appeals to young readers by providing a comforting, full-circle resolution.
Works well for stories with themes of home, growth or repetition.

Considerations:

Ensure the ending mirrors the beginning but reflects the protagonist's growth or change.

1. Benny hesitates at the edge of the forest, remembering a time when he got lost in the woods as a young rabbit. This flashback explains his fear of the dark forest.

Figure 4.51: Flashbacks

1. The story begins with Benny happily tending his carrot patch.
2. After his adventure in the forest, the story ends with Benny back in his patch, now confident and proud of his bravery.

Figure 4.52: Circular Storytelling

5. Parallel Storytelling

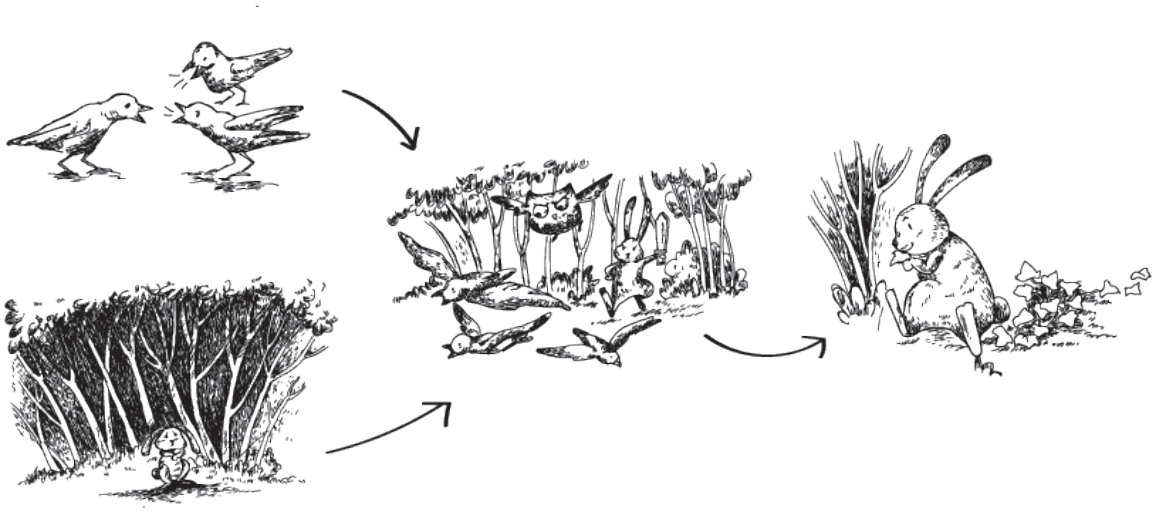
Two or more storylines unfold simultaneously and are woven together to highlight connections.

How It's Used:

Rare but effective for stories exploring different perspectives or contrasting experiences. Often used to show the interplay between characters (e.g. protagonist vs. antagonist).

Considerations:

Use clear transitions or visual differentiation to indicate shifts between storylines. Tie the parallel threads together in the resolution.



1. One storyline follows Benny's journey into the forest.
2. Another shows the crows plotting to defend their claim to the carrot patch.
3. The two threads converge when Benny outsmarts the crows.

Figure 4.53: Parallel Storytelling

6. Episodic Storytelling

The story is divided into smaller, self-contained “episodes” or scenes that contribute to the overarching narrative.

How It’s Used:

Works well for adventure or quest stories, in which each episode represents a challenge or milestone.

Engages readers with a series of mini-stories leading to the resolution.

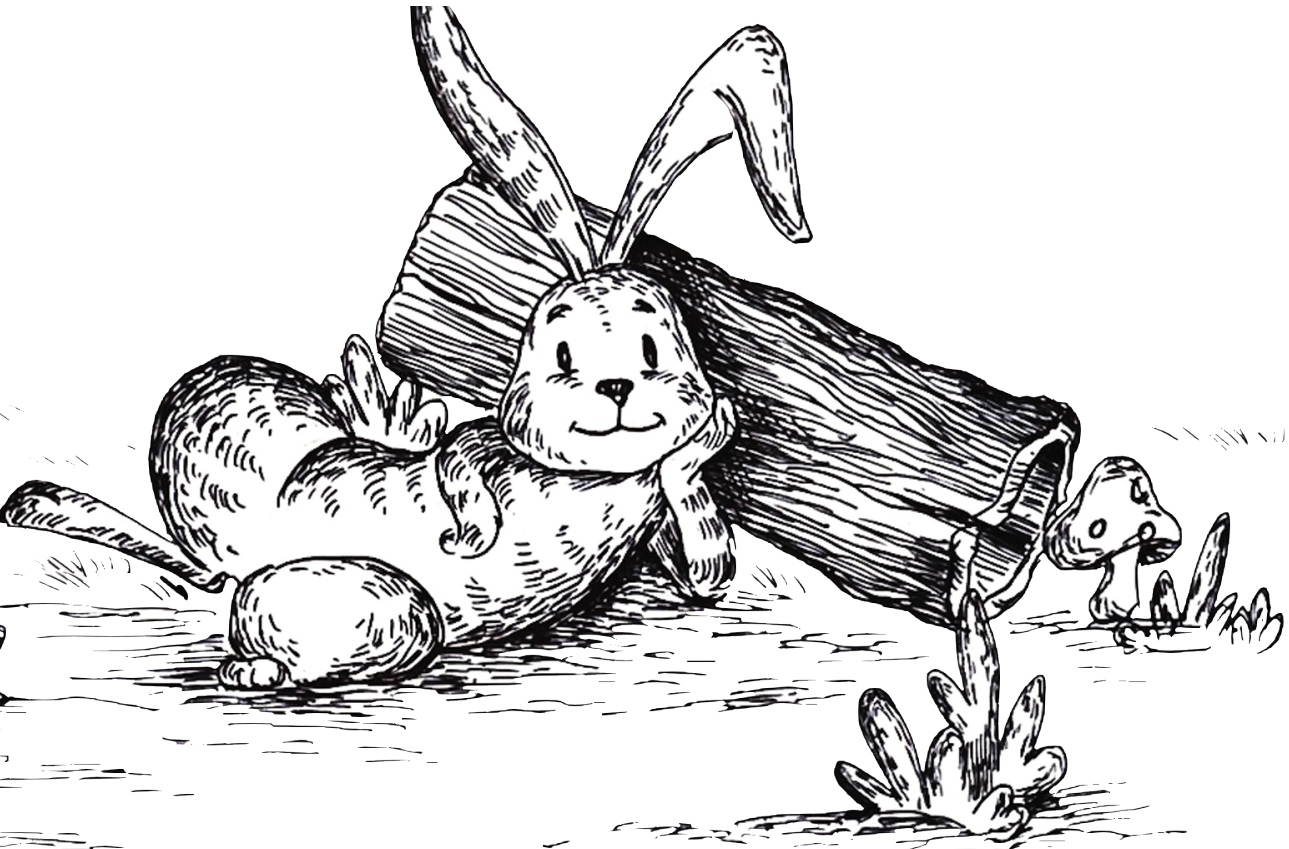
Considerations:

Ensure each episode connects logically to the next and contributes to the main plot.

Keep episodes short and dynamic to maintain pacing.

1. Episode 1: Benny prepares to enter the forest.
2. Episode 2: Benny faces shadows that look like monsters.
3. Episode 3: Benny meets the owl, who helps him plan.
4. Episode 4: Benny and the owl scare off the crows.

Figure 4.54: Episodic Storytelling



4.3.3 What is Thumbnailing?

Thumbnailing is the process of creating small, rough sketches — usually no more than an inch in size — that represent each page or spread in a children's fiction book. These quick drawings are not finished illustrations but visual notes, used to plan layouts, experiment with structure, and test how the story flows visually.

After deciding how you hope to visually narrate the story — or if you want to try out different narrative structures — thumbnailing becomes the practical way to explore those options. Because they are sketches, thumbnails are fast, flexible and iterative. They allow illustrators to map out composition, pacing, and the placement of text and images without getting distracted by detail.

Thumbnails are especially useful for:

- Mapping out the sequence of events, number of pages and page turns.
- Testing different layouts (full spreads, spots, panels, dynamic arrangements or order of story/ visual narration).
- Balancing white space, text placement, typography and illustration.
- Organizing essential pages such as title, copyright and end pages.

In a 32-page picture book, thumbnailing ensures that the narrative is distributed evenly, the rhythm of page turns supports the story and text is broken into manageable, engaging segments. Importantly, thumbnails evolve — what begins as loose sketches gradually develops into refined layouts, eventually guiding the production of the finished book.

> **"Thumbnailing is where ideas find their shape, turning stories into books one sketch at a time."**

4.3.4 Why Thumbnailing is Important in Children's Book Design

Thumbnailing is essential for shaping effective page layouts because it allows illustrators and art directors to test design choices on a small scale before committing to final artwork. This process ensures visual rhythm, balance between spot illustrations and full-page spreads, and smooth narrative pacing. By working through thumbnails, designers can identify and prevent common issues such as poor gutter placement, overcrowded pages or misaligned text.

"What a picture adds to a story and what the words leave out, is key." This principle highlights the collaborative relationship between author and illustrator. Ideally, the author leaves space in the manuscript for the illustrator's creative contribution — allowing images to portray mood, enrich the setting, and add layers of meaning beyond the text.

In this way, successful picture books rely on words and images working together — not duplicating each other, but complementing and extending the story. As Salisbury (2004), Paul (2009) and Dils (2009) emphasize, the strongest illustrations often introduce a parallel or complementary visual narrative that enhances the manuscript and deepens the reader's experience. Therefore, the thumbnailing stage is a crucial step in picture book creation.

4.3.5 The Iterative Process of Thumbnailing in Children's Book Design

Thumbnailing is not a one-time step but an iterative process — refined through multiple cycles of sketching, reviewing and adjusting. Each stage helps shape the visual rhythm of the book and ensures that story, design, and readability align for the child reader. The process typically unfolds in the following way:

a) Defining Page Size and Orientation

The process begins with decisions on page size and orientation — portrait, landscape, or square. Working proportionately from the start helps illustrators maintain consistency as the book evolves from rough thumbnails to final layouts.

b) Mapping the Sequence of Events

Once proportions are set, the next step is to map the sequence of events across the planned number of pages. Here, attention is given to narrative pacing and page turns, which are critical in building suspense, surprise, or rhythm in a children's book.

c) Testing Layout Options

At the thumbnail stage, illustrators experiment with different layout formats — full-page spreads, spot illustrations, sequential panels, or dynamic combinations. This flexibility allows testing of both story order and visual narration, ensuring that the structure matches the story's needs.

d) Balancing Visual and Verbal Elements

A crucial part of the process is balancing illustrations with white space, text placement and typography. This balance ensures readability while keeping the visual interest strong. Thumbnails allow quick adjustments to prevent overcrowding and to ensure that visuals complement rather than overwhelm the text.

e) Organizing Essential Pages

Beyond the main story, thumbnails also account for structural necessities such as the title page, copyright page, dedication and end pages. These details establish the professional and narrative framework of the book.

Because thumbnailing is iterative, each of these steps is revisited and refined. Rough sketches evolve into more detailed layouts, and the process continues until text, imagery and structure work in harmony. By embracing this cycle, authors and illustrators ensure that the story flows naturally, and that the book becomes an engaging, coherent experience for young readers.

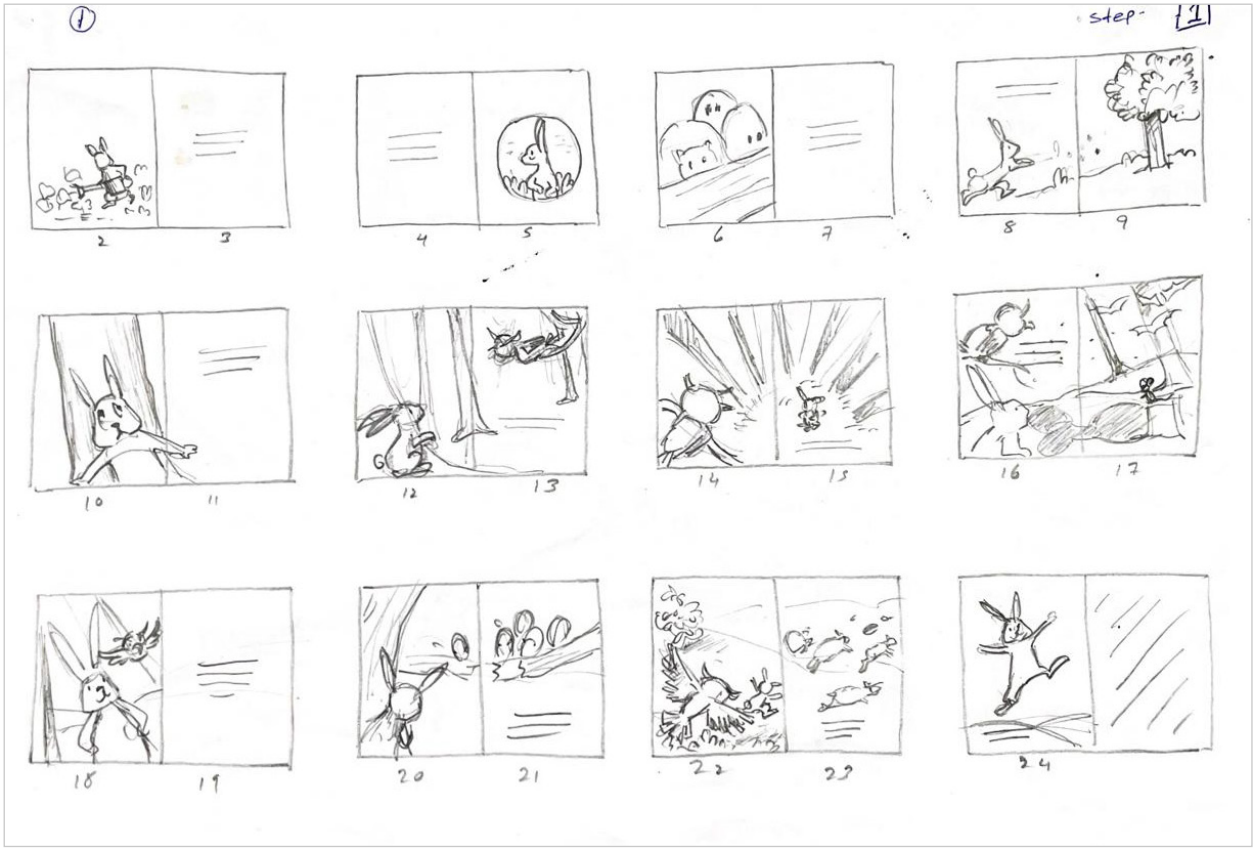


Figure 4.57: Sample Thumbnail Sketches

Scenario 01: Text-Led Development

Start: Plot → Technical Script (Round 1)

Flow: TS (R1) → TH (R1) → TS (R2) → TH (R2) → Review → Refined TS → Refined TH

Collaboration: Strong author/editor lead, illustrator refines based on text

Final Output: Refined Thumbnail (larger scale, includes text)

Scenario 02: Image-Led Development

Start: Plot → Thumbnailing (Round 1)

Flow: TH (R1) → TS (R1) → TH (R2) → TS (R2) → Review → Refined TS → Refined TH

Collaboration: Illustrator sets visual flow, author/editor align script

Final Output: Refined Thumbnail (larger scale, includes text)

Scenario 03: Plot + Early Visual Concepts (Parallel start)

Start: Plot + Early Visual Concepts (Parallel start)

Flow: TS (R1)+TH (R1) → TS (R2)+TH (R2) → Review → Refined TS → Refined TH

Collaboration: All roles collaborate from the outset; text and visuals co-develop

Final Output: Refined Thumbnail (larger scale, includes text)

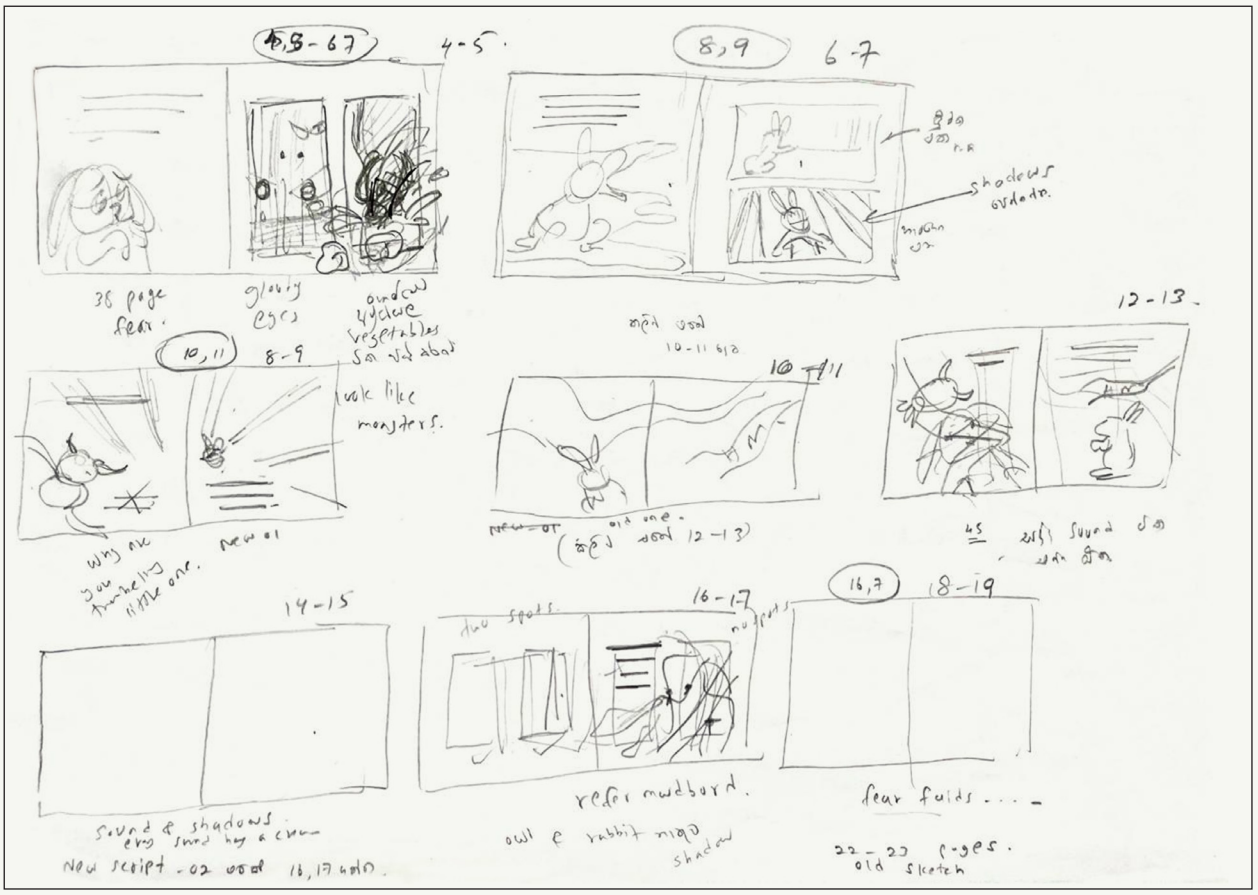


Figure 4.58: Sample Thumbnail Intial Sketche

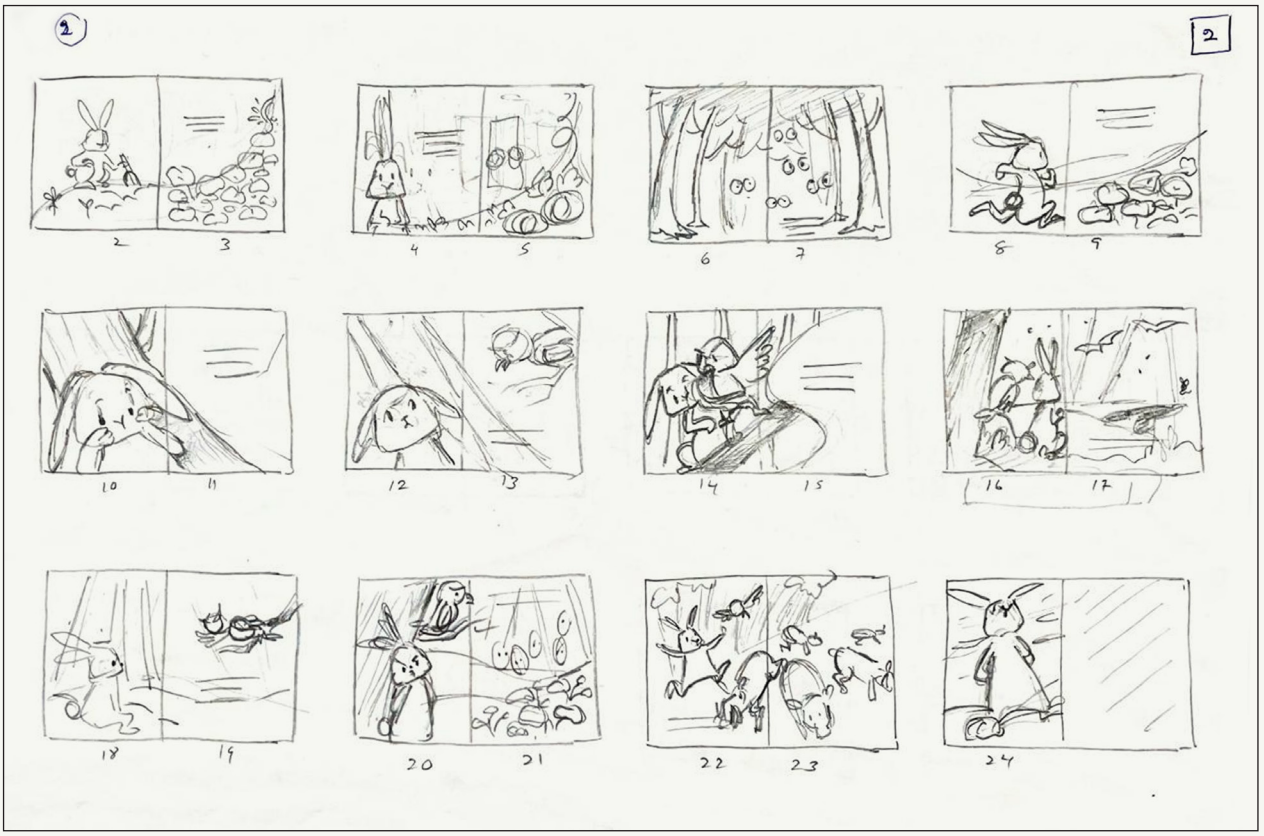


Figure 4.59: Sample Thumbnail Sketches

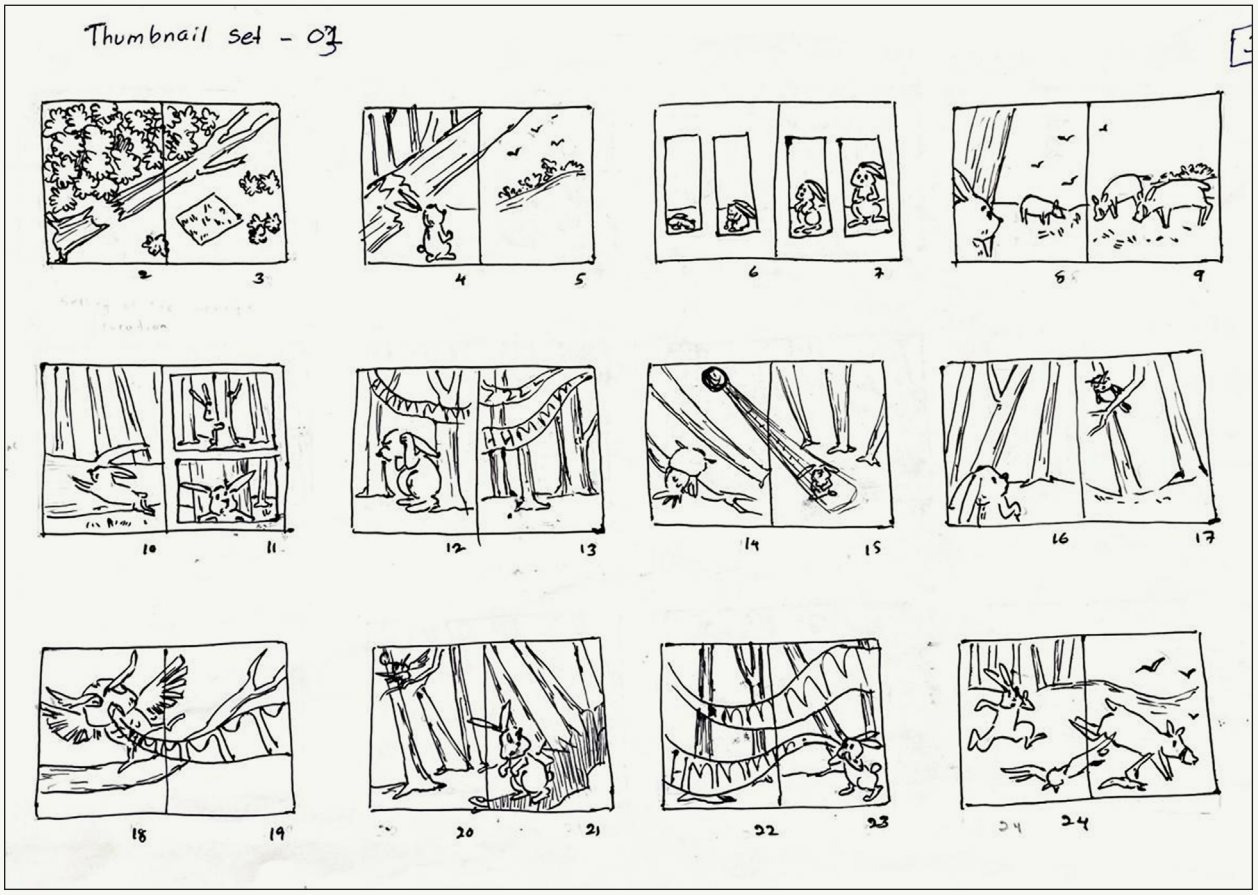


Figure 4.60: Sample Thumbnail Sketches

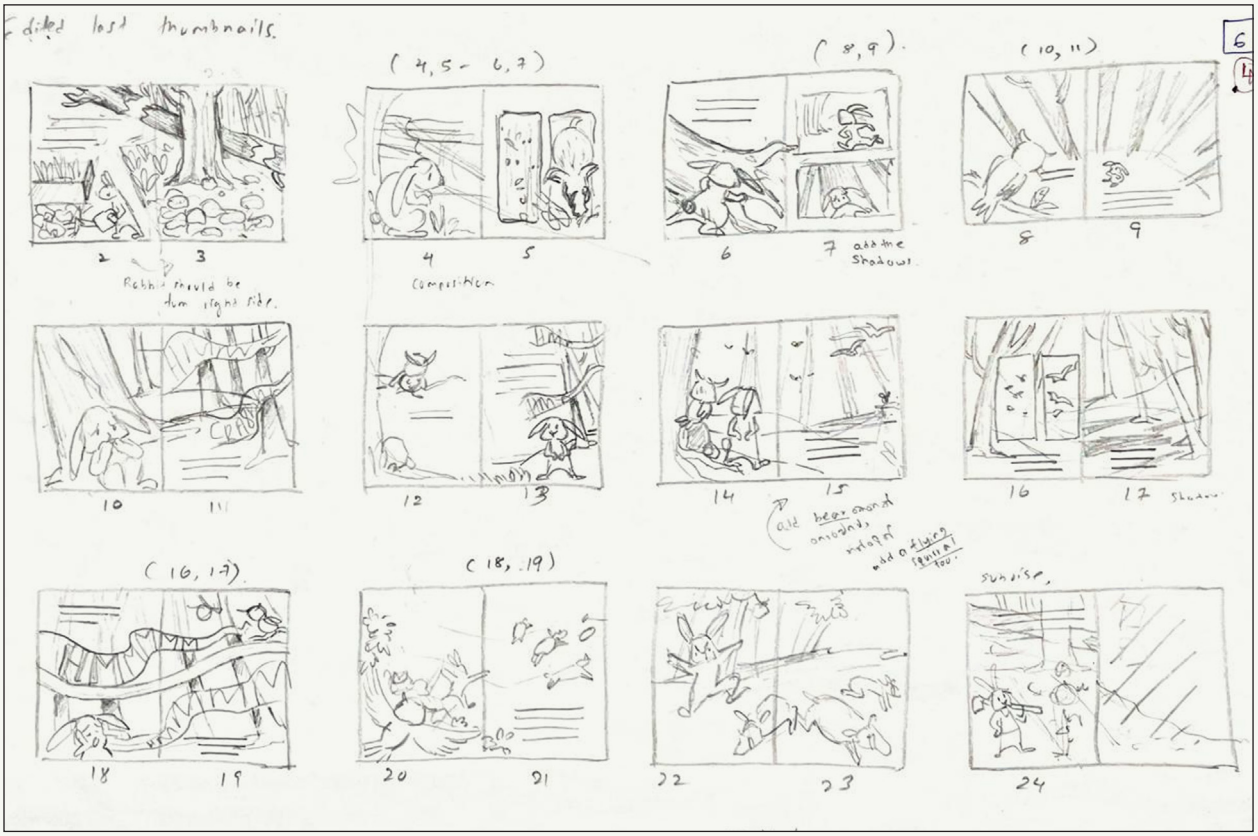


Figure 4.61: Sample Thumbnail Sketches

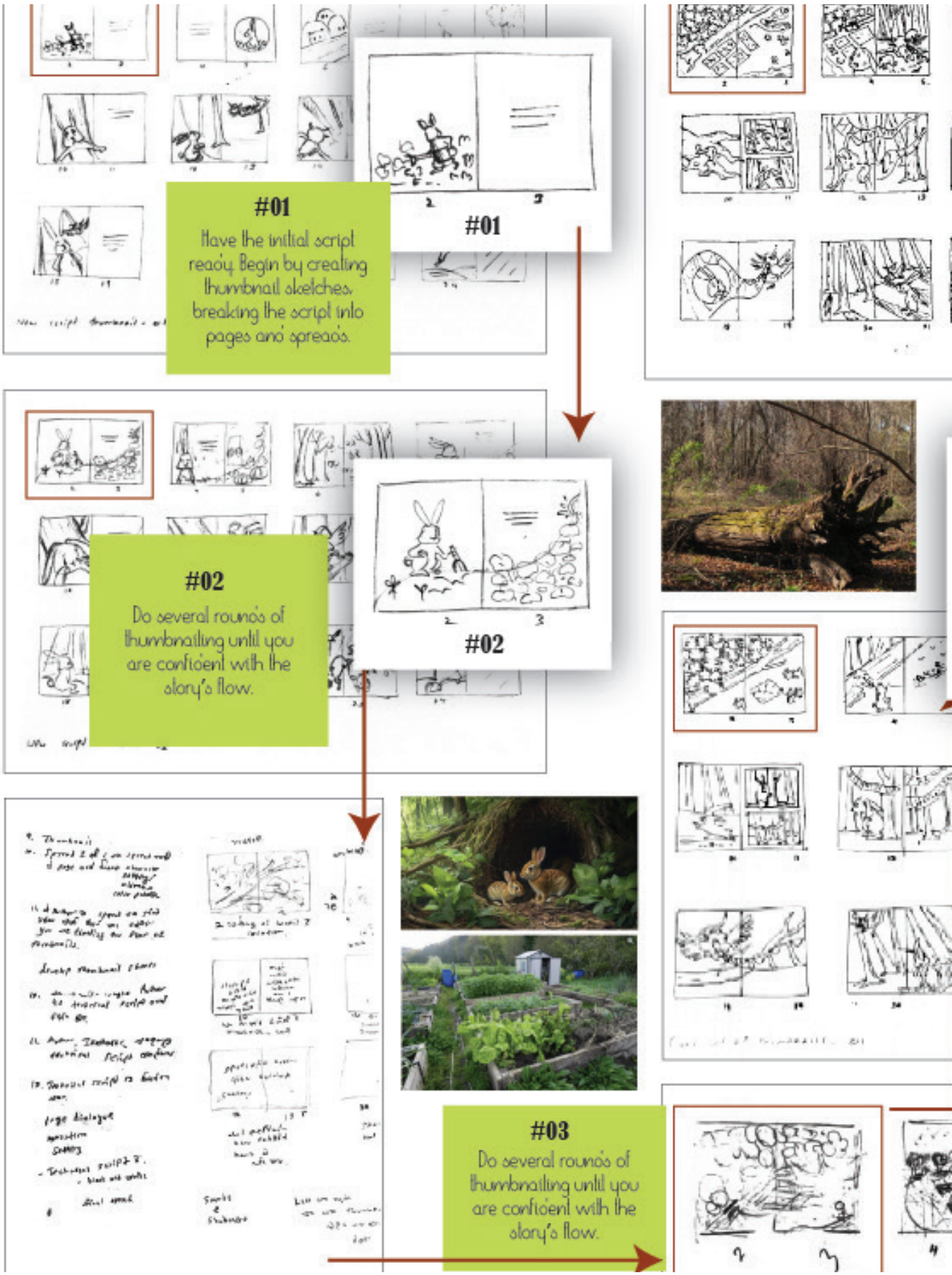
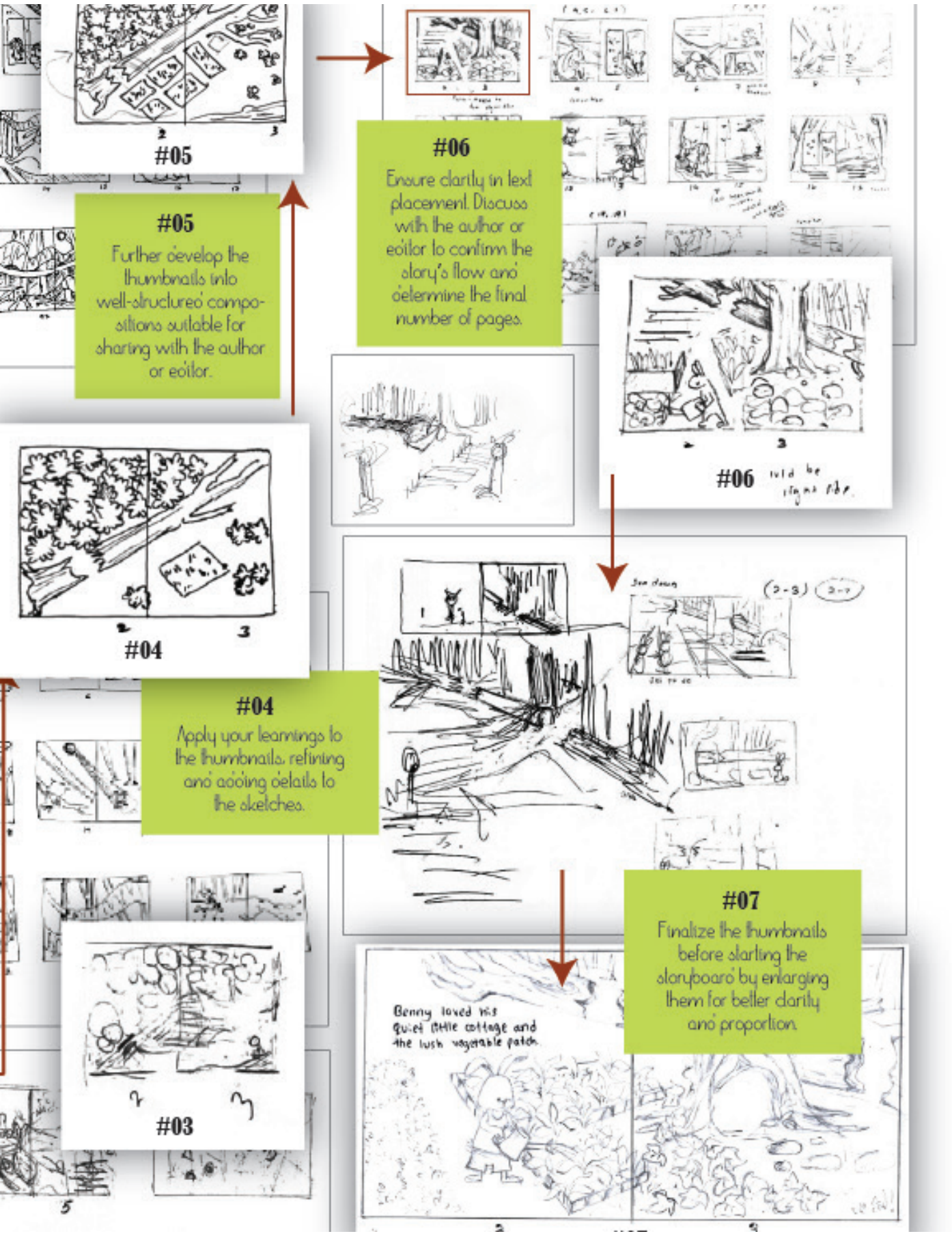


Figure 4.62: The Iterative Process of Thumbnailing


#05
#05
Further develop the thumbnails into well-structured compositions suitable for sharing with the author or editor.
#06
Ensure clarity in text placement. Discuss with the author or editor to confirm the story's flow and determine the final number of pages.
#06
#04
#04
Apply your learnings to the thumbnails, refining and adding details to the sketches.
#07
Finalize the thumbnails before starting the storyboard by enlarging them for better clarity and proportion.
#03
Benny loved his quiet little cottage and the lush vegetable patch.

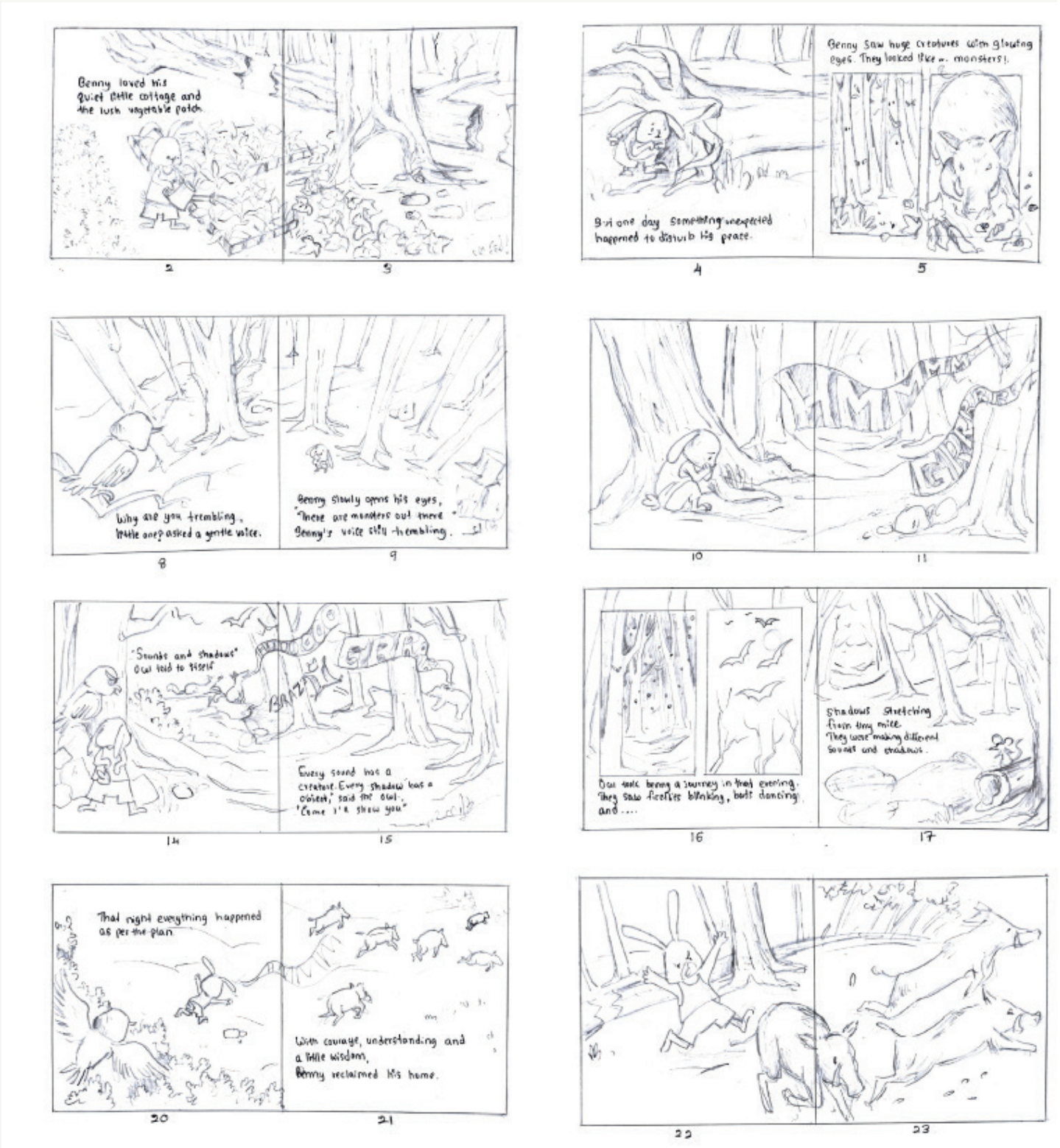
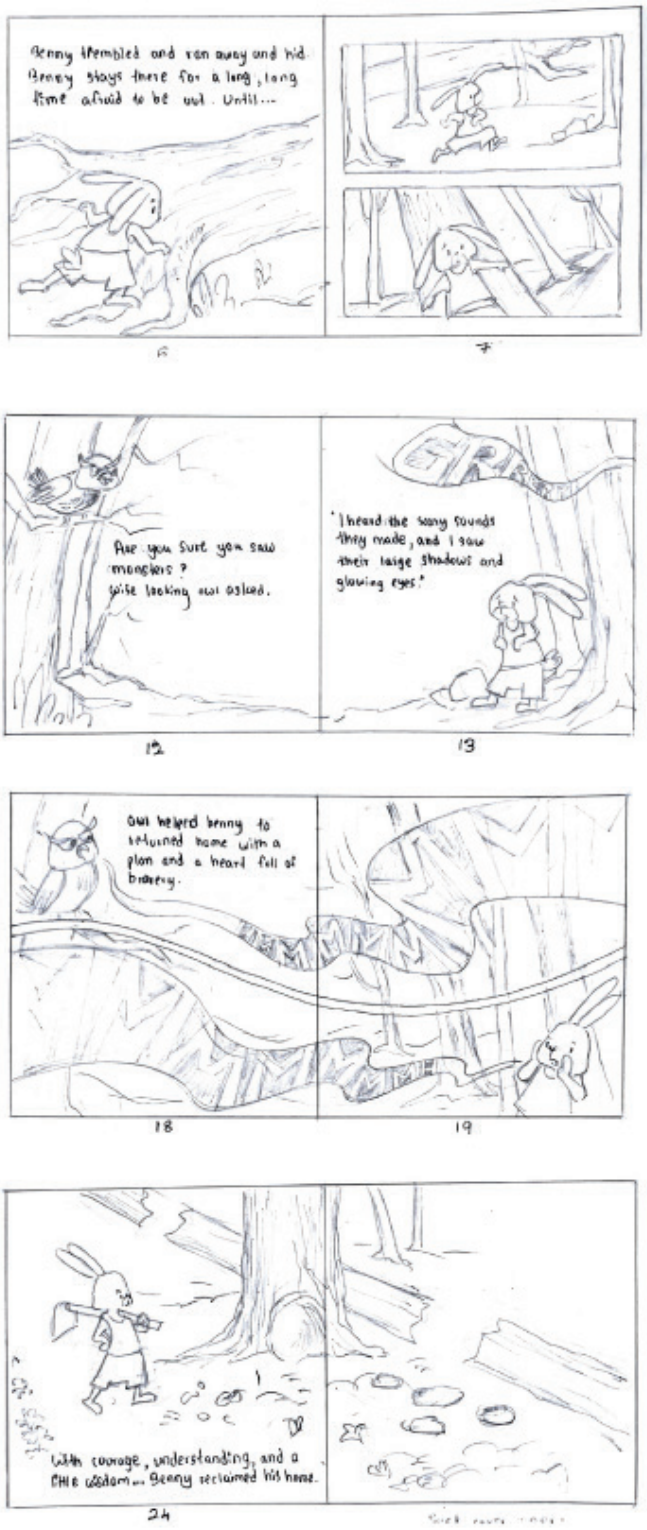


Figure 4.63: Sample Refined Thumbnails (Stage Before Storyboading)



From Refined Thumbnails to Storyboarding

- Arrive at refined thumbnails (the stage just before storyboarding) through collaborative discussion between the author, editor, illustrator and art director.
- Plan text placement and have the author prepare a technical script — the final manuscript before line editing.
- Conduct line editing, with collaborative input but led by the language editor.
- After line editing, ensure the refined thumbnails are ready to progress into storyboarding.
- Remember that workflows may vary depending on individual practices, but certain requirements should be fulfilled before moving into storyboarding.
- Treat thumbnailing as an iterative process — changes are best made at this stage, as sketches are small, clear and easier to revise.

4.4. Final Visual Journey

Refining Compositions and Reading Experience

4.4.1 What is Storyboarding?

A storyboard is a sequential series of drawings that visually map out the flow of a story across the book's pages. It acts as a bridge between thumbnail sketches and final illustrations, providing a more detailed representation of how text and images will work together. Unlike thumbnails — which are quick, small and exploratory — storyboards are proportionate to the book's format and carry greater visual detail.

Storyboards go beyond simply showing composition. They capture essential aspects of the narrative world, including:

- Context and Setting – Backgrounds, props, and visual environments that establish where the story takes place.
- Character Features – Facial expressions, body language, and gestures that communicate emotion, personality and relationships.
- Colour Indications – Broad notes on colour schemes, atmosphere and tonal shifts (though not final rendering), giving direction for mood and consistency.

By integrating these elements, storyboards allow both author and illustrator to visualize how the story will feel for the child reader, making sure that text and images align with the intended narrative and emotional arc (Salisbury & Styles, 2012).

> **"The storyboard is the point where words and images begin to fuse — a testing ground for pacing, rhythm and visual clarity before the illustrator commits to final artwork."**
>
> **- Salisbury & Styles -**

4.4.2 Why Storyboarding is Important in Children's Book Creation?

Storyboarding is a crucial stage in the picture-book process because it transforms abstract ideas and rough sketches into a coherent visual script. It allows the story to be tested and refined before moving into the time-consuming stage of final artwork. A well-developed storyboard ensures that:

- Pacing and rhythm are clear, with effective page turns that build suspense, surprise, or calm (Nodelman, 1988).
- Narrative clarity is achieved, showing not only what happens but how the child reader experiences it through setting, gesture and expression.
- The relationship between words and pictures is balanced, with illustrations adding meaning rather than duplicating text (McCloud, 1993).
- Design problems — such as cluttered spreads, awkward text placement, or inconsistent character features — are identified early.
- Collaboration remains central: storyboarding invites dialogue between author, illustrator, editor and art director, ensuring that the visual script reflects both creative intent and practical design.

4.4.3 The Storyboarding Process: From Sketch to Visual

A storyboard acts as the working blueprint of a children's picture book. It takes the raw energy of thumbnails and translates them into proportionate, detailed panels that reveal how text and images will work together across the book. The process is iterative and collaborative, refined through repeated cycles of feedback before final artwork begins. The General Process of Storyboarding includes:

a) Scaling Up from Thumbnails

Thumbnails are redrawn into storyboards at a size proportionate to the intended format (portrait, landscape, or square), giving a clearer sense of how each spread will function.

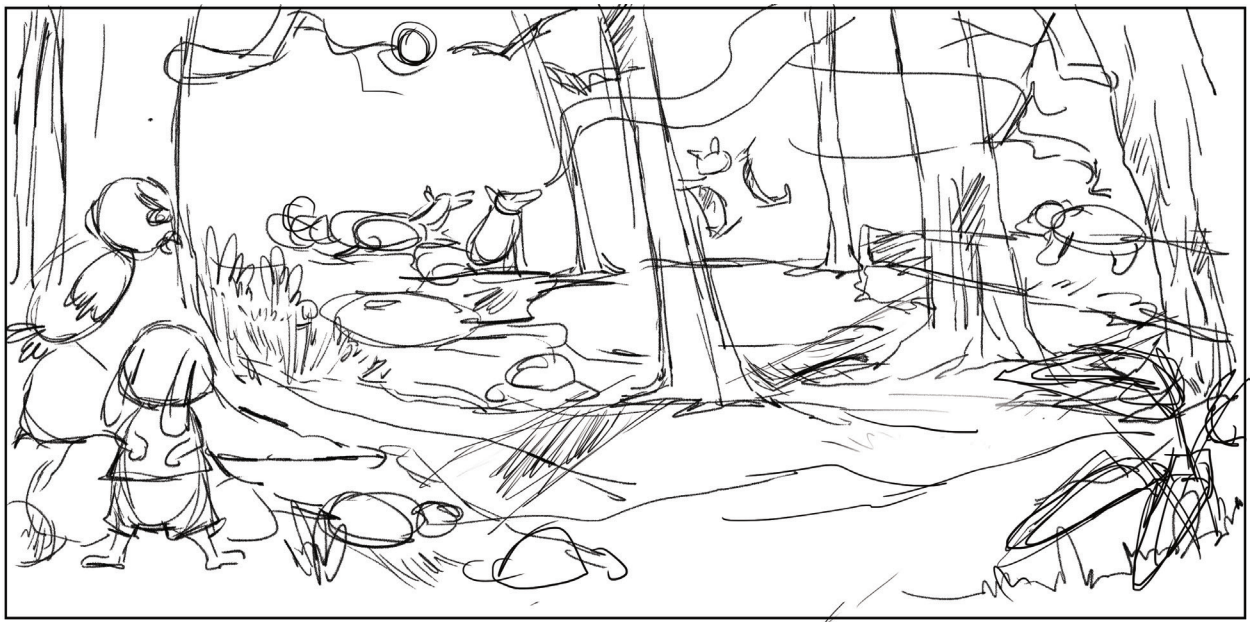
b) Adding Visual Detail

Context, setting, props and character expressions are developed to communicate action, emotion, and consistency across pages.

c) Colour Indications

Broad notes on colour schemes are added to suggest atmosphere, mood, or contrast, guiding later illustration without full rendering.

Thumbnail Sketch



Storyboard Sketch

Storyboard - Development 01

Figure 4.64: Sample Thumbnail to Storyboard to Final Artwork

Storyboard - Development 02

Final Artwork - Development 01

Final Artwork

Illustrations Completed by Udari Gunawardena

d) Integrating Text Placement

Manuscript text is placed in relation to images to test readability, hierarchy and flow, ensuring harmony between word and picture.

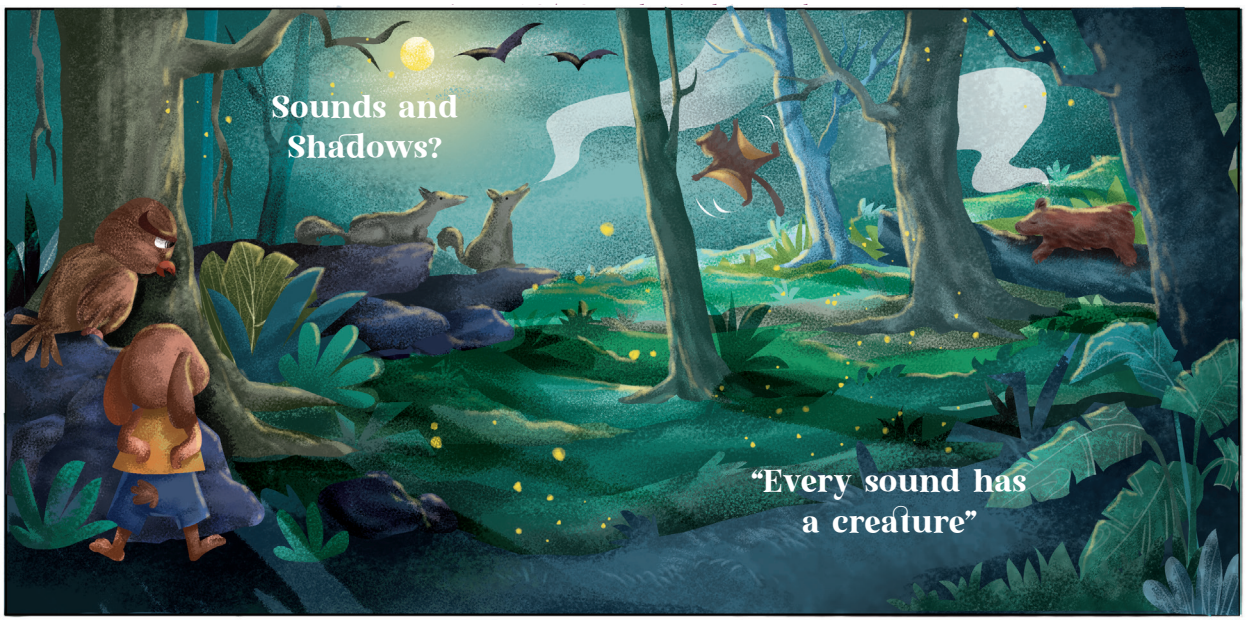
e) Testing Pacing and Engagement

Storyboards are checked for rhythm, suspense and impact, with page turns used deliberately to build anticipation or provide resolution.

f) Collaborative Refinement

Author, illustrator, editor and art director review the storyboard together, refining until story and visuals align seamlessly.

Figure 4.65: Sample Final Artwork



Illustrations Completed by Udari Gunawardena

Figure 4.66: Sample Pre-Press Layout

4.4.4 Final Artwork: After the Storyboarding Stage

Once the storyboard is approved, the project moves into final artwork — the stage in which the book begins to take on its polished visual form. The storyboard provides the blueprint, while the final artwork delivers fully realized illustrations with refined detail, colour and atmosphere. At this point, earlier decisions about composition, character design, pacing, and text placement are translated into cohesive, high-quality spreads.

Final artwork is not just about producing images; it is a collaborative process that aligns illustration, typography, and colour decisions to create spreads that are both visually compelling and functionally ready for design and layout. From here, the workflow progresses through a sequence of tasks, which may include the following:

a) Approval and Final Revisions

- The storyboard is reviewed and signed off by the author, illustrator, editor and art director.
- Minor adjustments to pacing, visual flow, or text placement are resolved before artwork begins.

b) Creation of Final Artwork

- The illustrator produces full-scale illustrations, either manually (traditional media such as watercolour, ink, collage) or digitally (using illustration software and drawing tablets).
- Artwork is developed in close collaboration with the author, editor, and art director, ensuring that narrative intent and design standards remain aligned.
- Line work is refined, and full colour, texture and detail are applied, with attention to consistency in character features, settings and mood.
- Decisions about typographic integration — such as where text will be placed and how it interacts with imagery — are considered alongside illustration. The illustrator may leave clear spaces or background treatments to support readability.
- Font and typographic choices are discussed collaboratively, ensuring harmony between the story's tone and the visual design.
- If colour precision is required (for branding or printing accuracy), Pantone or other colour guides are specified to maintain consistency across printing processes.

c) Approval and Final Revisions

- The storyboard is reviewed and signed off by the author, illustrator, editor, and art director.
- Minor adjustments to pacing, visual flow, or text placement are resolved before artwork begins.

4.4.5 Pre-Press Layout: Integrating Words and Images

After the final artwork is completed, the process shifts to pre-press and layout, where words and images are woven into the book's final format. At this stage, design decisions move beyond creativity alone to address both readability and technical preparation for printing. Every element — typography, margins, spacing, gutters and imagery — must work in harmony to create a seamless reading experience for children while ensuring professional production standards. This stage guarantees the book is not only beautiful but also functional, durable and ready for publication.

a) Text Integration and Layout

- The manuscript text is digitally placed into designed pages using professional software (e.g. Adobe InDesign, Affinity Publisher).
- Typography choices — font, size, style, and weight — are finalized, balancing clarity for young readers with the book's visual identity.
- Text placement is managed to avoid clashing with illustrations, often using areas of calm background to support legibility.
- Margins, gutters and line spacing are refined to ensure comfortable reading flow, and to prevent text from being lost in the binding.
- Where expressive typography is applied (e.g. sound effects or dramatic emphasis), it is designed to complement illustrations without sacrificing readability.

b) Collaboration in Layout Decisions

- The designer or art director leads this stage, but illustrators, authors and editors contribute to refining how text and images interact.
- Feedback loops may involve repositioning text, adjusting illustrations or balancing white space to highlight important narrative details.
- Accessibility remains a key consideration, avoiding overly decorative fonts, ensuring strong colour contrast and testing legibility for diverse reading needs.

c) Proofing and Editing

- A proof copy (digital or printed) is created to review how words and images integrate across the spreads.
- Errors in typography, alignment or image reproduction are identified and corrected.
- Final adjustments are made collaboratively to ensure the book is polished, professional and developmentally appropriate.

d) Pre-Press Preparation

- Files are formatted to meet printing specifications, including bleed margins, resolution (minimum 300 dpi for illustrations) and CMYK colour profiles.
- Fonts are embedded or converted to outlines to prevent technical issues during printing.
- A pre-press check confirms readiness for production and ensures consistency across copies.

e) Production and Publication

- The book enters full print production, where copies are printed, bound and finished (hardcover, paperback, or digital formats).
- From here, the book moves into distribution, marketing and ultimately into the hands of its readers.

Senario	Starting Point	Process flow	Key Collaboration	Final outcome
Scenario 01: Text-Led Development	Plot → Technical Script (Round 1)	TS (R1) → TH (R1) → TS (R2) → TH (R2) → Review → Refined TS → Refined TH	Strong author/ Editor lead, Illustrator refines based on text	Refined Thumbnail (larger scale, includes text)
Scenario 02: Image-Led Development	Plot → Thumbnailing (Round 1)	TH (R1) → TS (R1) → TH (R2) → TS (R2) → Review → Refined TS → Refined TH	Illustrator sets visual flow, Author/Editor align script	Refined Thumbnail (larger scale, includes text)
Scenario 03: Hybrid / Collaborative Development))	Plot + Early Visual Concepts (Parallel start)	TS (R1)+TH (R1) → TS (R2)+TH (R2) → Review → Refined TS → Refined TH	All roles collaborate from the outset; text and visuals co-develop	Refined Thumbnail (larger scale, includes text)

Quick takeaway!

From Thumbnail to Pre-Press Layout - As a Sequence

Stage	Lead Role(s)	Focus	Key Output
Thumbnail	Illustrator (with Author/Editor input)	Rough sketches to explore sequence, pacing, page turns, and layout ideas	Small, iterative sketches that map visual rhythm and story flow
Storyboard	Illustrator + Art Director (with Author and Editor input)	Creating a visual script: proportionate scale, pacing, integration of text	Refined storyboard with text placement, character expressions, settings, and colour indications
Final Artwork	Illustrator (with Art Director oversight; Author/ Editor input)	Producing polished, full-colour illustrations consistent with character and setting	High-quality illustration files for each page/spread
Pre-Press & Layout	Book Designer / Art Director (with Illustrator, Author and Editor input)	Integrating text, typography, margins, and illustrations; preparing files for print	Print-ready book file (PDF/ InDesign package) meeting pre-press specifications

Quick takeaway!

From Pre-Press Layout to Production – The Final Sequence

Stage	Lead Role(s)	Focus	Key Output
Proofing	Layout Designer + Editor (with Author/ Illustrator input)	Reviewing integrated spreads for errors in text, alignment or reproduction	Digital or printed proof copy; list of corrections
Pre-Press Checks	Layout Designer + Printer	Ensuring technical readiness: bleed, resolution, fonts, colour profiles	Verified, press-ready file meeting industry specifications
Production	Printer / Publisher	Printing, binding, trimming, finishing, and preparing copies for release	Final physical or digital book distributed to readers, libraries, and markets

4.5 Experiment with Composition

Perspectives, Layout and Angles

4.5.1 Visual Perspectives

Up to this point, we have followed the progression from storyboarding through final artwork and into pre-press layout, showing how words and images gradually come together into a cohesive book. With the structure of pages now established, the next step is to consider how each page or spread is visually composed.

Visual perspectives are compositional frameworks that guide how illustrations are arranged within a page or spread. They help illustrators manage balance, rhythm and focus, ensuring that children's attention is directed in meaningful ways. By applying these frameworks, illustrators can:

- Strengthen storytelling through intentional composition.
- Highlight key narrative moments or emotions.
- Create visual variety which keeps the book engaging from page to page.

The choice of perspective is not accidental but part of the design language of the book. Just as storyboarding shapes pacing and flow, and layout integrates words with images, visual perspectives determine how a child experiences each moment within the story world. Below are some of the most common visual perspectives used in children's fiction illustration. These perspectives are not rigid rules but tools for storytelling.

> **"The rule of thirds remains one of the simplest yet most powerful compositional tools, guiding the eye naturally across an image and creating balance without symmetry."**
>
> **- Freeman -**

a) The Rule of Thirds

What it is: Divides the frame into a 3×3 grid. Important elements are placed along the lines or at their intersections.

When/Where to Use: To create balanced yet dynamic compositions. Often used in calm scenes (e.g., landscapes, character introductions).

How it Works: Helps highlight the protagonist while leaving space for setting or secondary action. Keeps spreads visually clear for young readers.

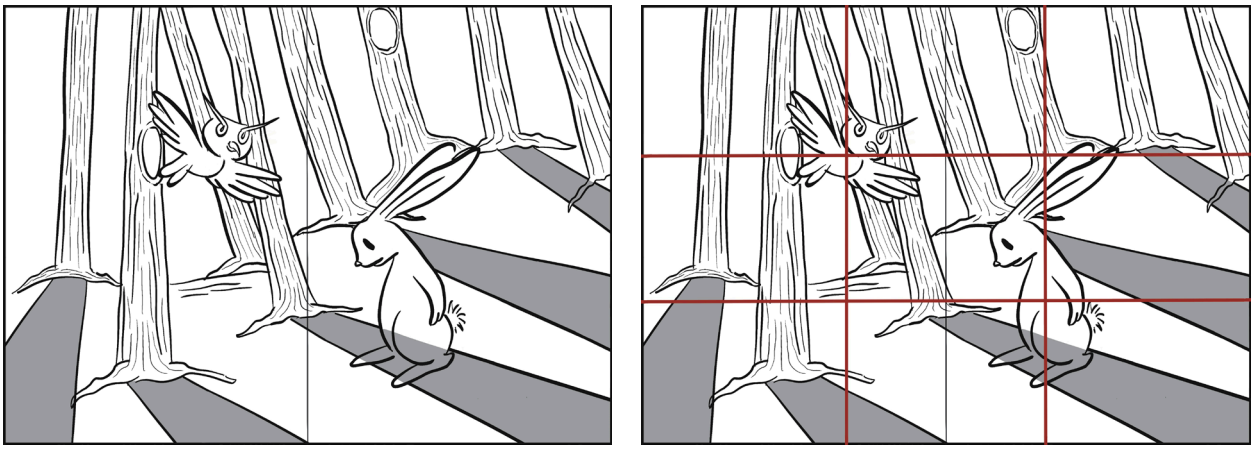


Figure 4.67: Sample Application of The Rule of Thirds

b) The Golden Section (Golden Ratio)

What it is: Based on a mathematical ratio (1:1.618), believed to create naturally pleasing proportions.

When/Where to Use: To emphasize harmony and aesthetic appeal in illustrations, especially in title pages, climactic spreads, or cover design.

How it Works: Guides placement of characters and focal points, ensuring illustrations feel balanced without being overly rigid.

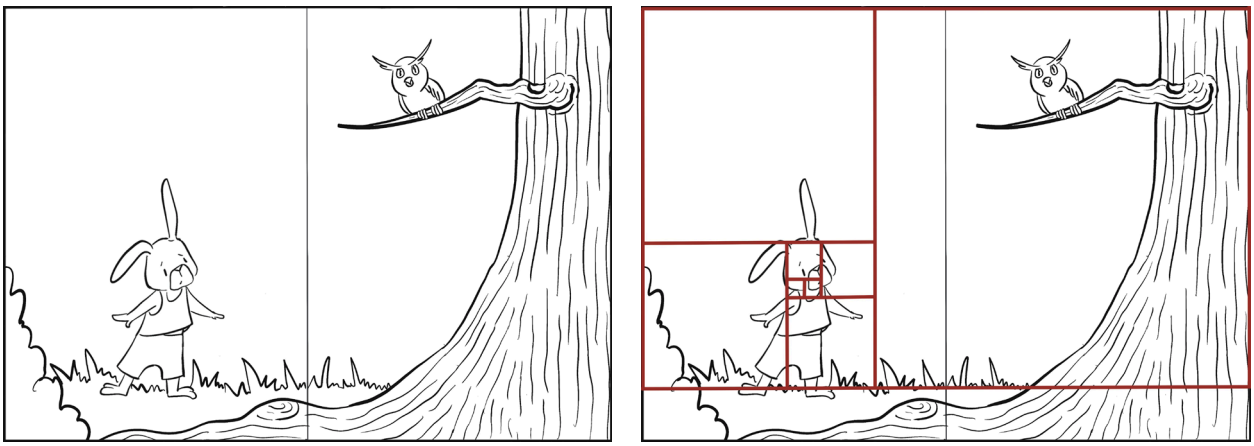


Figure 4.68: Sample Application of The Golden Section (Golden Ratio)

c) The Golden Triangle

What it is: Composition is structured around a diagonal line, with the space divided into triangles.

When/Where to Use: To create a sense of movement, tension, or direction — useful in action scenes.

How it Works: Directs the eye along the diagonal, making chase scenes, flying objects, or dynamic interactions more engaging.

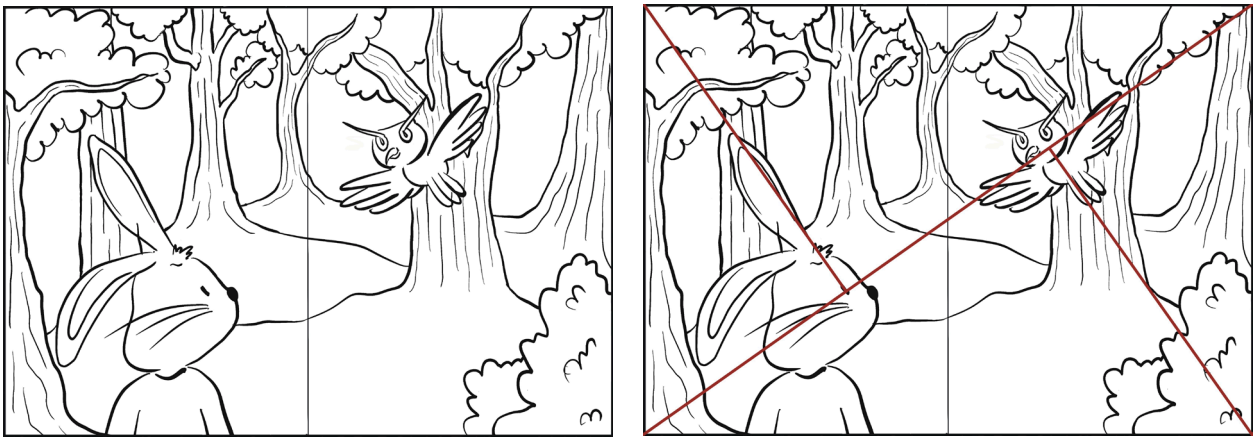


Figure 4.69: Sample Application of The Golden Triangle

d) The Golden Spiral (Fibonacci Spiral)

What it is: Uses a spiral curve (based on the golden ratio) to lead the viewer's eye through the composition.

When/Where to Use: To create flow and rhythm, particularly in spreads in which the action unfolds gradually.

How it Works: Effective for guiding children's eyes toward a reveal, such as uncovering a hidden character or building suspense.

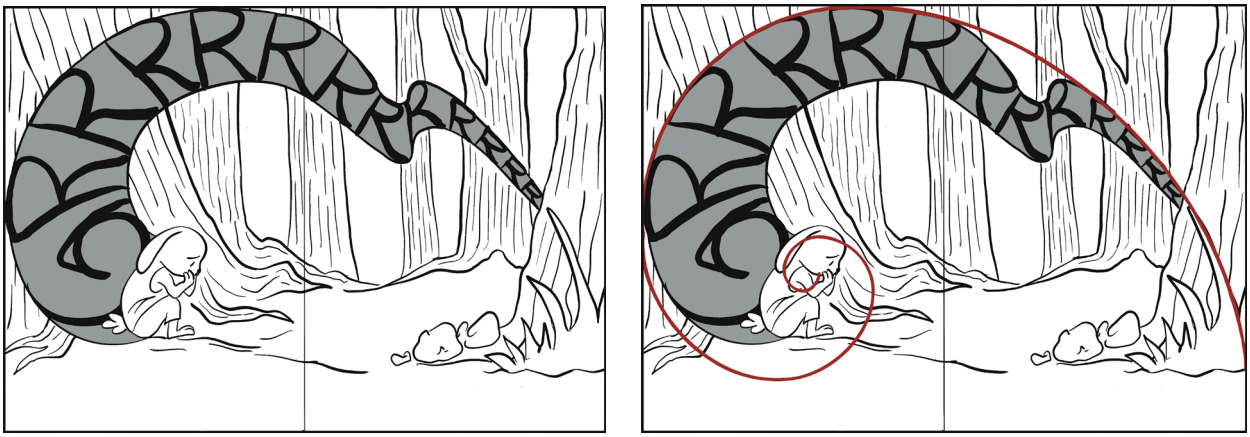


Figure 4.70: Sample Application of The Golden Spiral (Fibonacci Spiral)

Illustrations Completed by Jayani Bagya

e) Radial Composition

What it is: The eye is guided in a circle within the frame, often by positioning characters or objects in a looped path.

When/Where to Use: To represent cycles, togetherness or continuity. Often used in bedtime stories or group scenes.

How it Works: Encourages re-reading by visually reinforcing circular journeys (e.g. stories that end where they began).

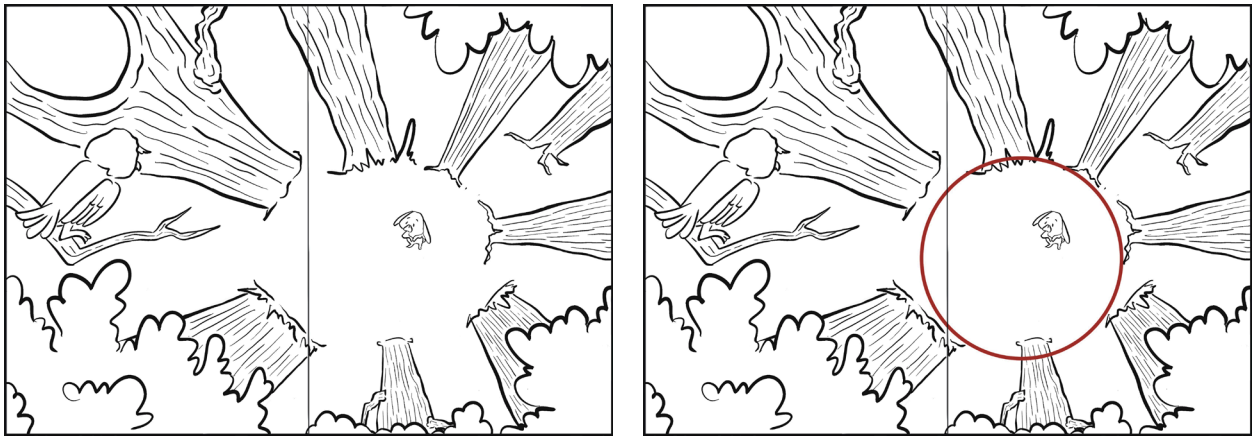


Figure 4.71: Sample Application of Radial Composition

f) The S-Curve (Line of Beauty)

What it is: A winding, sinuous line leading the eye through the composition.

When/Where to Use: To create elegance, calmness, or a sense of journey. Works well for nature illustrations (rivers, paths, hills).

How it Works: Helps slow the reader's gaze, making them linger on details and creating a sense of gentle movement.

Figure 4.72: Sample Application of The S-Curve (Line of Beauty)

g) The L-Shape

What it is: Composition shaped like the letter L, often with a vertical element anchoring one side and a horizontal element grounding the bottom.

When/Where to Use: To frame action, create stability, or highlight contrast between a character and setting.

How it Works: Useful in domestic or classroom scenes, where walls and floors form natural L-shapes, giving children a sense of structure and space.

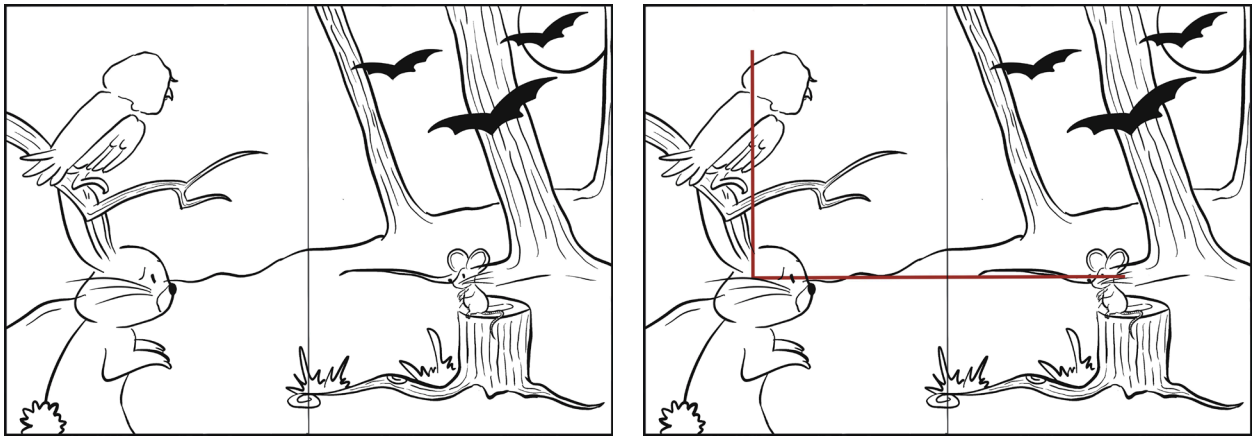


Figure 4.73: Sample Application of The L-Shape

h) Centralized/ Symmetrical Composition

What it is: Main subject is placed at the center, with balance on both sides.

When/Where to Use: For emphasis, iconic moments, or character introductions.

How it Works: Works well on covers, opening spreads, or moments where the protagonist is most powerful.

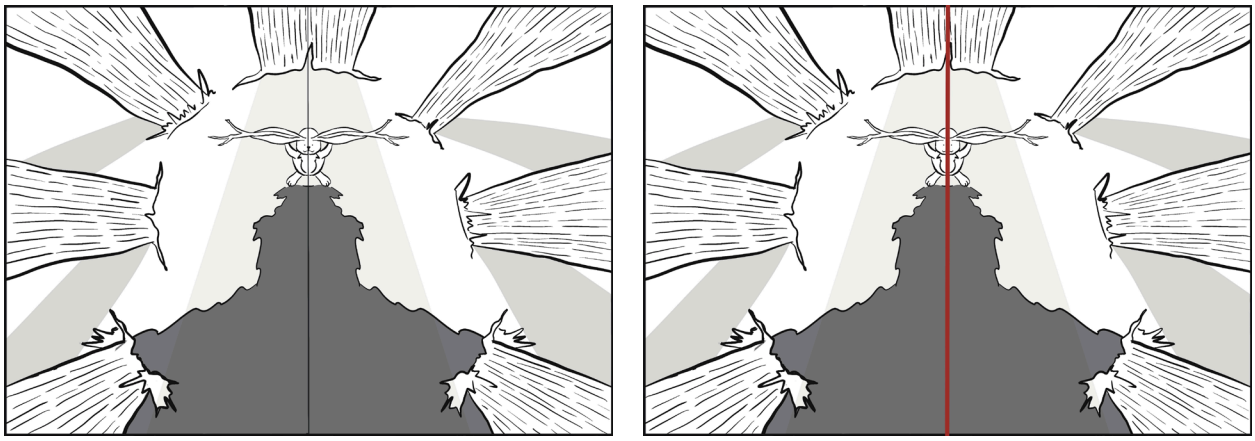


Figure 4.74: Sample Application of The Rule of Thirds

Illustrations Completed by Jayani Bagya

i) Diagonal Composition

What it is: A framing that places elements along diagonal lines, creating energy, motion and instability.

When/Where to Use: To suggest action or tension, breaking away from static, symmetrical arrangements.

How it Works: Makes pages feel active and dynamic, while conveying struggle or instability in action scenes.

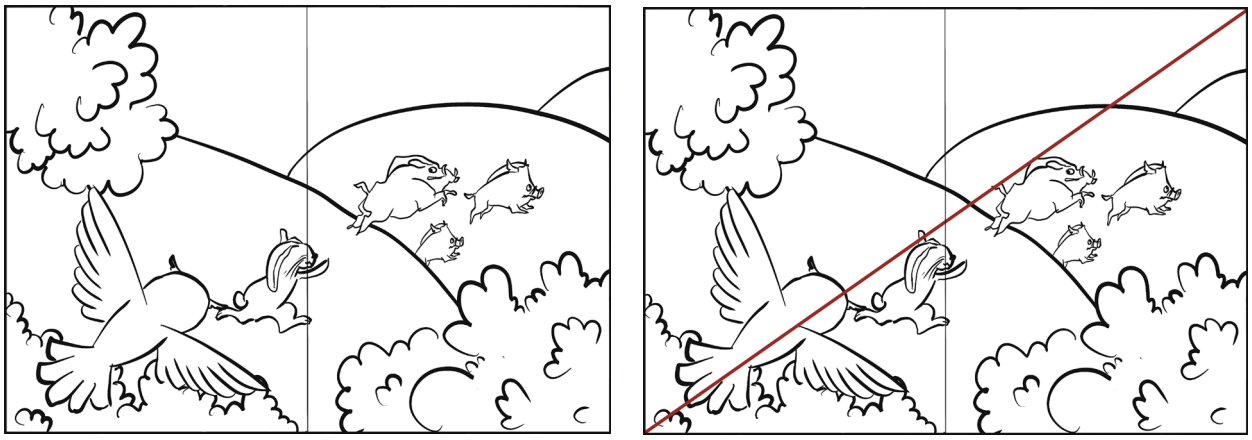


Figure 4.75: Sample Application of Diagonal Composition

j) Perspective (Linear/Depth Perspective)

What it is: A framing that uses vanishing points and converging lines to create depth and a three-dimensional sense of space.

When/Where to Use: To establish setting with depth, show scale between characters and environment, and guide the eye toward a focal point.

How it Works: Creates immersion by giving children a sense of space and journey, as if they could step into the page.

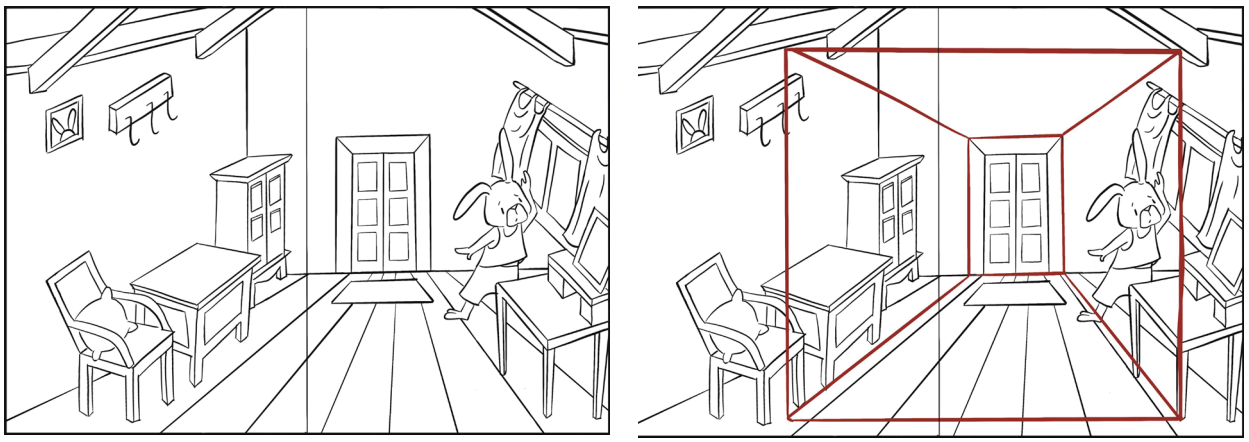


Figure 4.76: Sample Application of Perspective (Linear/Depth Perspective)

4.5.2 Illustration Layout Styles in Children's Storybooks

Just as visual perspectives shape how a scene is framed, illustration layout techniques determine how images and text are arranged across the book. Layout choices influence pacing, rhythm, mood, and how children experience the story on each page. A variety of approaches can be used, either individually or in combination, to create visual variety and keep the reading experience engaging.

Below are common illustration layout techniques used in children's storybooks:

a) Spot Illustrations

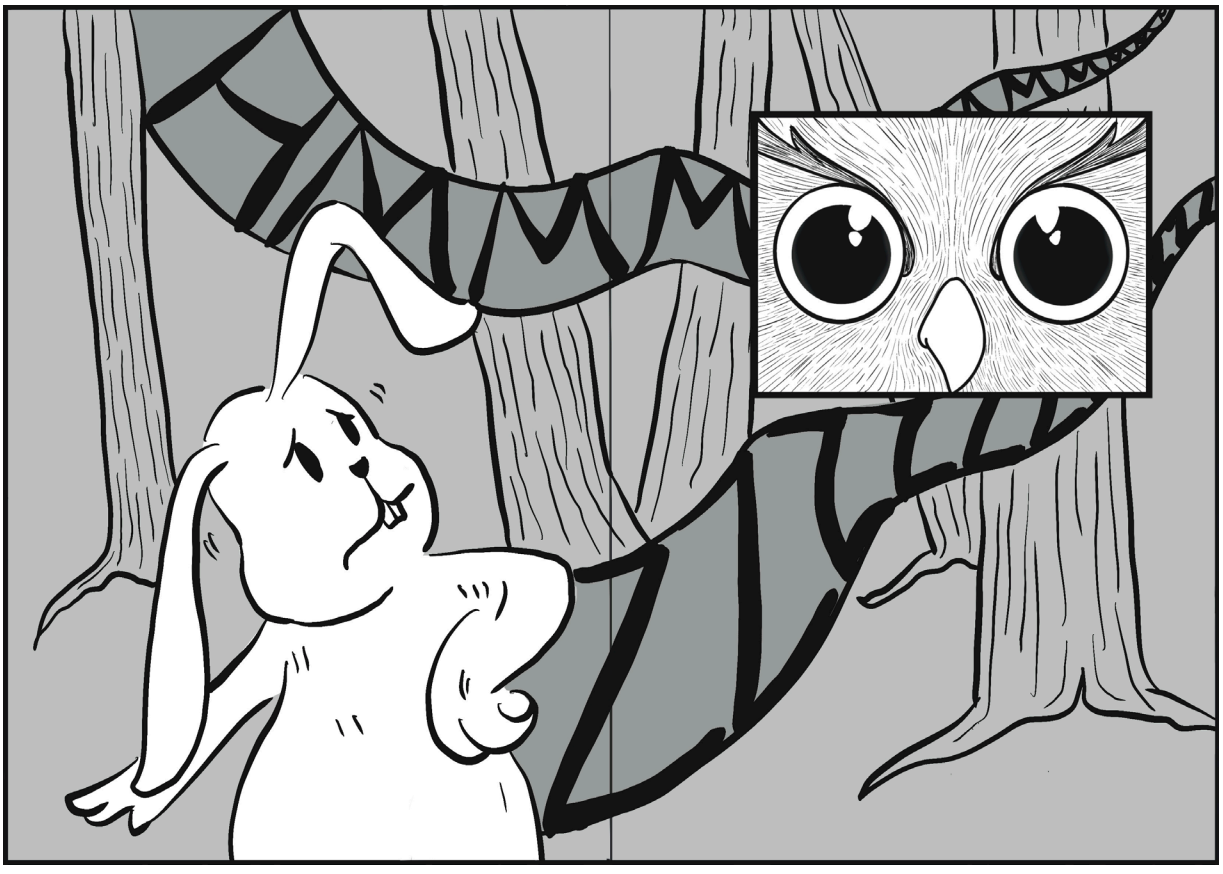
What is it: Small, self-contained images that "float" on a page without a full background or border. Usually depict one object, character or action.

When/Where to Use:

- To highlight specific objects or details.
- To break up text-heavy pages and add lightness.
- Effective in episodic or humorous stories with repeated actions.

How it Works:

- Spots keep pages clean and uncluttered, leaving room for text and white space.
- They help children focus on one element at a time, aiding comprehension.
- Commonly used in activity-based books or books for very young children.



Illustrations Completed by Jayani Bagya

Figure 4.77: Sample Application of Spots

b) Panels

What is it: Divisions within a page or spread that separate the story into distinct frames, similar to a comic strip. Each panel captures a specific moment or perspective (Figure 4.78).

When/Where to Use:

- To depict sequential action clearly (e.g. a character moving step by step).
- To show multiple perspectives in a single scene (e.g. action and reaction).
- To control pacing, especially in humorous or action-driven stories.

How it Works:

- Panels guide the eye in a set reading order, supporting narrative flow.
- The number of panels affects pacing: more panels slow the action; fewer panels speed it up.
- Often used in hybrid forms between picture books and comics/graphic novels, appealing to slightly older children.

c) Vignettes

What is it: Illustrations that softly fade into the page background without defined edges or borders (Figure 4.79).

When/Where to Use:

- To create a gentle, dreamlike effect.
- Suitable for reflective, quiet, or bedtime stories.
- Effective when emphasizing mood rather than action.

How it Works:

- Vignettes reduce visual clutter, giving a softer atmosphere.
- They guide attention to characters or objects without overwhelming young readers.
- Useful for transitions or to signal moments of calm.

d) Full-Page Illustrations

What is it: A single illustration that fills an entire page (Figure 4.80).

When/Where to Use:

- To emphasize a key narrative moment or turning point.
- For dramatic or emotional highlights in the story.

How it Works:

- Create impact and give weight to the scene.
- Ideal for moments of surprise, discovery, or confrontation.
- Encourage children to pause and absorb the imagery.

e) Double-Page Spreads

What is it: One illustration stretching seamlessly across two facing pages (Figure 4.81).

When/Where to Use:

- To show scale, environment or immersive scenes (e.g. forests, oceans, cities).
- For climaxes or big reveals in the story.

How it Works:

- Double spreads immerse the reader fully in the story world.
- They highlight "wow" moments and make stories feel expansive.
- Often used for establishing shots or emotional peaks

f) Inset Illustrations

What is it: Smaller illustrations placed inside or on top of a larger illustration, like "windows" into another detail or perspective (Figure 4.82).

When/Where to Use:

- To show side actions, details, or multiple layers of a story.
- Effective in teaching books or stories with parallel events.

How it Works:

- They allow the main story to continue while adding side information.
- Help younger readers notice secondary actions or details.
- Keep the narrative engaging without losing the main visual focus.

g) Bleed Illustrations

What is it: Illustrations that extend all the way to the edge of the page, leaving no margin or white space (Figure 4.83).

When/Where to Use:

- For immersive or dramatic scenes.
- Effective in showing environments like skies, seas, or wide landscapes.

How it Works:

- Creates a sense of scale and openness.
- Draws children into the world of the story by eliminating boundaries.
- Often used for high-energy or climactic pages.

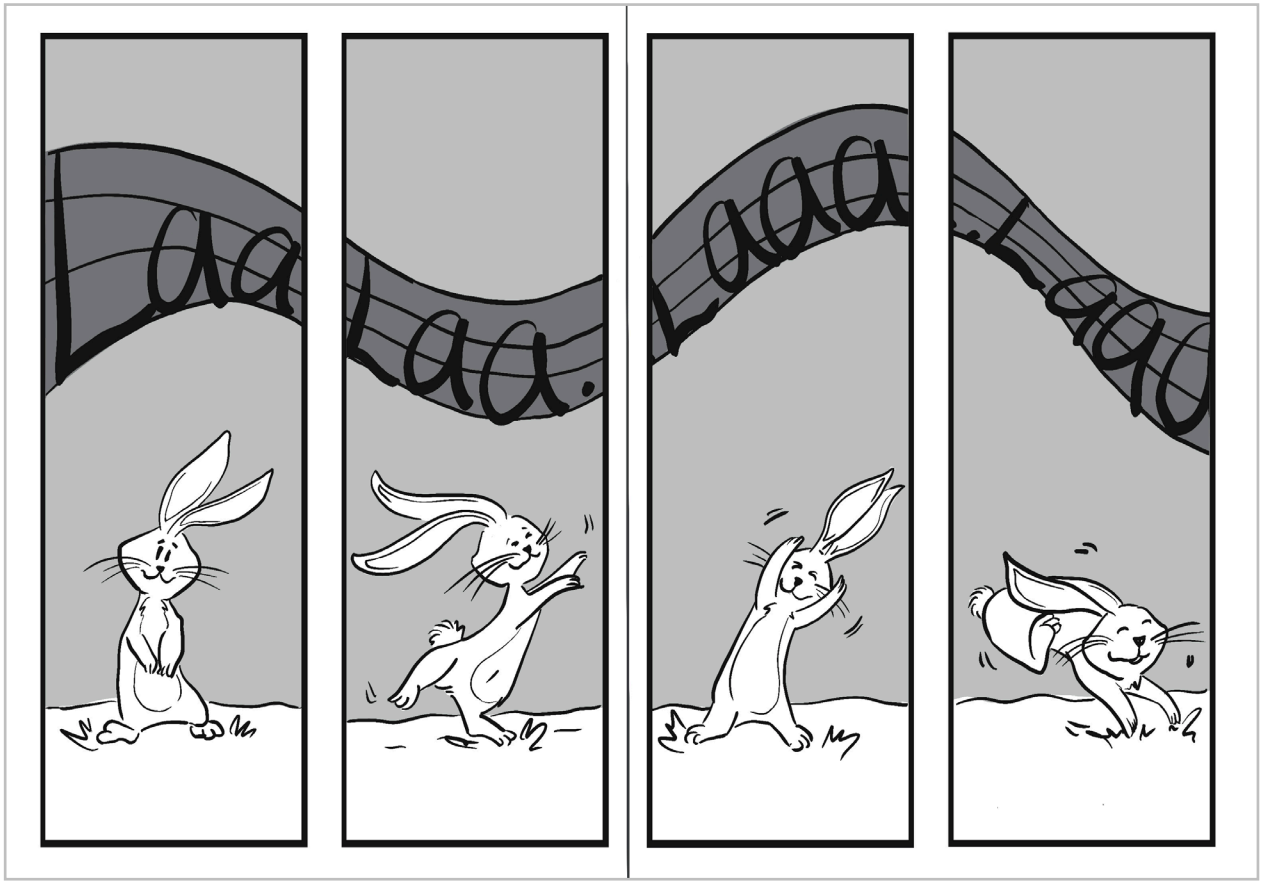


Figure 4.78: Sample Application of Panels

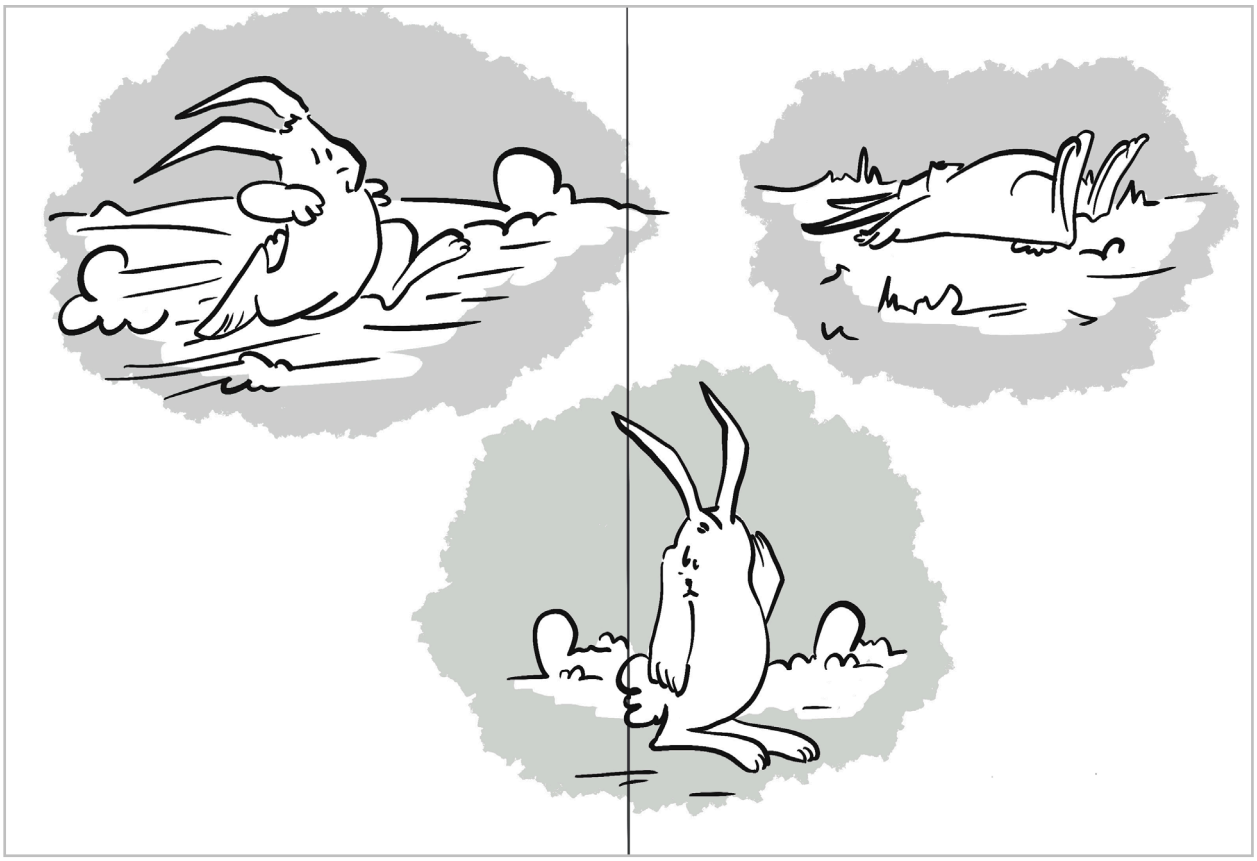


Figure 4.79: Sample Application of Vignettes

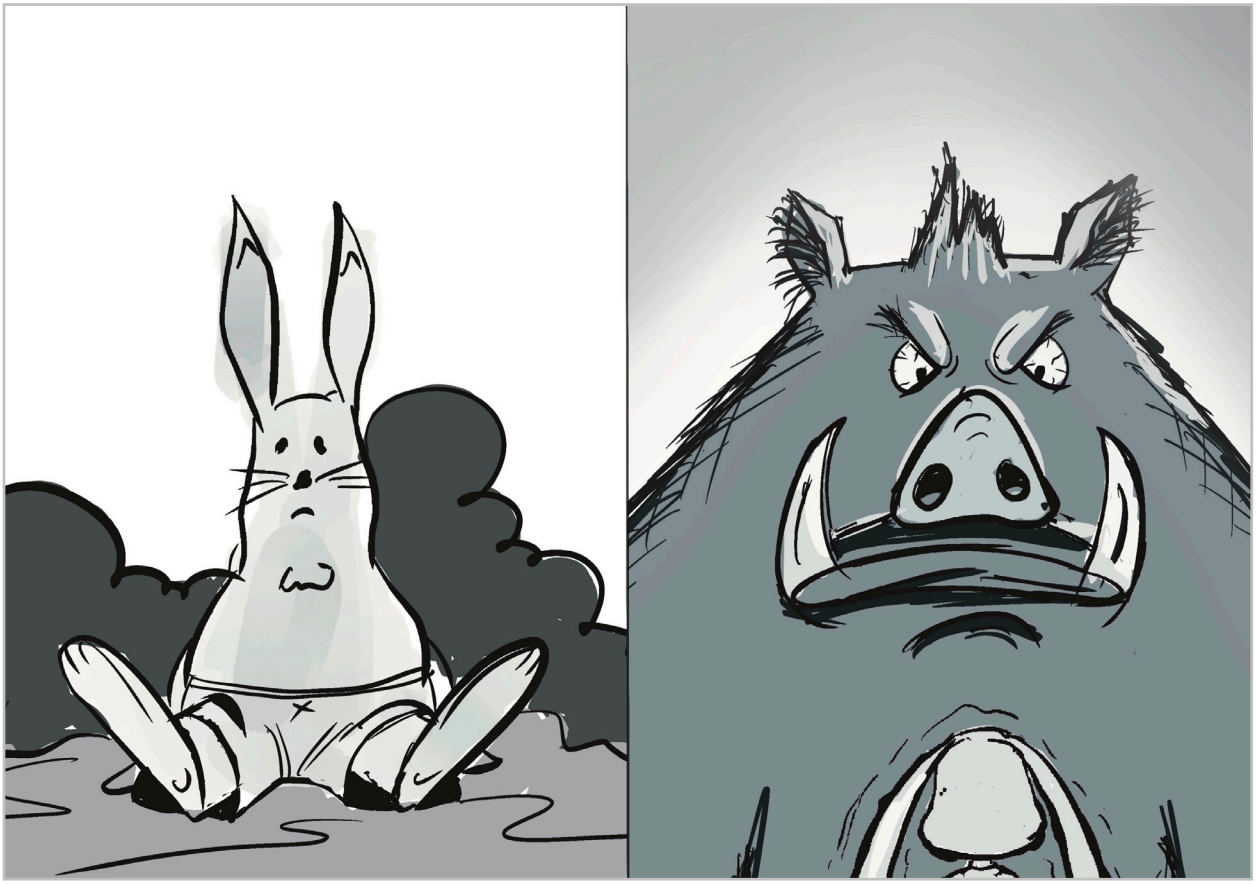


Figure 4.80: Sample Application of Full-Page Illustrations

Figure 4.81: Sample Application of Double-Page Spreads

Illustrations Completed by Jayani Bagya

Figure 4.82: Sample Application of Inset Illustrations

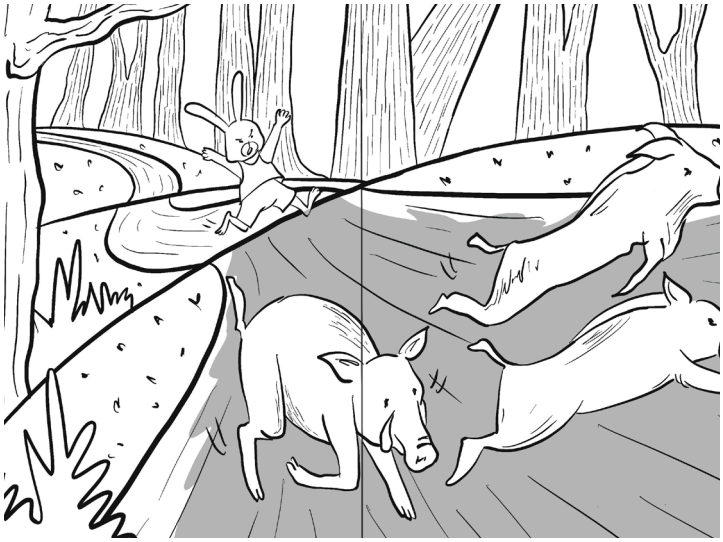


Figure 4.83: Sample Application of Bleed Illustrations

Figure 4.84: Sample Application of Framed Illustrations

Illustrations Completed by Jayani Bagya and Sajitha Vimukthi

Figure 4.85 Sample Application of Decorative Motifs / Borders

h) Framed Illustrations

What is it: Illustrations contained within a clear border or frame, leaving margins around the image (Figure 4.87).

When/Where to Use:

- To create structure and order.
- Often used in traditional, classical, or folktale-style books.

How it Works:

- Frames help focus attention within a defined area.
- They slow the reader's gaze, giving the story a more formal rhythm.
- Particularly effective in books that want to evoke heritage or timelessness.

i) Decorative Motifs / Borders

What is it: Repeated small illustrations, patterns, or borders that frame or decorate a page. (Figure 4.88)

When/Where to Use:

- To add visual continuity across the book.
- To highlight cultural, thematic, simple or symbolic motifs (e.g. local motif designs, simple tape).

How it Works:

- Serve as subtle storytelling devices, reinforcing themes.
- Create a sense of familiarity through repetition.
- Work especially well in chapter books, folktales, or nonfiction.

4.5.3 Visual Angles and Framing in Children's Book Illustration

Angles and framing, adapted from the visual language of photography and film, shape how children experience a story visually. The choice of viewpoint influences mood, scale, empathy, and immersion — guiding how the reader relates to characters and events. By shifting the angle, a character may appear small or powerful, an emotion may be heightened, or the reader may be invited to step directly into the character's world. Just as layout styles arrange words and images on the page, framing choices add emotional nuance and narrative depth, ensuring that each moment in the story feels distinct and engaging for young readers. Below are eight key visual angles commonly used in children's books:

a) Bird's-Eye View (High Angle from Above)

What they are: The scene is shown from directly above, as if the reader is looking down from the sky. This flattens perspective and emphasizes space, showing relationships between objects and characters (Figure 4.86).

When/where to use:

- To establish a setting or environment.
- To show scale — making a character look small within a vast world.
- To create feelings of vulnerability, isolation, or being overwhelmed.

Effect in children's books: Helps young readers understand scale and space, while conveying vulnerability or isolation.

b) Worm's-Eye View (Low Angle from Below)

What they are: The scene is viewed from below, looking upward at characters or objects. It exaggerates vertical scale, making figures loom large (Figure 4.87).

When/where to use:

- To show strength, authority or intimidation.
- To make the reader share the awe or fear of a character.
- To dramatize encounters with powerful forces.

Effect in children's books: Builds drama and tension; makes the reader feel awe or fear alongside the character.

c) Over-the-Shoulder Shot

What they are: The reader sees a scene from behind a character, looking over their shoulder into what they are facing (Figure 4.88).

When/where to use:

- To immerse the reader directly in the character's viewpoint.
- To reveal discoveries or dangers as the character encounters them.
- To create suspense or empathy.

Effect in children's books: Builds empathy by letting children "see through the character's eyes," creating deeper identification.

d) Mid Shot (Medium Shot)

What they are: A framing that shows a character from the waist up, balancing focus between expression and context (Figure 4.89).

When/where to use:

- For dialogue or interaction between characters.
- To capture emotional exchanges while still including background detail.
- To create a conversational, accessible perspective.

Effect in children's books: Makes character interactions clear while still situating them in context.

e) Close-Up

What they are: A tight framing that focuses on a character's face or an important object, cutting away background detail (Figure 4.90).

When/where to use:

- To highlight emotion (fear, joy, determination).
- To emphasize key story elements (a note, a tool, a clue).
- To slow the pace and make the reader focus on one detail.

Effect in children's books: Draws attention immediately, making emotions or objects more memorable.

f) Extreme Close-Up

What they are: An even tighter focus that frames only a small part of a face or object — such as eyes, hands, or a single feature (Figure 4.91).

When/where to use:

- To intensify suspense or drama.
- To foreshadow something important.
- To draw attention to a symbolic or emotional detail.

Effect in children's books: Heightens curiosity and encourages children to notice significant visual cues.

g) Long Shot (Wide Shot)

What they are: A framing that shows the full character within their environment, emphasizing setting and spatial relationships (Figure 4.92).

When/where to use:

- To establish place, atmosphere, or transitions between scenes.
- To contrast the scale of the character against their surroundings.
- To highlight a character's journey or obstacle.

Effect in children's books: Grounds the reader in place and time, showing how the character relates to the larger world.

h) Point-of-View (POV) Shot

What they are: A framing that shows the scene exactly as the character sees it, placing the reader inside the character's perspective (Figure 4.93).

When/where to use:

- To immerse the reader in the character's experience.
- For moments of discovery, fear, or triumph.
- To build empathy and direct identification with the protagonist.

Effect in children's books: Creates strong immersion, helping children feel part of the story and encouraging empathy with the protagonist.

i) Diagonal Composition

What they are: A framing that places characters, objects, or environments along diagonal lines rather than vertical or horizontal axes. This creates a sense of energy, motion and instability in the composition (Figure 4.94).

When/where to use:

- To suggest action, dynamism, or tension.
- To break away from static, symmetrical arrangements.
- To create drama in chase, conflict, or transitional scenes.

Effect in children's books: Diagonal compositions make pages feel active and alive, guiding children's eyes across the illustration in a dynamic way. They can also convey instability or struggle, adding emotional weight to action scenes.

j) Perspective (Linear/Depth Perspective)

What they are: A framing that uses vanishing points and converging lines to create the illusion of depth and distance. Perspective places characters within a three-dimensional space, making the scene feel realistic and immersive (Figure 4.95).

When/where to use:

- To establish setting with depth, such as forests, fields, or pathways.
- To show scale relationships between characters and their environment.
- To guide the reader's eye toward a focal point or destination.

Effect in children's books: Perspective creates immersion by giving children a sense of space and journey. It helps them feel as though they could step into the page and follow the character's path.

Figure 4.86: Sample Application of Bird's-Eye View

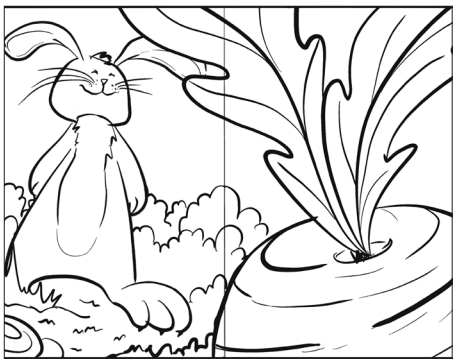


Figure 4.87: Sample Application of Worm's-Eye View

Figure 4.88: Sample Application of Over-the-Shoulder

Figure 4.89: Sample Application of Medium Shot

Figure 4.90: Sample Application of Close-Up

Figure 4.91: Sample Application of Extreme Close-Up

Figure 4.92: Sample Application of Long/Wide Shot

Figure 4.93: Sample Application of Point-of-View

Illustrations Completed by Jayani Bagya

4.6 Power of Typography and Cover

Placement, Legibility and Expression

4.6.1 What is the Role of Text in Children's Fiction?

In children's fiction, text is more than a vehicle for storytelling — it is a tool for language learning and literacy development. Letters, words and sentences introduce children to the building blocks of language while guiding them through rhythm, sound, and meaning. The role of text in picture books extends beyond narrative delivery; it shapes how children see, hear, and eventually use language themselves.

Fiction and Language Acquisition

Children's fiction provides an ideal context for acquiring new language because words are introduced naturally within a meaningful narrative. When children encounter unfamiliar vocabulary in the flow of a story, the surrounding text and illustrations support their understanding, making learning intuitive rather than forced. This contextual exposure encourages curiosity and strengthens memory.

a) Phonemic Awareness and Word Recognition

Phonemic awareness is the ability to recognize and manipulate sounds in spoken words. Rhythmic, rhyming, and repetitive text patterns help children connect letters to sounds, improving early decoding skills.

For example, playful alliteration ("Benny bounces bravely") makes sounds memorable. Pairing words with visual cues reinforces recognition — children can link the word "rabbit" directly with Benny's picture, solidifying both sound and meaning (Figure 4.94).

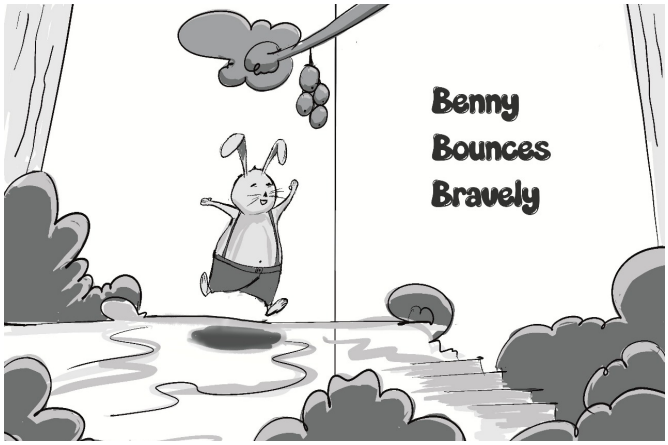


Figure 4.94: Sample Application from Benny; Pairing Words with Visual Cues

b) Vocabulary Growth and Syntax Development

Figure 4.95: Sample Application from Benny; Use of Descriptive Language

Vocabulary growth involves learning new words, while syntax development relates to how words are combined into sentences. Stories naturally expand vocabulary by embedding unfamiliar words within context. Syntax is modeled through varied sentence structures — from simple, repetitive patterns that support beginning readers, to more complex forms that challengeolder children.

Illustrations anchor abstract words in concrete imagery. A sentence like "The owl's wisdom shone in the dark" is clearer when paired with a picture of a glowing-eyed owl, helping children decode metaphorical or descriptive language (Figure 4.95).

c) Reading Comprehension & Inferencing Skills

Figure 4.96: Sample Application from Benny; Text Compliments with Visual

Comprehension is the ability to understand text, while inferencing is the skill of drawing conclusions beyond what is explicitly written. Children's stories train comprehension through engaging plots and familiar contexts. Repeated story structures (e.g. "problem - struggle - solution") help readers anticipate outcomes. Inferencing grows when children connect words to illustrations and use prior knowledge to fill in gaps. Text and pictures together encourage children to "read between the lines."

For instance, if Benny trembles but the text doesn't explicitly say he is scared, the illustration conveys the emotion, prompting inference (Figure 4.96).

Illustrations Completed by Sajitha Vimukthi

4.6.2 Text Placement in Children's Books

The placement of text in a children's picture book is as important as the choice of words and illustrations. Effective placement ensures that the text remains readable, visually balanced, and integrated with the artwork, supporting both narrative clarity and aesthetic appeal. Poor placement can confuse readers, obscure meaning, or create unnecessary visual strain.

a) Margins and White Space

Generous margins: Adequate margins (top, bottom, inner, and outer) create breathing space around the text, preventing words from feeling crowded or pressed against illustrations.

White space as design: Margins are not wasted space — they frame the story, provide pause points, and give young readers time to absorb both image and text.

Consistency: Margins should remain consistent across spreads to establish rhythm and predictability, which helps children navigate the book comfortably.

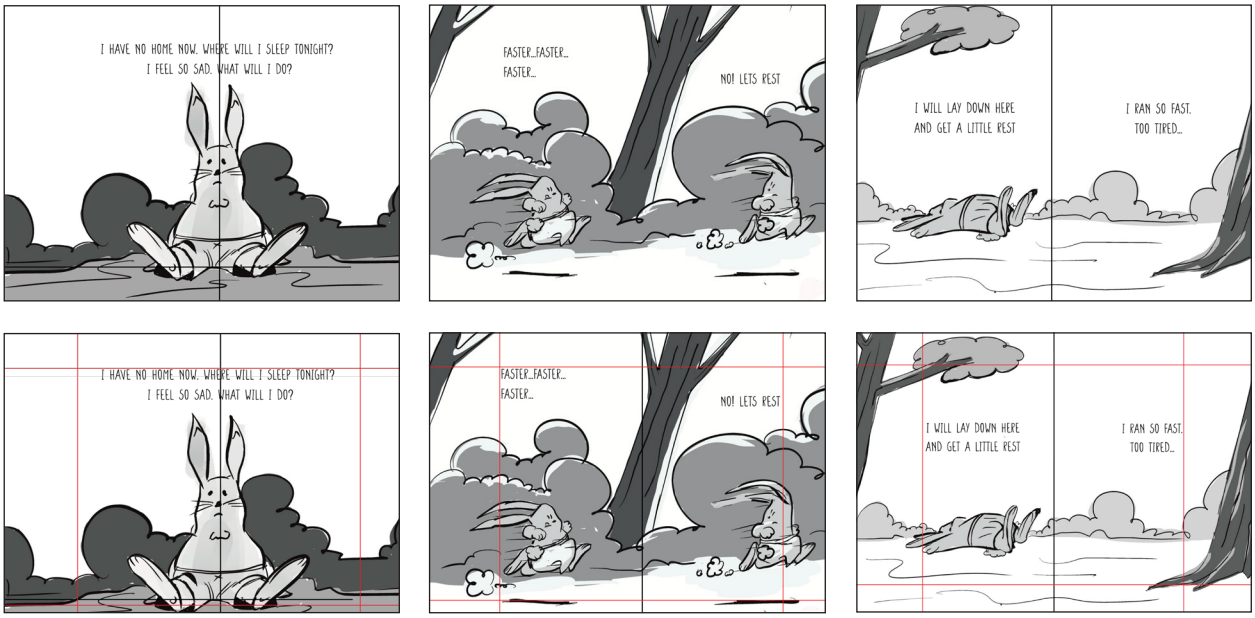


Figure 4.97: Sample Application from Benny; on the Importance of Maintaining Margins and Whilte Space

b) Placement Within the Spread

Integration with illustrations: Text should complement, not compete with, the artwork. Place text in areas of calm background (sky, open ground, soft gradients) rather than over busy details.

Avoiding disruption: Never place words where they obscure a character's face, important action, or symbolic element of the story.

Flow with composition: Placement should respect the natural eye path, which usually moves left to right and top to bottom. This supports smooth reading and prevents cognitive overload.

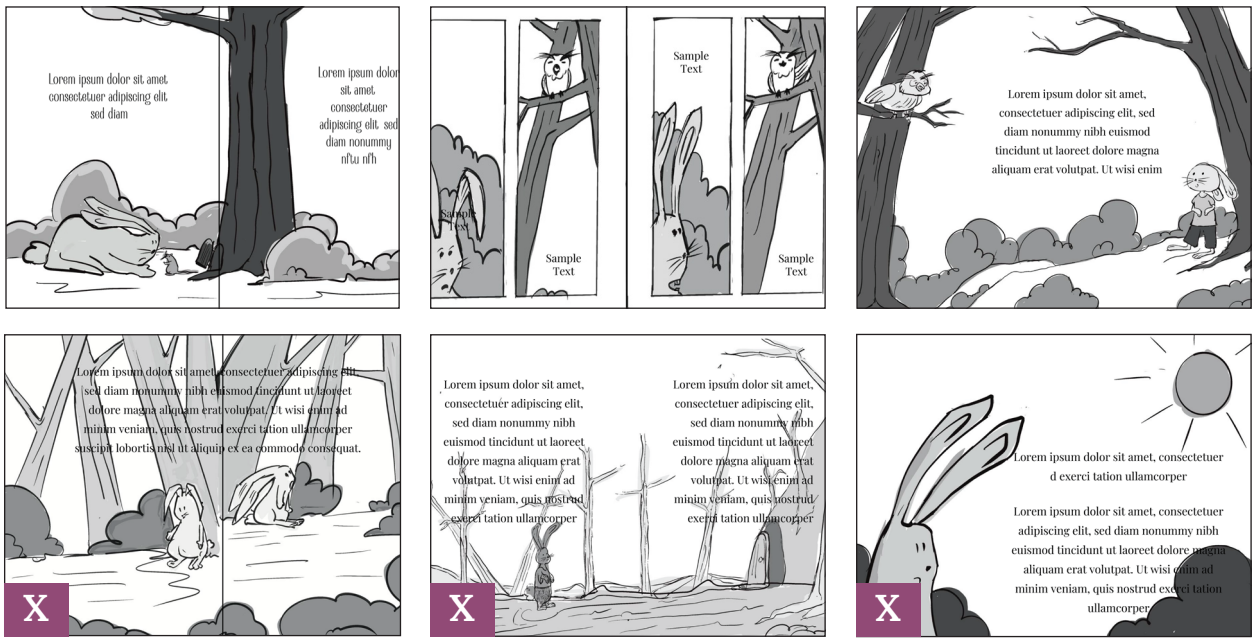


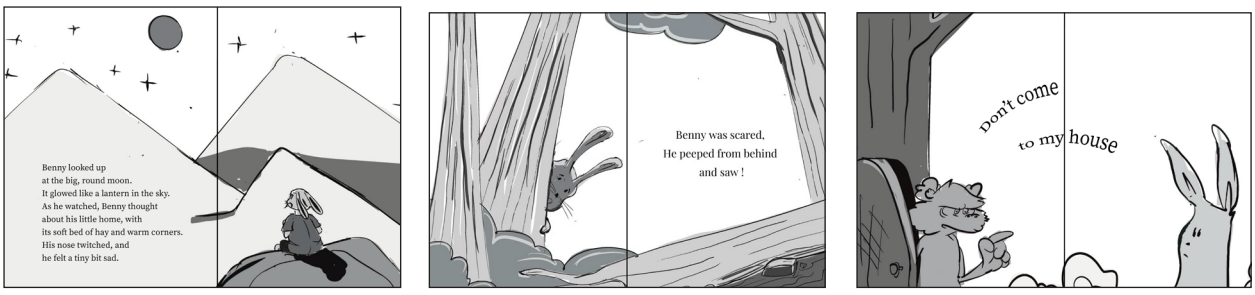
Figure 4 98: Sample Application from Benny; on Placing Text on Calm Backgrounds

c) Alignment and Positioning

Left-aligned text blocks are the most readable for body copy, especially for emergent readers.

Centered placement can be used sparingly for emphasis (titles, standalone sentences, or poetic effects).

Creative positioning (curved lines, diagonals, or wrapping around illustrations) can enhance expressiveness, but should be used consciously and sparingly, ensuring legibility remains intact.



a b c

Figure 4.99: Sample Application from Benny; a. Left-Alignment, b. Centre-Alignment, c. Creative Positioning

Illustrations Completed by Sajitha Vimukthi

d) Balancing Text and Illustration

Proportion: Neither text nor image should dominate the spread entirely; both should share the stage.

Hierarchy: Larger illustrations with smaller text emphasize imagery; more text with smaller images shifts focus to narrative. Designers should balance this hierarchy depending on the story's tone and purpose.

Page turns: Consider placement near page turns — text positioned near the right margin can build suspense, encouraging children to flip to the next page.

a b c

Figure 4.100: Sample Application from Benny; a.Proportion, b.Hierarchy, c.Page Turn

4.6.3 Legibility in Typography

Typography in children's fiction must balance creativity with readability. Legible text supports language development, reduces strain, and allows children to focus on story meaning rather than struggling with form. Below are four core aspects of legibility in picture books.

a) Reading Direction and Text Alignment

In Sri Lanka, children read left-to-right whether in Sinhala, Tamil, or English. Alignment therefore plays a central role in supporting eye flow. Unless deliberately designed for visual play, text should be placed to guide, not challenge the natural reading angle.

Left-aligned text provides a consistent anchor, making it easier for children to locate each line's starting point.

Center-aligned text can be effective for titles or captions but disrupts flow in longer passages.

Justified text often introduces uneven spacing ("rivers") that interrupts rhythm and should be avoided unless carefully managed.

b) Typeface, Letterforms and Handwriting

The selection of typeface shapes how children perceive and recognize letters.

Clarity of letter anatomy is critical: In Sinhala, the distinguishing strokes of wa and cha are essential; in Tamil, loops and tails matter for recognition; in Latin, features like the vertical stem of d or the bowl of a help differentiate letters.

Weight and height: Choose moderate letter weight (neither too thin nor too bold) and consistent x-height to support readability. Oversized decorative capitals or compressed tall letters can distort recognition.

Handwritten styles: These can feel familiar and friendly, but script-like or highly cursive forms blur recognition. If handwriting is used, it must respect letter anatomy and maintain consistent spacing.

Avoid overly decorative fonts. Fonts with excessive flourishes, distortion, or texture reduce clarity and slow down young readers.

c) Colour and Contrast

Colour choices must support text clarity rather than distract.

Contrast is essential: Text should maintain at least a 4.5:1 ratio against its background.

Hue: Avoid placing words over busy illustrations or using similar foreground and background hues.

White Text: White text on dark backgrounds is effective when type size and weight are balanced.

Colour to emphasis: Colour can be used sparingly for emphasis (e.g. highlighting a sound word like BOOM), but readability must remain primary.

d) Digital Typesetting and Layout

With many children's books read digitally, electronic placement of text demands careful control:

Line length: Keep a conformable line length to ensure comfort towards eye movement.

Spacing: Use generous line spacing (leading) to avoid crowding, especially with reversed (light-on-dark) text.

Scalability: Test legibility across print and screens, including thumbnails, where text must remain recognizable.

Digital tools: (InDesign, CSS/HTML for e-books) allow precise adjustment of weight, kerning, and line height — these must be optimized for children's age and developmental stage.

4.6.4 Expressive Typography in Children's Books

While legibility and placement ensure that children can read comfortably, expressive typography adds energy, voice, and emotion to the page. In picture books, typography often works as a visual performance of the text, reinforcing meaning through size, shape, rhythm, or motion.

a) The Role of Expressive Typography

- Amplifies the story's voice: Typography can whisper, shout, bounce, or sing depending on how it is styled.
- Connects sound to sight: Enlarged words (BOOM!, WHOOSH!) or wavering letters can visually echo the sounds they describe, linking phonemic awareness to visual play.
- Guides pacing: Bold, large text slows readers down, while scattered or cascading words speed the eye across the page.
- Supports engagement: Expressive text invites children to read aloud with enthusiasm, turning the act of reading into play.

b) Methods of Expressive Typography

- Size and Scale: Enlarging key words emphasizes drama (BIG, HELP!) while shrinking text suggests quietness or whispers.
- Shape and Layout: Words can follow curves, zig-zags, spirals, or waves to mirror action (e.g. a rabbit hopping).
- Rhythm and Repetition: Repeated words (run, run, run) create urgency, while patterned placement mimics sound or motion.
- Integration with Illustration: Expressive typography often blends with imagery, e.g. letters shaped as smoke rising or splashes of water.

c) Balance Between Expression and Readability

- Creativity must not overwhelm clarity — children must still be able to recognize and decode the letters.
- Expressive typography is best reserved for key moments (climaxes, sound effects, emotional peaks) rather than applied to all text.
- Designers should test readability at full size and thumbnail to ensure playful arrangements don't obscure meaning.

Figure 4.101: Sample Application from Benny; on the Role of Expressive Typography

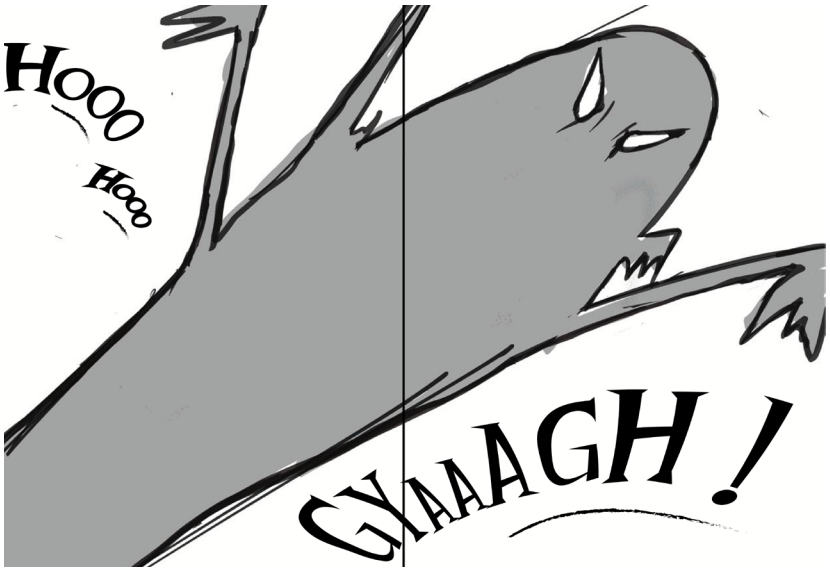


Figure 4.103: Sample Application from Benny; on How Expressive Typography Creates Drama

HOOO

4.6.5 What is the difference Between a Cover and a Title?

The Cover

The cover of a children's book is its first storytelling moment. It is more than packaging — it is the visual handshake between the book and its reader. A well-designed cover signals the mood, genre, and central character or theme at a glance. For children, the cover often decides whether they reach out to the book on a shelf or scroll toward it in a digital catalogue. For adults — parents, librarians and teachers — it conveys professionalism, quality, and appeal. The cover integrates illustration, typography and design to make the story visible even before the first page is turned.

The Title

The title is the verbal identity of the book. It is the first piece of text that readers, editors, and booksellers encounter, and it serves as both a promise and an invitation. A good title must be short enough to remember, easy for a child to say aloud, and strong enough to stand out among thousands of others. It can be playful, suspenseful, descriptive, or poetic — but it must always reflect the heart of the story. Like the cover, the title is a marketing tool as much as a creative choice: it is the "ten-second advertisement" that makes someone want to open the book.

How They Work Together

The cover and the title are inseparable partners. The title states the promise, while the cover shows it visually. Together, they communicate the essence of the story before the first word of the manuscript is read. A suspenseful title should be matched with artwork that teases or intrigues; a humorous title needs imagery that conveys energy and playfulness. If the two are mismatched — for example, a lighthearted title with dark, heavy cover art — the reader may be confused and disengaged. But when they are aligned, the synergy is powerful: the title gives the child something to say.

Quick takeaway!

Connection Between Cover vs Title

Aspect	Cover	Title
Definition	The book's visual front — illustration, typography and design combined.	The book's verbal identity — the main text label that names the story.
First Impression	The first image a reader sees.	The first words a reader hears or reads.
Primary Role	To show the mood, genre, character, and story visually.	To state the promise of the story in concise, memorable language.
Audience Effect	Attracts attention, sparks curiosity, and signals tone to children and adults.	Creates expectation, builds intrigue, and makes the book easy to remember.
Design Role	Integrates art, color, typography,and composition.	Relies on language, rhythm, sound and clarity.
Marketing Value	Functions as a visual advertisement on shelves and online.	Serves as a verbal hook, slogan, or "ten-second advertisement."
Child's Response	Gives the child something to look at and recognize.	Gives the child something to say and request aloud.

4.6.6 Cover for a Children's Book: Criteria for Success

If the title is the verbal promise of a book, the cover is the visual delivery of that promise. Beyond being decorative, the cover functions as a system of communication — front, spine, and back — each part reinforcing the same message. A successful children's book cover balances creativity with clarity, immediately signaling to both children and adults what kind of story lies within. It is important to note that the cover must be attractive, functional, and accessible. It is not just the exterior of the book but the first page of the story, offering a visual invitation to read further. Key Criteria for an Effective Cover:

a) Front Cover

Establish a clear focal point (often the main character or a key action). Use a strong silhouette, a limited and high-contrast palette, and ensure the title remains readable against the artwork. Author and illustrator names should be placed with care, and optional series identifiers can support branding.

b) Spine

Keep the title brief and highly legible, even at reduced sizes. The spine should also carry the publisher's imprint or logo for easy identification on library and bookstore shelves.

c) Back Cover/Jacket Flap

Provide a concise 40–60 word hook that highlights the story's essence. This space can also include a short author/illustrator bio, endorsements or awards, and the ISBN/barcode — but must retain breathing space to avoid clutter.

d) Accessibility

Ensure text maintains strong contrast with its background. Avoid setting words over busy illustrations and consider dyslexia-friendly choices in typography and spacing.

e) Thumbnail size

Reduce the design to 12–15% of its size — if the title is still readable and the subject recognizable, the cover is fit for both physical and digital marketplaces.

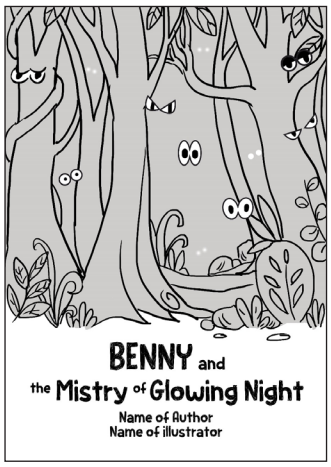
4.6.7 Titling a Children's Book: Criteria for Success

A children's book title is both a creative expression and a marketing tool. It must capture the heart of the story while appealing to children, adults, and the publishing industry. Ann Whitford Paul in her book 'Writing Picture Books' outlines 11 attributes of strong titles that can guide authors and illustrators when developing or evaluating their own. Also note that not every book title will meet all eleven criteria, but authors and illustrators should consider what and how they want to express their creation. The strongest titles balance brevity with memorability, mood with clarity, and creativity with marketability — ensuring the book stands out to both children and adults.

a) Brief

Children's book titles should be short enough to read at a glance and fit comfortably on a cover or spine. Brevity makes titles memorable and practical for catalogues, libraries and booksellers. For example, refer sample title for Benny the rabbit-'Fear'

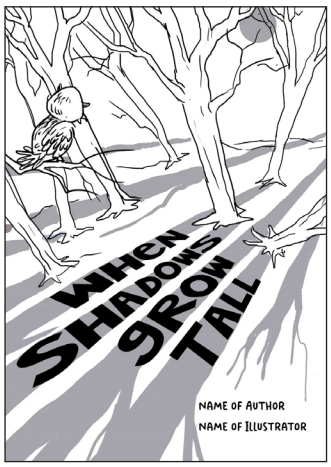
Figure 4.106: Sample Brief Title 'Fear'



b) Catchy

A catchy title has rhythm, melody, or playfulness that makes it fun to say and easy to recall. Alliteration, rhyme, or repetition often work well. These titles feel musical, which appeals to children who are attuned to sound. For example refer sample title for Benny the rabbit -'Benny and the Mistry of the Glowing Eyes'

Figure 4.107: Sample Brief Title 'Benny and the Mistry of the Glowing Eyes'



c) Unique

With thousands of new titles released each year, uniqueness is critical. A book title should not be easily confused with others on the market. Checking resources such as Books in Print or Amazon can help ensure originality. Application of unusual words and unexpected pairings helps the book stand out. For example, refer sample title for Benny the rabbit - When the Shaows Grow Tall'

Figure 4.108: Sample Brief Title 'When the Shadows Grow Tall'

d) Straightforward

A good title should reflect what happens in the story without misleading the reader. Clever wordplay that confuses or misdirects risks disappointment. It is best to clearly signals the theme and tone, avoiding unnecessary trickery. For example refer sample title for Benny the rabbit - 'Benny and the Scary Night'.

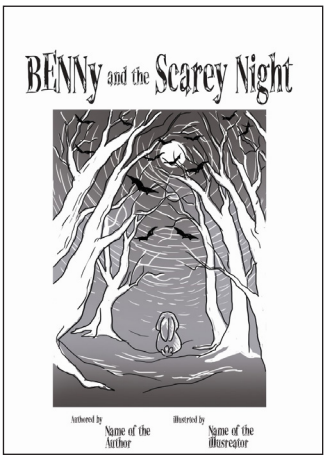


Figure 4.109: Sample brief title 'Benny and the Scary Night'.

e) Expressive

The title should convey the emotional tone of the book — whether funny, adventurous, sad, or lyrical. Mood-setting titles prepare children and adults for the kind of journey they are about to experience. For example refer sample title for Benny the rabbit -'Courage Beneath the Dark Night'.

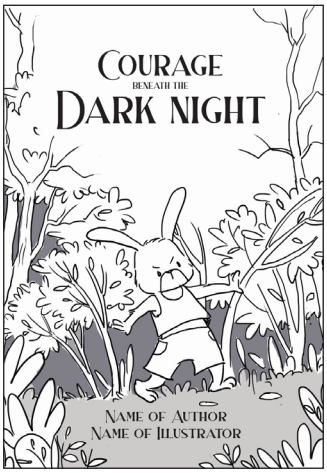


Figure 4.110: Sample brief title 'Courage Beneath the Dark Night'.

f) Hints at the Plot or Theme

Titles can act as a compass, giving readers a glimpse of what lies ahead without telling the whole story. For example refer sample title for Benny the rabbit - 'The Night Benny Took back His Garden'.

Figure 4.111: Sample brief title 'The Night Benny Took back His Garden'.

g) Doesn't Give Away the Ending

A strong title should entice curiosity without resolving the central conflict. If the title reveals too much, the reader loses motivation to explore. For instance, Oh, No! by Candace Fleming builds tension, but doesn't disclose the outcome. A sample title for Benny the rabbit would be -Benny's Night in the Forest'

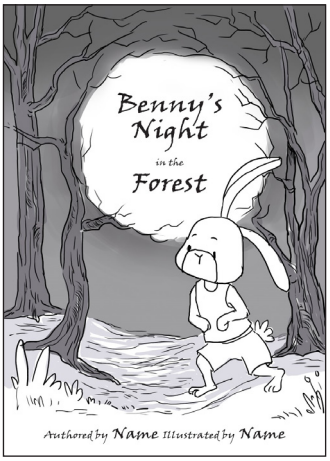
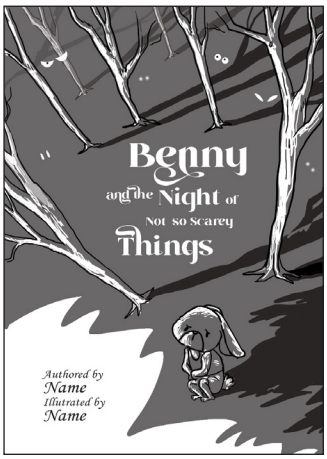


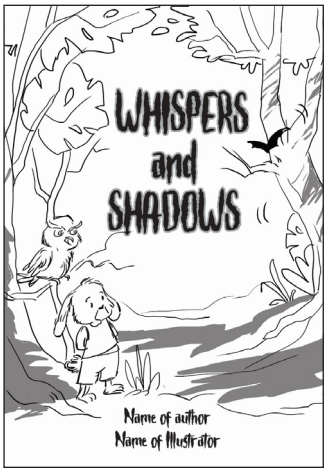
Figure 4.112: Sample brief title 'Benny's Night in the Forest'.



h) Suspenseful

Suspenseful titles invite questions: What will happen? Who is involved? What could go wrong? I Want My Hat Back by Jon Klassen intrigues readers immediately with its unresolved problem, encouraging them to turn the pages. Refer sample title for Benny the rabbit -'Benny and the Night of the Not-So-Scary Things'.

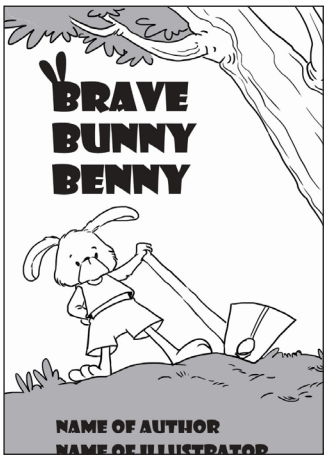
Figure 4.113: Sample brief title 'Benny and the Night of the Not-So-Scary Things'



i) Gives the Artist a Cover Idea

A title should spark imagery for the illustrator. It might suggest a scene, an object, or a character dynamic that can anchor the cover design. Sophie's Squash by Pat Zietlow Miller) practically demands that Sophie and her squash be pictured together on the jacket, helping the cover and title work as a pair. Refer a similar sample title from Benny the rabbit - 'Whispers and Shadows'.

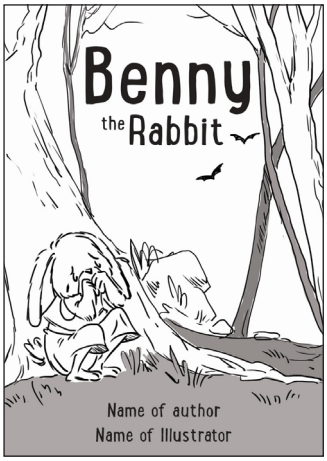
Figure 4.114: Sample brief title 'Whispers and Shadows'.



j) A Child Can Easily Say It

Because children often request books aloud, the title must be pronounceable, simple, and fun to repeat. Titles which are easy to say and roll off the tongue, make them accessible and appealing to young readers. For example refer sample title for Benny the rabbit -'Brave, Bunny, Benny'.

Figure 4.115: Sample brief title 'Brave, Bunny, Benny'.



k) Includes the Main Character's Name

Using the main character's name builds identity, memorability, and series potential. Such titles demonstrate how a distinctive character name can become a brand in itself. For less distinctive names, pairing with a clarifier works well — as in The Adventures of Benny. For example refer sample title for Benny the rabbit -Benny the Rabbit'.

Figure 4.116: Sample brief title 'Benny the Rabbit'.

Section 05

Section 05

From Script to Shelf

Collaborative Steps Toward Publication

Whether you are a writer, illustrator, editor, art director, publisher, educator, parent or anyone representing the publishing ecosystem, this section is designed to walk you through the entire production flow of a children's fiction book — from idea to publication, and beyond. It offers a stage-by-stage breakdown of how creative, editorial, legal, technical and promotional efforts come together to produce books that are developmentally enriching, inclusive, accessible and culturally meaningful.

Each of the eight stages outlined in this section is aligned with the National Policy for Children's Books, providing a unified framework for quality publishing. Each stage identifies key tasks, responsible stakeholders and reflective questions to guide decision-making. It emphasizes how every role contributes to fostering cognitive, literacy, imaginative, emotional and moral growth in young readers while ensuring that stories are locally rooted and globally resonant.

Chapter 5 builds upon the values discussed earlier — inclusivity, accessibility, cultural relevance and developmental impact — by translating them into a clear production roadmap. Beginning with idea generation and ending with real-world impact assessment, this section highlights the eight key stages of the children's book journey. Each stage includes:

- A guiding question to reflect on your progress
- Key tasks and responsibilities by role
- Realistic outcomes that align with both creative vision and publishing standards

Together, these steps ensure that your book doesn't just reach the hands of children — but also speaks to their hearts, supports their development and opens new possibilities for Sri Lanka's literary and publishing future.

Contents of this Section

5.1. Stage 01 - Ideating:
Exploring the Inspiration and Purpose Behind Creating A Children's Book

5.2. Stage 02 - Refining:
Shaping the Story and Visuals, For Developmental and Cultural Relevance

5.3. Stage 03 - Empathizing:
Aligning the Story With Real-World Publishing Requirements and Stakeholder Needs

5.4. Stage 04 - Prototyping:
Transforming the Story into a Tangible Book Through an Iterative Design Process Before Production

5.5. Stage 05 - Testing and Verification:
Finalizing the Book Through Real-World Review and Production Checks

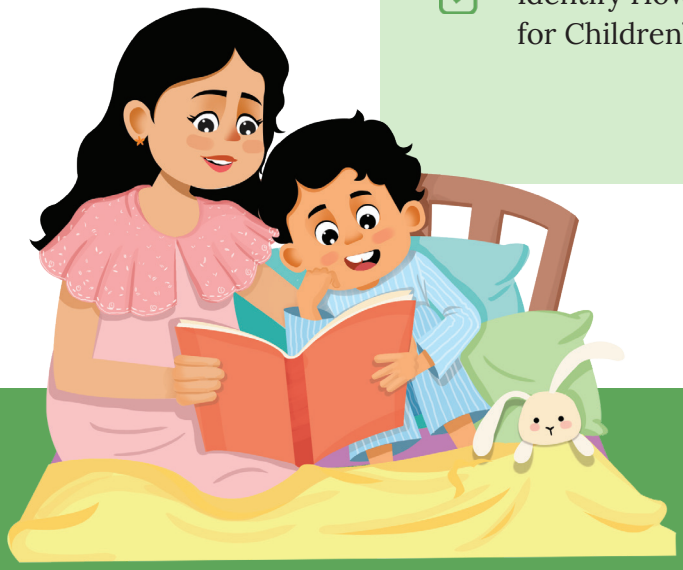
5.6. Stage 06 - Finishing:
Final Approvals, Quality Assurance and Preparing the Book for Release

5.7. Stage 07 - Launching:
Bringing the Book to the Public Through Strategic Promotion, Visibility and Outreach

5.8. Stage 08 - Review and Feedback:
Observing the Book's Real-World Impact and Using Insights to Inform Future Storytelling

At the end of this section you should be able to:

- Recognize the Eight Interconnected Stages of Children's Book Production.
- Understand How Collaboration Among Individuals Within the Book Publishing Ecosystem Supports the Success of Quality Children's Books.
- Identify How Collaboration Align With the National Policy for Children's Books Goals.



5.1 Stage 01 - Ideating

Exploring the Inspiration and Purpose Behind Creating A Children's Book

1 What sparked the creation of a book for a child?

What inspired you to create a book for children, and how does this concept contribute to their cognitive, literacy, imaginative, emotional and moral growth?

At this stage, the book exists only as an idea — intangible, fluid, and full of possibility. It begins with a spark; perhaps a memory, a story untold, a cultural value, a gap in the market, or a social or educational need. This is the moment to pause and ask yourself: Why this book? Why now? And why for children? Writers, illustrators, publishers and policy influencers come together to explore what makes the idea meaningful and necessary. The concept must resonate with young readers and hold the potential to support their cognitive, literacy, imaginative, emotional and moral development. This also includes considering the socio-cultural context of the child: their language, identity and lived experience. This foundational stage isn't about structure or production — it's about vision, purpose and potential.

a b c d
e f

1 Ideating
What sparked the creation of a book for a child?

2 Refining
How are you developing the story and characters for children?

3 Empathizing
How are you preparing your book for the real world?

4 Prototyping
How are you bringing your story to life on the page?

1 Key Stakeholders of the Ideating Stage

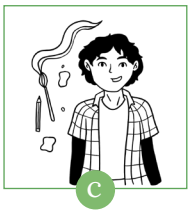
Fiction Writer / Author

Example task: Craft an initial narrative by outlining key scenes for the book based on developmental and cultural insights.

Policy Makers / Government Publishing Units

Example task: Addresses initial requirements regarding educational, linguistic and cultural alignment with national priorities.

Illustrator / Art Director



Example task: Begin visualizing the concept by creating mood sketches or character roughs that explore story possibilities.

Academics and Researchers

Example task: Provide insights on child development, literacy trends, and the role of fiction in shaping early imagination and empathy.

Publisher

Example task: Identify a business or social opportunity through market research and idea generation, especially targeting underrepresented audiences.

5 Testing and Verification

Is your book ready to go to print?

6 Finishing

Is your book ready to be printed or published?

7 Launching

How are you sharing your book with the world?

8 Review and Feedback

What are children taking away from your book?

01 - Key Tasks of the Ideating Stage

- Develop the core concept in collaboration with the fiction writer, illustrator and publisher, based on inspiration, intention and audience relevance.
- Identify key themes and target age groups, guided by the writer's narrative direction, publisher's market research, and input from academics on developmental stages.
- Explore the developmental and socio-cultural relevance of the idea, with support from policy makers, academics, and researchers to ensure alignment with child growth needs and national priorities.
- Begin early visual ideation, when illustrators and art directors sketch potential visual directions, to match the tone and narrative.
- Assess market potential and publishing context, with publishers evaluating the concept's feasibility, reach, and alignment with current gaps in children's literature.
- Align the book idea with educational and cultural frameworks, as advised by government publishing bodies and policy makers, ensuring the story supports national literacy and inclusion goals.

a b c d e f

1 Ideating

What sparked the creation of a book for a child?

2 Refining

How are you developing the story and characters for children?

3 Empathizing

How are you preparing your book for the real world?

4 Prototyping

How are you bringing your story to life on the page?

01 - Outcome

- Initial manuscript of the idea
- Visual sketches of the idea
- Policy or national requirements brief and debrief documents
- Brainstorming activities/ mind maps etc.
- Initial document communicating the idea, message and theme of the story to gauge potential

Illustrations Completed by Jerusha Perera

5 Testing and Verification

Is your book ready to go to print?

6 Finishing

Is your book ready to be printed or published?

7 Launching

How are you sharing your book with the world?

8 Review and Feedback

What are children taking away from your book?

5.2 Stage 02 - Refining

Shaping the Story and Visuals, For Developmental and Cultural Relevance

2 How are you developing the story and characters for children?

How are the story, visuals and tone being collaboratively refined to support children's cognitive, literacy, imaginative, emotional and moral development — while ensuring cultural relevance, inclusivity and alignment with publishing ethics?

At this stage, your story begins to take shape as a potential book. The concept is translated into the early forms of a manuscript, followed by several revisions of the technical script. Through collaboration among writers, editors and illustrators, the book's tone, genre and intended format are clarified. Several drafts of the technical script are created and refined — this includes defining the type of book (e.g., picture book, chapter book), estimating its length, and considering how the language and content support children's developmental needs. This stage bridges the gap between idea and form, laying the foundation for the final manuscript before visual design and formatting begins.

a b c d e f

1 Ideating

What sparked the creation of a book for a child?

2 Refining

How are you developing the story and characters for children?

3 Empathizing

How are you preparing your book for the real world?

4 Prototyping

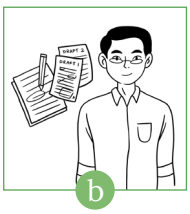
How are you bringing your story to life on the page?

2 Key Stakeholders of the Refining Stage

Fiction Writer / Author

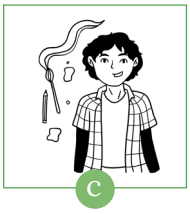
Example task: Refine plot, develop characters, and integrate meaningful themes.

Editors/ Language Reviewers



Example task: Ensures clarity, tone, age-appropriateness and linguistic coherence.

Illustrator/ Art Director



Example task: Begin visual world-building, storyboarding and mood board development.

Creative Consultants

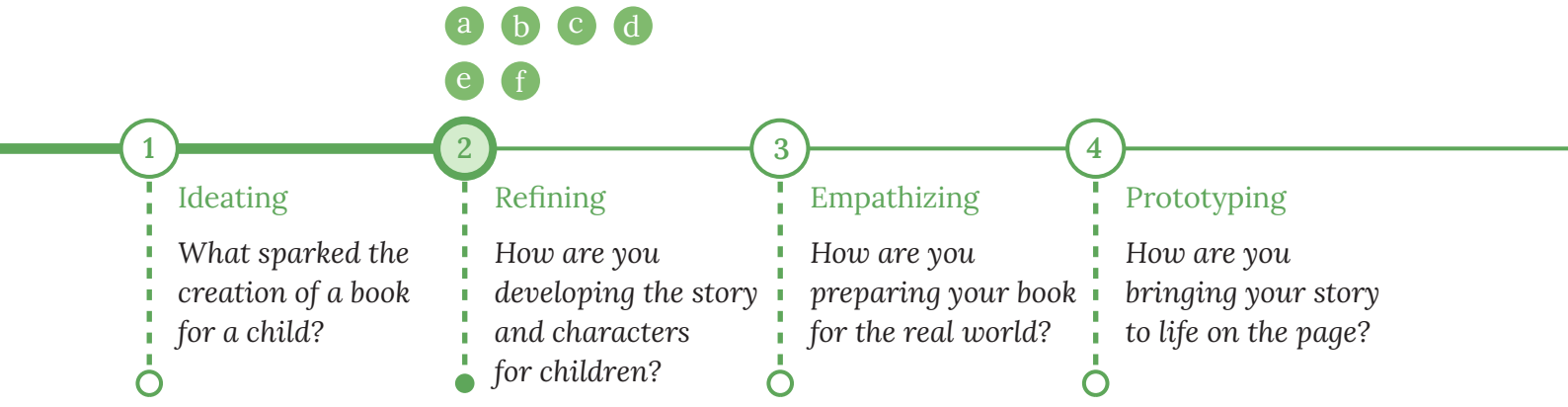
Example task: Advise on socio-cultural accuracy, inclusivity and soft skills.

Academics and Researchers

Example task: Offer feedback on educational impact, literacy engagement and cultural significance.

02 - Key Tasks of the Refining Stage

- Develop Technical Script Draft 01, based on plot structure, genre, narrative arc, character development, world-building, theme, message, and use of language, led by the fiction writer and supported by editors and creative consultants.
- Revise and refine into Technical Script Draft 02, with input from language reviewers, creative consultants, and academics to improve clarity, inclusivity, and developmental alignment.
- Deepen character and world development, which authors elaborate on personalities, settings, and interactions, while illustrators begin building visual references and environments.
- Refine narrative structure and language, ensuring the story's flow, tone, and complexity match the target age group and developmental objectives.
- Engage in collaborative storytelling and visual ideation, where writers, editors, illustrators and art directors, exchange ideas to align the story's tone and visual style.
- Seek feedback from academics and researchers, especially on cognitive, literacy, imaginative, emotional, and moral development, ensuring that story content is age appropriate and impactful.
- Ensure socio-cultural relevance and inclusivity, with creative consultants reviewing story elements for cultural accuracy, soft skill integration, and diversity in representation.



02 - Outcome

- Initial manuscript of the idea
- Brainstorming activities/ mind maps etc.

Illustrations Completed by Jerusha Perera

5 Testing and Verification

Is your book ready to go to print?

6 Finishing

Is your book ready to be printed or published?

7 Launching

How are you sharing your book with the world?

8 Review and Feedback

What are children taking away from your book?

5.3 Stage 03 - Empathizing

Aligning the Story With Real-World Publishing Requirements and Stakeholder Needs

3 How are you preparing your book for the real world?

How are you aligning your story with the real-world publishing ecosystem, ensuring that legal, financial, production, and policy requirements are met while staying true to the book's developmental and cultural purpose?

This is when creative vision meets practical planning. Your story must now fit within the publishing ecosystem — legally, financially and logistically. This includes clearly defining the type of book you're producing, its size, number of pages, format (paper, board, etc.), and developing a realistic cost estimate based on the expected number of copies. If economic challenges arise — such as high production costs or limited funding — this is the moment to reassess and refine your initial concept to ensure its feasibility without compromising developmental or cultural goals.

a b c d
e f g

1 Ideating
What sparked the creation of a book for a child?

2 Refining
How are you developing the story and characters for children?

3 Empathizing
How are you preparing your book for the real world?

4 Prototyping
How are you bringing your story to life on the page?

3 Key Stakeholders of the Empathizing Stage

Marketing Teams/ Distributors

Example task: Assess initial demand and identify appropriate promotional channels.

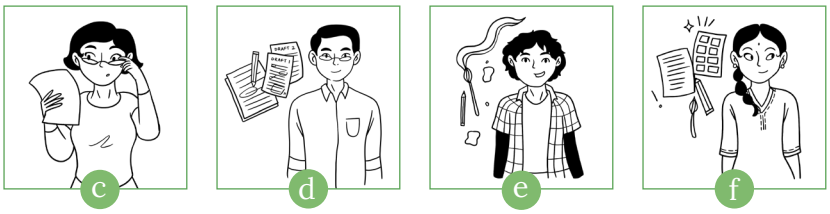
Publisher

Example task: Plan market strategy, pricing and printing model; begin registration and certification processes.

Policy Makers/ Certifying Authorities (ISBN, NCCB, MOE, MOCA)/ Donor Agencies)

Example task: Review book for compliance and grant relevant certifications.

Policy Makers / Government Publishing Units



Example task: Finalize collaboration model with or without publisher; complete Technical Script Draft 03.

5 Testing and Verification

Is your book ready to go to print?

6 Finishing

Is your book ready to be printed or published?

7 Launching

How are you sharing your book with the world?

8 Review and Feedback

What are children taking away from your book?

03 - Key Tasks of the Empathizing Stage

- Sign the copyright agreement based on Technical Script Draft 02, outlining collaboration terms between the author, illustrator, editor and art director, with or without a publishing house.
- Apply for ISBN and/or other certifications, including proposal submission for National Consortium for Children Books (NCCB) Certification, Ministry of Education endorsement for School Libraries, and National Library & Documentation Services Board registration, with support from publishers and certifying authorities.
- Estimate the book's specifications and cost, including the type of book (e.g. paperback, hardcover, board book), page count, size, and projected unit cost, led by publishers and informed by designers.
- Apply for ethical clearance, particularly for sourced images, references or sensitive content, ensuring proper documentation and consent where necessary.
- Assess market and award readiness, identifying eligibility for local and international book awards and strategic participation in book fairs to boost visibility.

a b c d
e f g

1 Ideating
What sparked the creation of a book for a child?

2 Refining
How are you developing the story and characters for children?

3 Empathizing
How are you preparing your book for the real world?

4 Prototyping
How are you bringing your story to life on the page?

03 - Outcome

- Copyright agreement for publication/ IP rights
- Filling application requesting International Standard Book Numbering (ISBN) - (National Library & Documentation Services Board)
- Submit Proposal for National Consortium for Children Books (NCCB) Certification
- Review/Filling Application to the Educational Publications Advisory Board of the Ministry of Education on the licence endorsing approval for School Libraries
- Completion of Technical Script Draft 03, for final editorial and visual refinements from the creative team
- Inquire about the National Awards of the Department of Cultural Affairs

Illustrations Completed by Jerusha Perera

5 Testing and Verification

Is your book ready to go to print?

6 Finishing

Is your book ready to be printed or published?

7 Launching

How are you sharing your book with the world?

8 Review and Feedback

What are children taking away from your book?

5.4 Stage 04 - Prototyping

Transforming the Story into a Tangible Book Through an Iterative Design Process Before Production

4 How are you bringing your story to life on the page?

As your manuscript transforms into a visual product, how are the creative and visual elements — such as layouts, illustrations, cover design and text placement — being developed through iterative collaboration to ensure the book is engaging, inclusive, accessible and ready for production?

At this point, the book begins its transformation from words, visuals and ideas into a tangible product. This stage is iterative and typically unfolds in three key phases: (1) initial layout and visual direction, in which the tone, layout style, and visual identity are established; (2) detailed storyboarding, in which illustrations are refined and the placement of text — poems, dialogue, or paragraphs — is carefully laid out to ensure developmental alignment and reader accessibility; and (3) submission of final layouts and artwork, ready for formatting and production. This is also the stage in which copyright agreements may be signed, visual elements ethically cleared, and all stakeholders finalize the book's visual language before printing.

a b c d
e f g

1 Ideating
What sparked the creation of a book for a child?

2 Refining
How are you developing the story and characters for children?

3 Empathizing
How are you preparing your book for the real world?

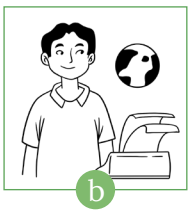
4 Prototyping
How are you bringing your story to life on the page?

4 Key Stakeholders of the Prototyping Stage

Illustrator

Example task: Develop the black and white storyboard, sample spreads, mood board and final illustrations; prepare the Plot Visualization Sheets (Draft 01 and 02) in consultation with the Art Director.

Publisher (if involved)



Example task: Coordinate submission of finalized files for ISBN and cataloguing; facilitate illustrator contracts and processes payments; ensure deliverables meet pre-printing requirements.

Fiction Writer/ Author

Example task: Collaborate with the editor and illustrator to provide the finalized text script (Technical Script Draft 03), offer guidance on tone, character intentions etc. that inform the visual layout.

Legal Advisor/ Intellectual Property Rights Advisor

Example task: Verify the copyright status of visual and textual materials, and obtain ethical clearance for all sourced content and references.

Translator/ Proof reader (if applicable)

Example task: Ensure that translated content matches the tone, narrative intent and page structure of the original language; contribute to the completion of the Point 20 table.

Editors/ Language Reviewers

Example task: Edit and approves the final Technical Script Draft 03; review and align dialogue, and text placement with visual flow; assist in completing the Point 20 table and translation metadata.

Art Director

Example task: Oversee the overall visual direction, ensuring layout consistency, page flow, and alignment between the visuals and the narrative; coordinate approval of character sheets and final spread submissions.

5 Testing and Verification

Is your book ready to go to print?

6 Finishing

Is your book ready to be printed or published?

7 Launching

How are you sharing your book with the world?

8 Review and Feedback

What are children taking away from your book?

04 - Key Tasks of the Prototyping Stage

a) Subsection 04.1 – Initial Layout and Visual Direction

- Sign the copyright for illustrations/ images agreement based on Technical Script Draft 03, outlining collaboration terms between the illustrator with or without a publishing house/ consultants,
- Finalize book specifications: number of pages, page size, page orientation (portrait/ landscape) and layout structure (e.g. opening spread),
- Develop Thumbnails Sheet Draft 01 showing dialogue placement, based on Technical Script Draft 03,
- Create visual references including a mood board, inspiration board, colour palette, character sheets and one sample spread by an Illustrator/ Art Director,
- Produce Plot Visualization Sheet Draft 01 to outline initial visual direction by Illustrator/ Art Director.

b) Subsection 04.2 – Detailed Storyboarding and Visual Refinement

- Second sample spread, define text-image proportions and spatial layout to ensure readability and visual flow, visual style - concept, mood, etc.
- Finalizing and approval of the third sample spread, confirming the book's visual style and layout: character design, visual setting, and completed artwork for the cover, title page, and back covermood, etc.
- Obtain ethical clearance and copyright checks, to finalize all illustrations and image references.
- Revise Plot Visualization Sheet Draft 02, with a focus on the Point 20 outline textual metadata and translation accuracy by Illustrator/ Art Director, based on Technical Script Draft 03 by Author/Editor; and with signatures from all key contributors.
- Submit for ISBN submission, with the finalized title and approved cover.

c) Subsection 04.3 – Layout Submission

- Submission of the complete visualized pages with or without text inserts, all interior pages, illustrations and cover artwork.
- Finalize submission of files for ISBN registration and cataloguing.
- Close out creative production deliverable; and process illustrator payments (if contracted externally).

a b c d
e f g

1 Ideating
What sparked the creation of a book for a child?

2 Refining
How are you developing the story and characters for children?

3 Empathizing
How are you preparing your book for the real world?

4 Prototyping
How are you bringing your story to life on the page?

04 - Outcome

- Copyright agreement between Illustrator and publishing house
- Obtaining Ethical Clearance Submit for ISBN
- Mood board/ inspiration board
- Concept/ visual style/ coulor palette and character sheet
- First sample spread - Stage 01
- Second sample spread -Stage 02
- Third sample spread - Stage 02 finalizing
- Develop Thumbnail Sheet Draft 01
- Develop a full black and white (detailed dummy) storyboard
- Produce Plot Visualization Sheet Draft 01 by Illustrator/ Art director
- Revised Plot Visualization Sheet Draft 02 with signatures from all parties - Signing off the document for approval for printing.
- Confirmation of payment between parties closes out creative production deliverables.

Illustrations Completed by Jerusha Perera

5 Testing and Verification

Is your book ready to go to print?

6 Finishing

Is your book ready to be printed or published?

7 Launching

How are you sharing your book with the world?

8 Review and Feedback

What are children taking away from your book?

5.5 Stage 05 - Testing and Verification

Finalizing the Book Through Real-World Review and Production Checks

5 Is your book ready to go to print?

As you prepare the book for production, how are the publishing and printing decisions — agreements, materials, quality checks and optional user testing — ensuring that the final product is developmentally supportive, inclusive, culturally respectful and accessible to all children?

This is the stage in which most elements of the book are finalized in preparation for production. It includes confirming the printer, estimating the production cost per unit and deciding on the number of copies. Agreements between the publisher and printer (if applicable) are signed, covering all specifications such as format, paper type, gsm and binding. A print-ready dummy book may be produced for approval, and if needed, user testing can be carried out with children to assess visual and narrative impact. This stage also involves comprehensive proofreading — for language (spelling, grammar) and visuals (colour accuracy and layout corrections). Finally, mandatory deposit copies must be submitted to designated authorities such as the National Archives, the National Library and other relevant institutions. This stage ensures that every component — from agreements to quality assurance — is aligned before printing begins.

1 Ideating

What sparked the creation of a book for a child?

2 Refining

How are you developing the story and characters for children?

3 Empathizing

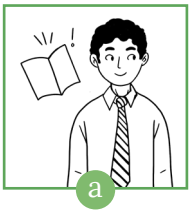
How are you preparing your book for the real world?

4 Prototyping

How are you bringing your story to life on the page?

5 Key Stakeholders of the Testing and Verification Stage

Legal Advisors/ Intellectual Property Rights Advisors



Example task: Verify copyright registration and permission for all text and visual content.

Certifying Authorities (ISBN, NCCB, MOE, National Library)

Example task: Review and certify the book for compliance with national standards; issue relevant certificates or endorsements.

Editors

Example task: Conduct final proofreading of the entire manuscript, ensuring all text is error-free, properly placed, and aligned with the final design and formatting.

Publisher (if involved)

Example task: Coordinate the final agreement with the printer, oversee unit cost calculations and print specifications, and ensure that all legal deposit and ISBN requirements are fulfilled.

Printer

Example task: Advice on suitable print methods (e.g. offset or digital), finalize paper type, binding method, and colour/black-and-white options, and produce the print-ready dummy for approval.

a b c d e

02 - Key Tasks of the Testing and Verification Stage

- Finalize the printer and production method, including offset, digital or e-publishing workflows in consultation with the publisher and printer/consultants.
- Determine the production cost per unit and total number of copies, based on material choices and target distribution (e.g. opening spread).
- Sign the agreement between the publisher and printer, (if applicable), detailing:
    - Black-and-white or colour printing
    - Paper type, GSM and binding method
    - Final layout approval
    - Corrections in text and images
    - Formatting, text placement and translated content
- Prepare a print-ready dummy book, to test design and functionality before final production.
- Conduct user/field testing (optional), involving children, educators, teachers, creative consultants or library specialists, to gather feedback on readability, story's literary feedback, size of the book, visual engagement and developmental impact.
- Revised print-ready dummy book based on user/field testing (where required), revisiting the corrections and completing these.
- Incorporate final proofreading and editorial checks, covering spelling, grammar and design adjustments based on the print-ready dummy book and, signing off between relevant parties.
- Submission of the complete visualized pages with or without text inserts, all interior pages, illustrations and cover artwork.
- Finalize translations, if applicable, ensuring language accuracy and alignment with visual content.
- Submit mandatory legal deposit copies to the National Archives, National Library and any other designated institutions.
- Confirm ISBN registration.

1 Ideating

What sparked the creation of a book for a child?

2 Refining

How are you developing the story and characters for children?

3 Empathizing

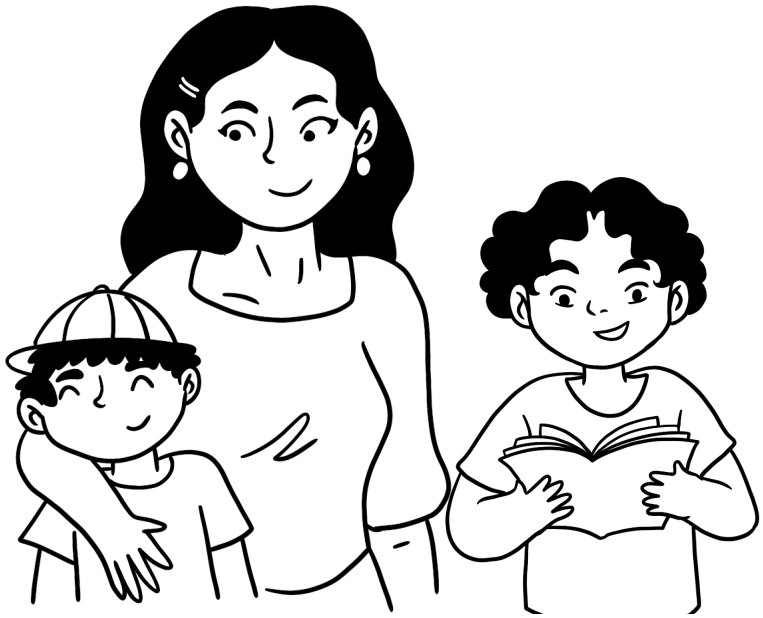
How are you preparing your book for the real world?

4 Prototyping

How are you bringing your story to life on the page?

05 - Outcome

- ☑ Copyright agreement between the publisher and the printer (if required)
- ☑ Prepare a print-ready dummy book to test design and functionality before final production
- ☑ Revise print-ready dummy book based on user/field testing (if required)
- ☑ User/field Test Report, Academic Review (Optional)
- ☑ Final proofreading and editorial checks on the print-ready dummy book and signing off between the representative parties
- ☑ Submit mandatory legal deposit copies of books
- ☑ Confirmed ISBN registration number



Illustrations Completed by Jerusha Perera

a b c d e

5 Testing and Verification

Is your book ready to go to print?

6 Finishing

Is your book ready to be printed or published?

7 Launching

How are you sharing your book with the world?

8 Review and Feedback

What are children taking away from your book?

5.6 Stage 06 - Finishing

Final Approvals, Quality Assurance and Preparing the Book for Release

6 Is your book ready to be printed or published?

Has your book reached the final stage of production — when it is now being printed or digitally published — with all creative, technical, and legal elements finalized and all required approvals, agreements and quality checks in place?

At this stage — the printing or e-publishing phase — final decisions are made across technical, legal and creative areas. The book — now fully laid out — undergoes a final production review, including layout, colour and text accuracy checks. Comprehensive proofreading ensures consistency in tone and format. This stage also includes completing ISBN registration, copyright confirmation, and submitting applications for certifications from the NCCB, Ministry of Education and Ministry of Cultural Affairs. The publisher and printer finalize their agreement on format, materials, unit cost, quantity and production timelines. Initial launch and promotional planning begin here, making this the final point for any creative or administrative adjustments before the book is printed or digitally published.

6 Key Stakeholders of the Finishing Stage

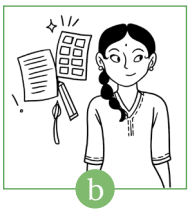
Printer

Example task: Execute the final printing specifications based on approved layouts, binding type and paper quality.

Editor

Example task: Confirm the accuracy of all text, including proofreading, grammar and narrative clarity in the final layout.

Art Director

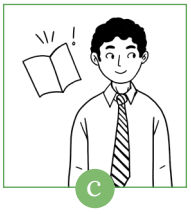


Example task: Sign off on the final visual presentation, including layout consistency, illustration placement and overall visual tone.

Publisher

Example task: Coordinate all final approvals and ensure the book meets publishing standards, legal requirements, and distribution readiness.

Legal Advisor/ Intellectual Property Rights Advisor



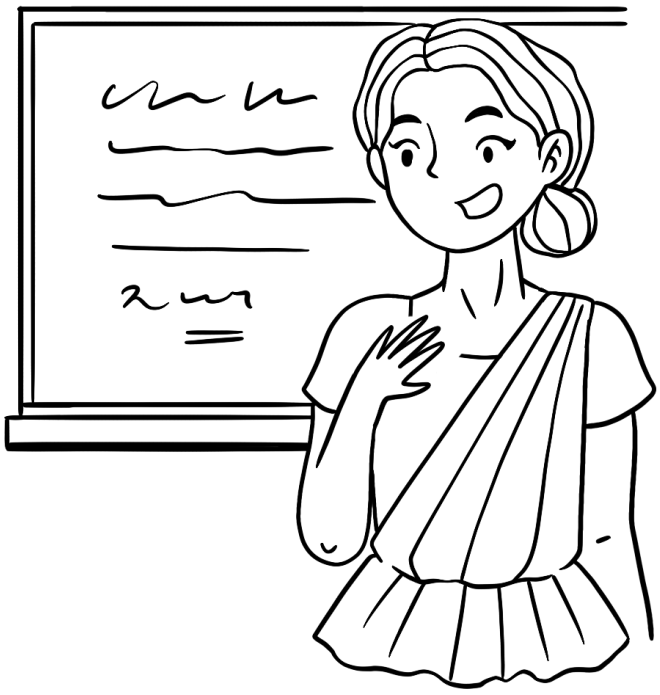
Example task: Check colour accuracy, visual clarity and layout integrity in the print dummy, and approve final illustrations for print production.

Certifying Authorities (ISBN, NCCB, MOE, National Library)

Example task: Review and certify the book for compliance with national standards; issue relevant certificates or endorsements.

06 - Key Tasks of the Finishing Stage

- Approve final layouts, illustrations and text, to ensure readiness for print or digital publishing. Verify formatting, print quality, page sequence, binding type and paper finish
- Confirm all copyrights, ISBN registration (National Library) and certifications (NCCB, MOE - EP Advisory Board) are completed
- Review and sign off on all final edits in text, images and translations
- Submit legal deposit copies to designated national bodies such as the National Archives and National Library
- Coordinate with the printer for the final production schedule and delivery
- Begin internal coordination for launch and distribution strategy



1 Ideating

What sparked the creation of a book for a child?

2 Refining

How are you developing the story and characters for children?

3 Empathizing

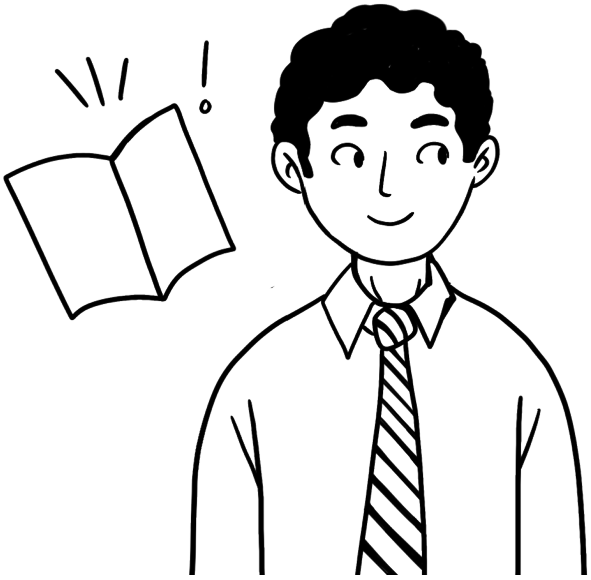
How are you preparing your book for the real world?

4 Prototyping

How are you bringing your story to life on the page?

06 - Outcome

- [x] Confirmation of all copyrights
- [x] Printing of the books
- [x] Submit legal deposit copies



Illustrations Completed by Jerusha Perera

a b c d e f

5 Testing and Verification

Is your book ready to go to print?

6 Finishing

Is your book ready to be printed or published?

7 Launching

How are you sharing your book with the world?

8 Review and Feedback

What are children taking away from your book?

5.7 Stage 07 - Launching

Bringing the Book to the Public Through Strategic Promotion, Visibility and Outreach

7 How are you sharing your book with the world?

How are publishers, marketers, booksellers, and literary agents working together to launch and promote the book — through events, partnerships, and visibility campaigns — in a way that reflects its developmental purpose and connects meaningfully with its intended audience?

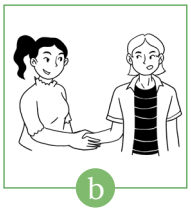
This stage marks the public debut of the book — when months of creative and production work culminate in reaching real readers. It involves coordinating marketing and outreach activities, both virtual and physical, to ensure the book is discoverable, accessible, and engaging. Publishers, marketers, distributors and literary agents, collaborate to design launch strategies that reflect the developmental purpose and values of the book. Activities at this stage include planning public release events (such as book launches, readings or virtual sessions), distributing the book through bookstores, libraries, schools and online platforms, and presenting it at local or international book fairs. Supportive materials such as book trailers, teacher guides, author interviews and even merchandise, are created to enhance the book's visibility and value. This is also when partnerships with booksellers, educators and literacy organizations are activated to broaden the book's reach. The launch strategy should align with the developmental goals of the book, making sure it reaches the intended age group while supporting cognitive, literacy, imaginative, emotional and moral engagement.

7 Key Stakeholders of the Launching Stage

Marketing Team/ Publicity Coordinator

Example task: Design and execute promotional campaign, creates outreach materials, and manage online visibility and event planning.

Professional Association

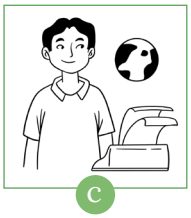


Example task: Present the book at local and international book fairs, to increase visibility and open global opportunities.

Booksellers / Sales Representative/ Distributors

Example task: Ensure the book is stocked across retail channels, manage logistics, and advise on promotional displays, and pricing strategies.

Publisher



Example task: Oversee the overall launch strategy, manage promotional budgets and coordinate with all stakeholders to ensure cohesive rollout.

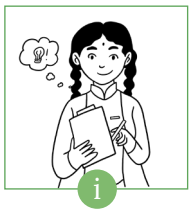
Awarding Bodies/ Cultural Institutions

Example task: Evaluate the book for eligibility in local and international award programs; recommend titles for literary recognition or showcases.

Literary Agent (Government or Private)

Example task: Present the book at local and international book fairs to increase visibility and open global opportunities.

Academic and Researchers / Educational specialist / Creative Consultant



Example task : Craft an initial narrative by outlining key scenes for the book based on developmental and cultural insights.

a b c d
e f g h
i j

5 Testing and Verification

Is your book ready to go to print?

6 Finishing

Is your book ready to be printed or published?

7 Launching

How are you sharing your book with the world?

8 Review and Feedback

What are children taking away from your book?

07 - Key Tasks of the Launching Stage

- Coordinate launch campaigns through in-person and virtual events, such as book readings, school visits and public release ceremonies.
- Develop and implement marketing and promotional strategies, targeting bookstores, libraries, schools and community festivals.
- Establish distribution partnerships, with booksellers, library networks, literacy programs and online platforms.
- Present the book at local and international book fairs, to increase visibility and open global opportunities.
- Create supportive promotional materials, such as book trailers, author/illustrator interviews, merchandise and educator/parent guides.
- Execute public visibility campaigns that reflect the values and purpose of the book.
- Plan strategic outreach to ensure the book reaches diverse audiences, including rural or underrepresented communities.
- Ensure the launch strategy reflects and supports the book's cognitive, literacy, imaginative, emotional and moral goals for children.

1 Ideating

What sparked the creation of a book for a child?

2 Refining

How are you developing the story and characters for children?

3 Empathizing

How are you preparing your book for the real world?

4 Prototyping

How are you bringing your story to life on the page?

07 - Outcome

- Launch of the book Distribution and promotion
- Increased book visibility across physical and digital platforms
- Engagement with target audiences through promotional campaigns
- Media coverage and author exposure through launch events
- Invitations to literary festivals or cultural events
- Improved market positioning and reader reach
- Opportunities for early reviews and endorsements
- Entry into retail, school and library distribution channels
- Eligibility for book award submissions and showcases
- Data on audience reception and geographic reach

Illustrations Completed by Jerusha Perera

a b c d
e f g h
i j

5 Testing and Verification

Is your book ready to go to print?

6 Finishing

Is your book ready to be printed or published?

7 Launching

How are you sharing your book with the world?

8 Review and Feedback

What are children taking away from your book?

5.8 Stage 08 - Review and Feedback

Observing the Book's Real-World Impact and Using Insights to Inform Future Storytelling

8 What are children taking away from your book?

Now that the book is in children's hands, how are parents, educators, librarians and researchers, observing its realworld impact — and how those insights can guide future fiction publishing in terms of developmental engagement, reader experience and long-term relevance?

This final stage brings the entire publishing journey full circle. With the book now in children's hands, the focus shifts to observing its real-world reception and impact. This involves collecting feedback from those closest to young readers — teachers, librarians, parents, caregivers, and children themselves. Educators and literacy specialists assess how the book supports developmental goals such as cognitive stimulation, emotional understanding, literacy growth, imaginative thinking and moral reflection. Researchers may conduct surveys or focus groups to evaluate reading engagement, retention and comprehension. Observations of how children interact with the book — in classrooms, homes, or libraries — can reveal the emotional and educational resonance of the story. The insights gathered at this stage help identify the book's potential for sequels, adaptations or inclusion in school curricula. Feedback can also be archived to inform future fiction projects, guiding improvements in narrative approach, visual style or accessibility, for different groups of children.

8 Key Stakeholders the Review and Feedback Stage

Librarians

Example task: Facilitate access to the book and observe engagement patterns; collect informal feedback from young readers.

Publisher

Example task: Archive user data and feedback for internal review, future print runs, sequels or translation decisions.

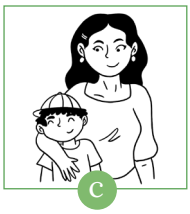
Professional Association

Example task: Support publishing standards, networking and industry advocacy.

Critics and Book Reviewers

Example task: Evaluate fiction books based on literary quality, educational value and storytelling impact.

Parents and Caregivers



Example task: Observe reading habits and emotional responses at home; provide feedback on relatability, clarity and interest.

Academics and Researchers

Example task: Conduct formal evaluations of the book's developmental impact through structured studies, data collection and reports.

Child Reader

Example task: Engage with the book through reading, listening or interaction, providing authentic responses through observation or feedback.

Editors

Example task: Conduct final proofreading of the entire manuscript, ensuring all text is error-free, properly placed, and aligned with the final design and formatting.

Teachers / Educational Specialists

Example task: Integrate the book into classroom activities; assess comprehension, discussion and developmental relevance.

Policymakers/ Government Literacy Agent (Government or Private)

Example task: Integrate the book into classroom activities; assess comprehension, discussion, and developmental relevance.

08 - Key Tasks of the Review and Feedback Stage

- Observe how children engage with the book in real-life contexts — at home, in classrooms and in libraries,
- Develop and implement marketing promotions, towards parents, teachers, librarians and children, to gain insights to build a knowledge base for future fiction publishing — highlighting what worked and where improvements can be made,
- Conduct structured research activities such as surveys, interviews or focus groups to assess reading engagement, comprehension, emotional response, and developmental impact,
- Document observations related to the book's influence on the 'National Policy for Children Books' cognitive, literacy, imaginative, emotional and moral development, and evaluate accessibility and inclusivity from the reader's point of view, especially for children with special needs or from diverse cultural backgrounds,
- Identify opportunities within Publishing for sequels, adaptations, translation, or integration into educational curricula,
- Identify opportunities towards economic growth by expanding beyond the local boundaries via Universally Relatable and Global Importance Themes, Adaptability Across Context, and Translatability.

08 - Outcome

- ☑ Opportunity for sequels or series based on reader engagement
- ☑ Possibility of adaptations (audio, digital or interactive formats)
- ☑ Inclusion in school curricula or educational programs
- ☑ Improvements for future editions based on reader feedback
- ☑ Increased production based on market demand or sales performance
- ☑ Export potential through translation and global rights sales
- ☑ Eligibility for local and international literary awards
- ☑ Presentation opportunities at international book fairs
- ☑ Insights to guide future fiction publishing strategies
- ☑ Stronger relationships with educators, libraries and literacy programs

Summary - Section 05

From Script to Shelf: Collaborative Steps Toward Publication

Children's fiction is not only about creativity — it is also about the systems and processes that carry a book from idea to impact. This chapter traced the eight interconnected stages of book production — from ideating and refining stories, to prototyping, finishing, launching, and reviewing their real-world effects. At each stage, collaboration among authors, illustrators, editors, publishers, policymakers, educators, and distributors ensures that books are developmentally enriching, inclusive and aligned with both local and global standards.

By emphasizing quality assurance, ethical production, cultural representation, and accessibility, this chapter underscores that the journey of a book is as important as the story itself. Each decision — from the first spark of an idea to the book's reception by children — contributes to an ecosystem where stories are meaningful, impactful and sustainable.

This section aligns with the National Policy for Children's Books, directly contributing to the following goals:

Goal 2.2.1 – Enhancing quality and accessibility.

Goal 2.2.2 – Aligning with global standards.

Goal 2.2.3 – Supporting child development.

Goal 2.2.4 – Promoting inclusivity and equality.

Goal 2.2.5 – Encouraging lifelong reading.

Goal 2.2.6 – Sustainable publishing practices.

Goal 2.2.7 – Building a collaborative ecosystem.

Goal 2.2.8 – Positioning Sri Lanka as a global contributor.

By integrating these policy goals, this section reinforces the collective responsibility in shaping a children's book ecosystem that is inclusive, high-quality, and globally relevant. Ultimately, high-quality children's fiction is not just about telling stories — it is about shaping perspectives, fostering empathy, and ensuring that every child, regardless of their background or abilities, finds themselves reflected in the pages of a book.

About Technical Script:

The Technical Script serves as a tangible, structured document that records the reflections, detailed actions and processes undertaken in creating a book for children. It is aligned with the National Policy for Children's Books, Sri Lanka offering a unified framework for quality publishing and ethical, inclusive book creation.

This script is organized into three key stages:

1. Story Development Worksheet
(Technical Script 01 - Points 01-10):

- This worksheet captures the author's concept for the creation of a children's book; outlining key elements such as the theme and message, the plot and its emotional arc, the targeted child developmental needs — including cognitive, literacy, imaginative, emotional, and moral growth — and the language style and tone appropriate to the intended age group.
- It can be used as a 'Children's Book Proposal Document' or submitted as an initial submission to gain NCCB (National Consortium for Children's Books) certification.
- Each section of the worksheet aligns with components of the guidebook and the National Policy for Children, Sri Lanka.
- The required content for this worksheet is detailed in Chapters 01, 02 and 03 of the guidebook.
- This worksheet corresponds to Stages 01 and 02 within the overall children's book production flow discussed in Chapter 05 of the guidebook.
- Clear guidance on completing each point can be found in the "How to Fill" section below.

2. Visualization and Layout Development Worksheet
(Technical Script 02 - Points 11-15):

- This worksheet captures the combined development of the author's concept and the illustrator's visual direction. It serves as an advanced version of Technical Script 01, including specific details such as the book type, page count, and content required to visualize the plot — concept boards, inspiration boards, character sheets, illustration style, typography, and sample spread ideas.
- A key feature of this is the finalized narration or scripted text for each page, prepared collaboratively by the author and illustrator prior to final visualization.

- Each section of the worksheet aligns with components of the guidebook and the National Policy for Children, Sri Lanka.
- The required content for this worksheet is detailed in Chapters 03 and 04 of the guidebook.
- This worksheet corresponds to Stages 01 to 05 within the overall children's book production flow discussed in Chapter 05 of the guidebook.
- Clear guidance on completing each point can be found in the "How to Fill" section below.

3. Final Technical Script:
(Technical Script 03- Point 16-18)

- This worksheet captures the combined development of the author, illustrator, editor, and art director. It serves as a refined version of Technical Script 01 and 02 and is considered the final script. It includes all specific details required to complete the final checklist before production — necessary certifications, finalized storyboards, cover design, author/ illustrator/editor/art director details, and supporting documents needed by the publishing ecosystem, as outlined in Chapter 05 of this guidebook.
- A key feature of this stage is the finalization of content and the identification of key questions needed for the next steps in production — whether for print or digital.
- It includes the corrected and approved text (by both the author and editor), which can be compared with Draft 02.
    - It includes the final layout of visuals with text — approved by the author, editor, illustrator and art director — in storyboard format.
    - It includes proof of revisions in visuals and text — developments which can be compared with Draft 02.
- The final technical script should bring together Points 01–15 outlined earlier, along with these last three points, to ensure a complete a Final Technical Script.
- Each section of the worksheet aligns with components of the guidebook and the National Policy for Children, Sri Lanka.
- The required content for this worksheet is detailed in Chapters 01 to 05 of the guidebook.
- This worksheet corresponds to Stages 01 to 06 within the overall children's book production flow discussed in Chapter 05 of the guidebook.
- Clear guidance on completing each point can be found in the "How to Fill" section below.

How to Fill Technical Script:

Technical Script (1): Story Development Worksheet

Points 01-10 of the technical script guide authors to clarify the story's purpose, developmental impact and design sensitivity .
These 10 points can be submitted as a Children's Book 'Proposal' to gain NCCB (National Consortium for Children's Books) certification.

Name of author: _____

Write the name of an individual. The individual can be any stakeholder mentioned in Chapter 5.1, as the need for a book may arise from a memory, an untold story, a cultural value, a gap in the market, or a social or educational need, among others. If two or more individuals are submitting, include their names (we prefer less than three individuals)

Contact information of author: Mobile_____ Phone_____

Email Address : _____

Indicate only one individual's mobile number and email address. This information is required for further inquiries or clarifications.

Date: _____

Indicate the date on which the individual is submitting this document to the NCCB, or, if the technical script is being used for personal documentation purposes, write the preferred date.

Title of Book : _____

Write the name of the proposed book. From Draft Stage 01 to the Final Technical Script, the title may change or vary. The title submitted at the final stage will be considered the final title of the book.

---

1. Details about the theme:

a) Theme: _____

Describe your theme in less than 10 words. For better clarity, refer to Section 3.1 of the guidebook.

b) Global relevance : _____

Describe whether your theme ensures that readers from different regions can connect with the story or plot, and whether it helps children develop a more inclusive and interconnected worldview. For better clarity, refer to Section 2.6 of the guidebook. If not applicable, you may strike off this question.

c) Central Theme* : _____

Describe whether your theme falls under any of the central themes suggested in Section 2.7 of the guidebook. If so, please name the theme. If not applicable, you may strike off this question.

**This point is especially relevant in cases in which the narrative may not be globally or universally relatable, yet still fulfills a suggested theme — as these themes are considered important for the local market. In such cases, it is recommended that either 1b or 1c be completed for NCCB certification. While completing both is possible, it may not necessarily offer additional benefit, though there could be instances in which both are appropriately filled.*

2. Significance of Message:

a) Message: _____

Describe the message in less than 20 words.

b) Secondary Message (only if you have) : _____

Describe if your message is supporting any points suggested in Section 3.1.3 of the guidebook? If so, please describe, or describe your own, if not strike off the question.

c) Target audience : _____

Indicate for whom this book is relevant. Reading is not strictly age-dependent; children learn to read at different ages and at their own pace. You may indicate a learning phase or a specific age range. For better clarity on reading as both a skill and a habit — as well as insights from developmental psychology, cognitive and literacy studies, language development, and imagination etc.—refer to Section 1.2 of the guidebook.

3. Plot Type:

_____

Describe the message in less than 20 words. Indicate your plot type, describe your own, or state 'not defined'. For better clarity, refer to Section 3.2 of the guidebook.

4. Write your 'Plot':

_____

Write your plot as a paragraph or in bullet points. Keep the word count to 200–250 words or fewer. Your plot should present a deliberate arrangement of story events that establish cause and effect —typically centred around a main conflict — and which clearly reveal the core character's growth.

5. Plot Arc:

a) Plot arc type: _____

Indicate your plot arc type. For better clarity and to choose from a range of examples, refer to Section 3.3.2 and 3.3.3 of the guidebook.

b) Plot diagram: _____

You are expected to visualize your plot by illustrating the key turning points that guide the story's movement from beginning to end. For better clarity and to explore a range of examples, refer to Sections 3.3.2 and 3.3.3 of the guidebook.

Visualization of Your Plot: You may draw your plot diagram in the space below or paste it here. If completed digitally, name the file as **Plot Diagram**_*[Your Name] and submit it in JPEG or PDF format.*

Example: Plot Diagram_Udari

6. Genre:

Indicate the genre of your story, which helps shape the narrative tone, content, and purpose — whether rooted in imagination, realism, history, or education etc. For better clarity and to choose from a range of examples, refer to Section 3.4 of the guidebook. Please select a genre or describe your own. If not applicable, you may strike off this question.

7. Character/s:

a) Character - Protagonist: _____

Describe your protagonist as a paragraph or in bullet points. Keep the word count to 100–150 words or fewer. Your character should be presented using the building blocks of character development outlined in Section 3.5.2 of the guidebook.

b) Character - Antagonist: _____

Describe your antagonist as a paragraph or in bullet points. Keep the word count to 100–150 words or fewer. Your character should be presented using the building blocks of character development outlined in Section 3.5.2 of the guidebook.

c) Supporting Character/s: _____

Describe your supporting character(s), including the number of characters and any specific traits, either as a paragraph or in bullet points. Keep the word count to 100–150 words or fewer. Characters should be presented using the building blocks of character development outlined in Section 3.5.2 of the guidebook.

d) Inclusive and respectful character building: _____

Describe whether you have considered diversity, inclusivity and gender balance in the characters presented in your story. For better clarity, refer to Section 2.8 of the guidebook.

8. Settings – world-building

a Character setting: _____

Describe your story's setting in a paragraph or in bullet points. Keep the word count to 20–30 words or fewer. Your setting should be presented using the world-building elements outlined in the guidebook. For better clarity and to explore a range of examples, refer to Section 3.6 of the guidebook.

b) Rules and logic of the world: _____

Describe the rules and logic of your setting in a paragraph or in bullet points. Keep the word count to 20–30 words or fewer. It should be presented using the world-building elements outlined in the guidebook. For better clarity and to explore a range of examples, refer to Section 3.6 of the guidebook.

c) Culture and Values (only if you have): _____

Describe the culture and values of your setting in a paragraph or in bullet points. Keep the word count to 20–30 words or fewer. It should be presented using the world-building elements outlined in the guidebook. For better clarity and to explore a range of examples, refer to Section 3.6 of the guidebook.

d) Other Characters/Inhabitants (only if you have): _____

Describe other inhabitants of your setting in a paragraph or in bullet points. Keep the word count to 20–30 words or fewer. It should be presented using the world-building elements outlined in the guidebook. For better clarity and to explore a range of examples, refer to Section 3.6 of the guidebook. If not applicable, you may strike off this question.

e) Character's Conflict and Challenges (only if you have: _____

Describe your story's setting in a paragraph or in bullet points. Keep the word count to 20–30 words or fewer. Your setting should be presented using the world-building elements outlined in the guidebook. For better clarity and to explore a range of examples, refer to Section 3.6 of the guidebook. If not applicable, you may strike off this question.

f) Inclusive and respectful world-building: _____

Describe whether you have considered diversity, inclusivity and cultural sensitivity in the setting presented in your story. For better clarity, refer to Section 2.8 of the guidebook.

9. Language

a) Language of the publication: _____

Indicate which language this book will be published in: Sinhala, Tamil, English or other.

b) Text translatable: _____

Indicate if the original publication language mentioned above is translatable, and specify the target language(s). If there are more than one, list them in order of preference. If not applicable, you may strike off this question.

10. Narration

a) Language use: _____

Indicate how language is applied in your story. For better clarity and to explore a range of examples, refer to Section 3.7.3 and 3.7.4 of the guidebook.

b) Narrative perspective: _____

Indicate the narrative perspective that determines who tells the story and how it is told. For better clarity and to explore a range of examples, refer to Section 3.7.5 of the guidebook.

c. Voice and tone: : _____

Indicate the voice — the distinct personality of the narrator or character — and the tone, referring to the emotional atmosphere conveyed through the narration. For better clarity and to explore a range of examples, refer to Section 3.7.6 of the guidebook.

Technical Script (2):
Visualization and Layout Development Worksheet

Points 11-15 of the technical script focus on transforming the developed script into a collaborative visual narrative.

11. Visual Research Tools:

Include at least 2 visual research boards (inspiration board, mood board, colour palette board, genre references or visual style references etc.) For better clarity and to explore a range of examples, refer to Section 4.1.3 of the guidebook.

You may paste it in the space below. If space is not adequate, attach it as a separate file and name it **Inspiration board_***[Your Name]. If completed digitally, use the same naming format and submit it in JPEG or PDF format.*

For additional characters, name the files accordingly:
Mood board_[Your Name]
Colour pallette board_[Your Name]

Example: Inspiration board_Udari.pdf

12. Character and Setting visualization Tools:

Include character and setting sheets. For better clarity and to explore a range of examples, refer to Section 4.1.4, 4.1.5, 4.2.4–4.2.6 of the guidebook.

You may paste it in the space below. If space is not adequate, attach it as a separate file and name it **Character sheet**_*[Your Name]. If completed digitally, use the same naming format and submit it in JPEG or PDF format.*

For additional characters, name the files accordingly:
Character sheet_[Your Name]
Setting sheet_[Your Name]

Example: Character sheet_Udari.pdf

13. Refined Thumbnail Sheet:

Include the refined thumbnail sheet (the thumbnail that works as the final before storyboarding). For better clarity and to explore a range of examples, refer to Section 4.3.3 of the guidebook. Ideally this sheet should be signed by the illustrator, art director, author and editor.

You may paste it in the space below. If space is not adequate, attach it as a separate file and name it **Thumbnail sheet**_*[Your Name]. If completed digitally, use the same naming format and submit it in JPEG or PDF format.*

For additional characters, name the files accordingly:
Thumbnail sheet_[Your Name]

Example: Thumbnail sheet_Udari.pdf

14. A Sample Spread Sheet:

Include a sample spread visualized as a story board (detailed and large thumbnail). This works as a sample presented to the author by the illustrator to confirm the illustration, visual style and the medium etc. For better clarity and to explore what a storyboard is, refer to Section 4.4 of the guidebook. Ideally this sheet should be signed by the illustrator and author.

You may paste it in the space below. If space is not adequate, attach it as a separate file and name it **Sample spread**_*[Your Name]. If completed digitally, use the same naming format and submit it in JPEG or PDF format.*

For additional characters, name the files accordingly:
Sample spread_[Your Name]

Example: Sample spread_Udari.pdf

15. Per Page Narration (Script)

Include the table given below or a refined thumbnail sheet with the per page narration (script). This should be completed collaboratively — at minimum by the author and illustrator — as a working document that clearly guides the book's completion. For better clarity and to explore different narrative perspectives, refer to Section 3.7 of the guidebook. Ideally this sheet should be reviewed and signed by the illustrator, art director, author and editor.

Per page Narration Script (based on the Narrative perspective)

Scene No.	Pages	Named scene	Setting	Dialogue	Narrator	Or the Text

---

Technical Script (3):
Final Technical Script

Points 16-18 of the technical script capture the finalized collaboration between the author, illustrator, editor, and art director. The Final Technical Script consolidates all 18 points from Scripts 01 and 02, allowing for final refinements before submission.

16. Black and White detailed Storyboard with Text:

Include a black-and-white storyboard dummy (to scale or scaled down) with per-page narration (script). This should be completed by the illustrator as a working document that clearly guides the visual development of the book. For better clarity and to explore stages of visuals, refer to Section 4.4.4 and 4.4.5 of the guidebook. Ideally, this storyboard should be reviewed and signed by both the illustrator and the author.

17. Cover page :

Include the title for the book and it should be visually appealing. For better clarity and to explore different titling suggestions, refer to Section 4.6.7.

18. Final Dummy with Line Edited Text (ready for publication)

Attach the final dummy with fully edited and finalized text. This version serves as the pre-production sample, representing the complete book layout before printing or digital conversion. To understand how the initial plot evolved into a production-ready format, refer to Chapter 5 of the guidebook, which outlines the full workflow and includes a publication checklist. Ensure all requirements — such as ISBN application and technical specifications — have been fulfilled.

Template Technical Script:

Technical Script (1): Story Development Worksheet

Points 01-10 of the technical script guide authors to clarify the story's purpose, developmental impact and design sensitivity .
These 10 points can be submitted as a Children's Book 'Proposal' to gain NCCB (National Consortium for Children's Books) certification.

Name of author: _____

Contact information of author: Mobile_____ **Phone**_____

Email Address : _____

Date: _____

Title of Book : _____

---

1. Details about the theme:

a) Theme: _____

b) Global relevance : _____

_____

c) Central Theme* : _____

2. Significance of Message:

a) Message: _____

b) Secondary Message (only if you have) : _____

c) Target audience : _____

3. Plot Type:

_____

Sample Technical Script:

Technical Script (1): Story Development Worksheet

Points 01-10 of the technical script guide authors to clarify the story's purpose, developmental impact and design sensitivity .
These 10 points can be submitted as a Children's Book 'Proposal' to gain NCCB (National Consortium for Children's Books) certification.

Name of author: Sumanthri Samarawickrama

Contact information of author: Mobile_____ **Phone**_____

Email Address : _____

Date: 27th September 2025

Title of Book : Benny's Night in the Forest

---

1. Details about the theme:

a) Theme: Courage

b) Global relevance : It explores a fundamental human experience of facing fear. And relates to "Personal Growth & Self-Discovery'.

c) Central Theme* **:** It fulfills 2.7.1 'Universally Relatable Theme'

2. Significance of Message:

a) Message: Facing your fears helps you grow stronger

b) Secondary Message (only if you have) : 4. Enhancing Emotional and Cognitive Development

c) Target audience : Concrete Operational Stage (7–11 years), Children begin to understand cause-and-effect relationships aiding in logical thinking.

3. Plot Type:

Overcoming the Monster

4. Write your 'Plot':

_____

_____

_____

_____

_____

_____

_____

_____

_____

_____

5. Plot Arc:

a) Plot arc type: _____

b) Plot diagram: _____

6. Genre:

_____

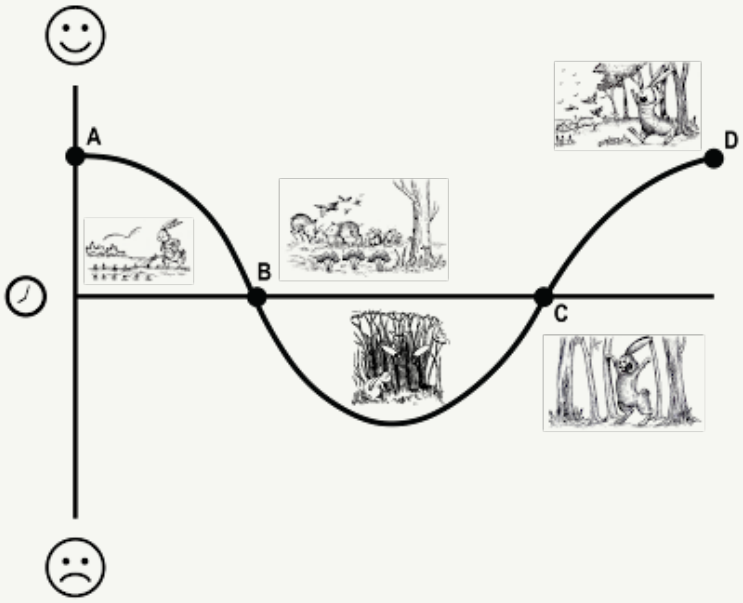
4. Write your 'Plot':

In Benny the Rabbit, the "monster" is not a traditional beast, but a metaphorical one: Benny's fear of the dark forest and the unknown. When crows invade his peaceful vegetable patch, Benny is forced to flee into the woods—an environment he has always feared. The shadows, strange sounds, and unfamiliar setting represent his inner anxieties. As the story unfolds, Benny meets a wise owl who helps him understand that the darkness isn't dangerous—it's just the forest under moonlight, filled with harmless creatures. With this new perspective, Benny transforms his fear into strength. He returns home with confidence and courage, using the very elements that once scared him—sound and shadow—to scare off the crows and reclaim his garden.

5. Plot Arc:

a) Plot arc type: Kurt Vonnegut's "Man in a Hole" story arc

b) Plot diagram: _____



6. Genre:

Realistic Fiction: Grounds the story in emotional truth—Benny faces his fears and learns courage in a relatable forest setting.

7. Character/s:

a) Character - Protagonist: _____

_____

_____

_____

_____

_____

_____

_____

_____

_____

_____

b) Character - Antagonist: _____

_____

_____

_____

_____

_____

_____

_____

_____

_____

c) Supporting Character/s: _____

_____

_____

7. Character/s:

a) Character - Protagonist: Benny is a gentle, caring, and timid rabbit who treasures the time he spends tending to his beloved vegetable patch. He shares his harvest with friends, and in these moments of togetherness, his shyness seems to melt away. Though his voice is usually quiet, it bursts into the loudest laugh when he's with those he loves. His large, twitchy ears flap nervously when he feels unsure—a charming visual cue that reflects his inner worries.

Benny's world revolves around his garden, where he grows a variety of vegetables that thrive in every season. It is his pride, his joy, and his safe place. However, Benny harbors a deep fear of the dark forest that borders his patch. The strange sounds and shadows of the night fill him with dread. Yet, through an unexpected journey, Benny begins to confront his fears. What was once unfamiliar—moonlight, rustling leaves, and distant animal calls—becomes something he learns to understand. In doing so, he not only reclaims his garden but also discovers the quiet courage within himself.

b) Character - Antagonist: There are multiple antagonists in the story: a group of loud crows and a gang of boars who make frightening noises. The crows, working together with the boars, are driven by hunger but are also known for being troublemakers and unfriendly. Because they are loud—and the crows can fly—they enjoy scaring other animals in the forest, often just for fun.

Though they present themselves as fearsome, their biggest flaw is their ignorance. They are unaware of how hard Benny and the other animals work to grow their crops. They also misunderstand the forest at night—mistaking moonlight and natural sounds for threats. This lack of awareness becomes their deepest weakness, ultimately making them vulnerable to the very things they use to scare others.

c) Supporting Character/s: The owl is a calm, observant, and wise presence in the story—living high among the branches at the heart of the forest Benny fears. Unlike the other animals who thrive on movement and chatter, the owl watches quietly, listening to the forest and

_____

_____

_____

_____

_____

_____

_____

_____

_____

_____

_____

d) Inclusive and respectful character building: _____

_____

_____

_____

_____

_____

8. Settings – world-building

a) Character setting: _____

_____

_____

b) Rules and logic of the world: _____

_____

_____

understanding its rhythms. He speaks little, but when he does, his words carry clarity and care.

When Benny stumbles into the forest, frightened and lost, it is the owl who gently guides him. He doesn't scold Benny's fear or try to distract him from it—instead, he helps Benny see the forest as it truly is: not dangerous, but misunderstood. Through patient explanations and gentle encouragement, the owl reveals that the shadows are just trees under moonlight, and the sounds are animals simply going about their night. The owl's role is not just to explain, but to awaken insight. He helps Benny realize that the fear he feels is not a sign of weakness, but a path to understanding. By offering knowledge, perspective, and quiet support, the owl becomes a key figure in Benny's emotional journey—showing that wisdom is not in fighting fear, but in seeing it clearly and choosing to move forward anyway.

d) Inclusive and respectful character building: This is achieved through the inclusion of a variety of animals that represent the diversity of the forest, each with distinct traits. For example, the deer is fast, the tortoise is slow and wise, the bear is large and strong, while the firefly or firefly is small but meaningful. The monkey adds energy and humor through its clumsy, playful nature. These contrasts in size, speed, personality, and role reflect an inclusive approach to character building—where every creature, regardless of ability or status, plays a valuable part in the story.

8. Settings – world-building

a) Character setting: Benny lives in a sunlit meadow, where he lovingly tends his vegetable patch. The air is warm, the soil soft, and his days follow a peaceful rhythm. But beyond this idyllic space looms a mysterious forest filled with crooked trees, glowing mushrooms and echoing sounds, which scare Benny into running.

b) Rules and logic of the world: Animals speak when no humans are around. The forest is enchanted not through magic spells, but through nature's illusions.

c) Culture and Values (only if you have): _____

_____

_____

d) Other Characters/Inhabitants (only if you have): _____

_____

e) Character's Conflict and Challenges (only if you have: _____

_____

f) Inclusive and respectful world-building:: _____

9. Language

a) Language of the publication: _____

b) Text translatable: _____

10. Narration

a) Language use: _____

b) Narrative perspective: _____

c) Voice and tone: : _____

11. Visual Research Tools:

c) Culture and Values (only if you have): Benny's world portraythat Benny's carrot patch isn't just his, it's part of the meadow 's annual Carrot Festival, where animals gather to celebrate community and sharing. Losing the garden means losing a tradition of joy, belonging, and purpose.

d) Other Characters/Inhabitants (only if you have): Benny's world includes a wise old owl who is calm and knowing. The crows are bold and chaotic. The boars are noisy but not evil, just inconsiderate.

e) Character's Conflict and Challenges (only if you have: In Benny's world, the forest doesn't contain a single monster but many small fears: shadows that stretch, noises that echo, and the loneliness of the unfamiliar. These environmental cues challenge Benny's perception and courage.

f) Inclusive and respectful world-building:: _____

9. Language

a) Language of the publication: English

b) Text translatable: It is translatable to Sinhala and Tamil

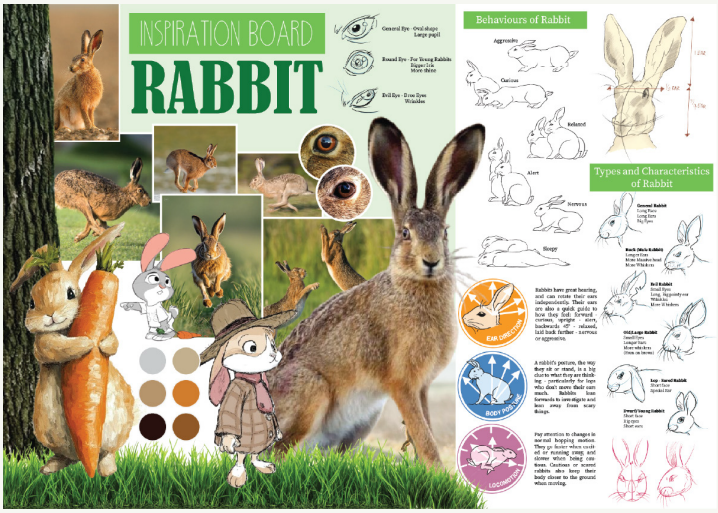
10. Narration

a) Language use: Descriptive Language

b) Narrative perspective: Third-Person Omniscient Narrative

c) Voice and tone: : Warm and Reassuring Tone:
Comforting and gentle, ideal for bedtime or emotional stories. Use rhythm, soft consonants, and cozy imagery to calm and reassure.

11. Visual Research Tools:

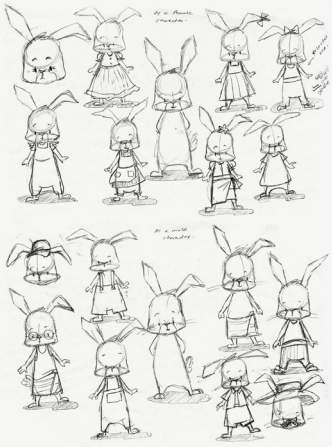


12. Character and Setting visualization Tools:

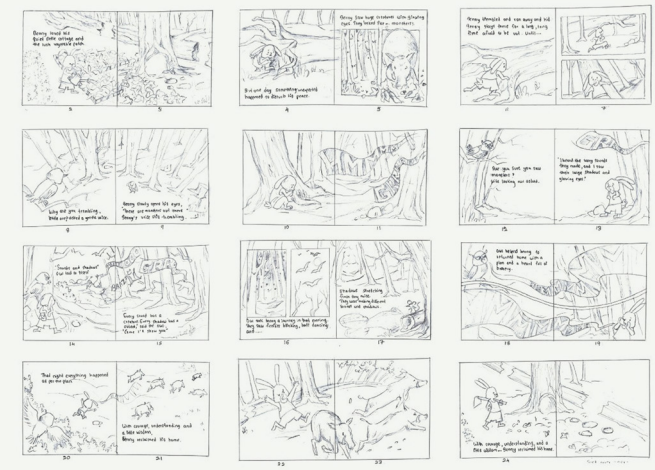
13. Refined Thumbnail Sheet:

14. A Sample Spread Sheet:

12. Character and Setting visualization Tools:



13. Refined Thumbnail Sheet:



14. A Sample Spread Sheet:

15. Per Page Narration (Script)

Per page Narration Script (based on the Narrative perspective)

Scene No.	Pages	Named scene	Setting	Dialogue	Narrator	Or the Text

16. Black and White detailed Storyboard with Text:

17. Cover page :

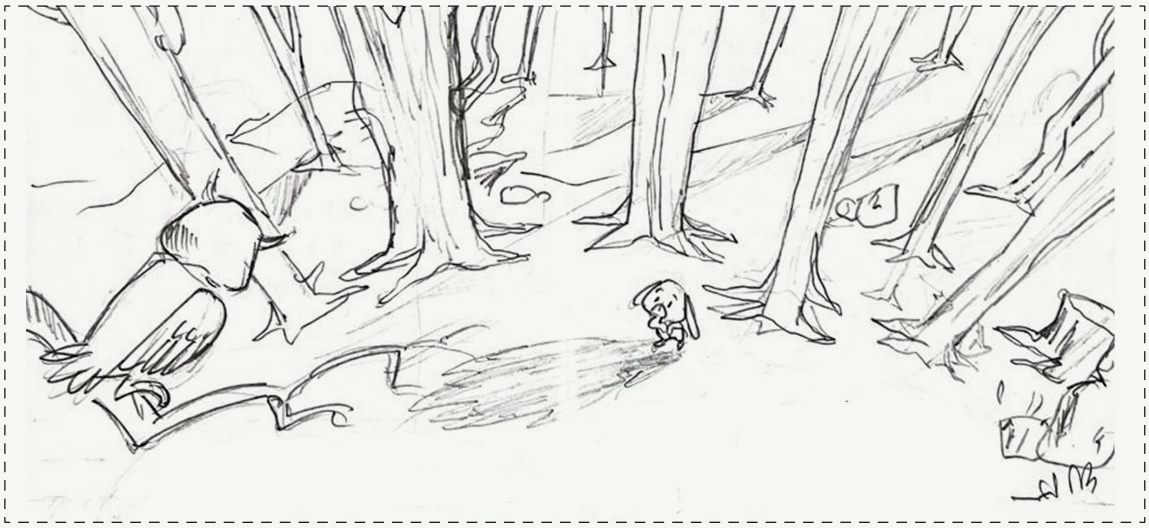
18. Final Dummy with Line Edited Text (ready for publication)

15. Per Page Narration (Script)

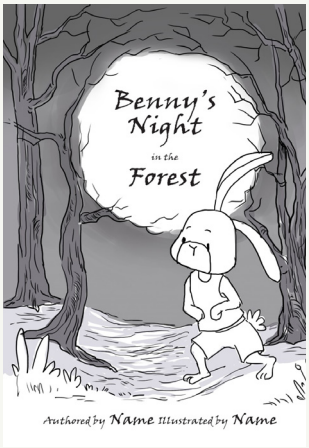
Per page Narration Script (based on the Narrative perspective)

Scene No.	Pages	Named scene	Setting	Narrator
1	2-3	The Setting	Evening setting	-
2	4-5	Inside the Benny's Room	Character's house, inside the room	Benny loved his quiet little cottage and lush vegetable patch.
3	6-7	Benny's Hearing noise	Outside Benny's house- Dark and scary	Benny saw huge creatures with glowing eyes.They looked like monsters.

16. Black and White detailed Storyboard with Text:



17. Cover page :



18. Final Dummy with Line Edited Text (ready for publication)

Attached

References

Arizpe, Evelyn, and Styles, Morag (2016) Children Reading Picture books: Interpreting Visual Texts. Routledge: Oxford. ISBN 9781138014077

Ann Whitford Paul. (2009). Writing picture books: a hands-on guide from story creation to publication. Writer's Digest Books.

Bandura, A. (1977). Self-efficacy: Toward a Unifying Theory of Behavioral Change. American Psychological Association, Vol. 84(No. 2), 191–215.

Bishop, R. S. (1990). Windows and Mirrors: Children's.

Botelho, M. J., & Rudman, M. K. (2009). Critical Multicultural Analysis of Children's Literature: Mirrors, Windows, and Doors (0 ed.). Routledge. https://doi.org/10.4324/9780203885208

Brown, C. S., & College, H. (2014). Language and Literacy Development in the Early Years: Foundational Skills that Support Emergent Readers. 24.

Cain, K., & Oakhill, J. (2011). Matthew Effects in Young Readers: Reading Comprehension and Reading Experience Aid Vocabulary Development. Journal of Learning Disabilities, 44(5), 431–443. https://doi.org/10.1177/0022219411410042

Denkovska, M. (2023). LITERATURE AND ETHICS. SCIENCE International Journal, 2(3), 81–84. https://doi.org/10.35120/sciencej0203081d

Diekman, A. B., & Murnen, S. K. (2004). Learning to Be Little Women and Little Men: The Inequitable Gender Equality of Nonsexist Children's Literature. Sex Roles, 50(5–6), 373–385. https://doi.org/10.1023/B:SERS.0000018892.26527.ea

Dils, T. E. (2009). You Can Write Children's Books. Penguin.

Duckworth, A. L., & Yeager, D. S. (2016). Measurement Matters: Assessing Personal Qualities Other Than Cognitive Ability for Educational Purposes.

Durlak, J. A., Weissberg, R. P., Dymnicki, A. B., Taylor, R. D., & Schellinger, K. B. (2011). The Impact of Enhancing Students' Social and Emotional Learning: A Meta-Analysis of School-Based Universal Interventions. Child Development, 82(1), 405–432. https://doi.org/10.1111/j.1467-8624.2010.01564.x

Durlak, J. A., Weissberg, R. P., Dymnicki, A. B., Taylor, R. D., & Schellinger, K. B. (2011). The Impact of Enhancing Students' Social and Emotional Learning: A Meta-Analysis of School-Based Universal Interventions. Child Development, 82(1), 405–432. https://doi.org/10.1111/j.1467-8624.2010.01564.x

Dyches, T. T., Prater, M. A., & Leininger, M. (2009). Juvenile Literature and the Portrayal of Developmental Disabilities. Education and Training in Developmental Disabilities, 44(3), 304–317.

Eriksson, L., & Granlund, M. (2004). Conceptions of participation in students with disabilities and persons in their close environment. Journal of Developmental and Physical Disabilities, 16(3), 229-245. doi:10.1023/B:JODD.0000032299.31588.fd

Ehri, L. C. (2005). Development of Sight Word Reading: Phases and Findings. In M. J. Snowling & C. Hulme (Eds.), The Science of Reading: A Handbook (pp. 135–154). Blackwell Publishing Ltd. https://doi.org/10.1002/9780470757642.ch8

Fazio, L. K., & Marsh, E. J. (2008). Slowing presentation speed increases illusions of knowledge. Psychonomic Bulletin & Review, 15(1), 180–185. https://doi.org/10.3758/PBR.15.1.180

Feng, W., Wang, W., Liu, J., Wang, Z., Tian, L., & Fan, L. (2021). Neural Correlates of Causal Inferences in Discourse Understanding and Logical Problem-Solving: A Meta-Analysis Study. Frontiers in Human Neuroscience, 15, 666179. https://doi.org/10.3389/fnhum.2021.666179

Forster, E. M. (1927). Aspects of the novel. London: Edward Arnold.

Freeman, M. (2007). The Photographer's Eye. In Routledge eBooks. Informa.

https://doi.org/10.4324/9780080556161

Galda, L., Cullinan, B. E., & Sipe, L. R. (2010). Literature and the child. Ca.

Gay, G. (2010). Culturally Responsive Teaching: Theory, Research, and Practice (2nd ed.).

Teachers College Press.

Ghanem, K. A. (2022). Leadership Self-Accountability to Prevent Corruption in the Workplace. OALib, 09(10), 1–21. https://doi.org/10.4236/oalib.1109320

Giorgis, C., & Glazer, J. I. (2013). Literature for Young Children: Supporting Emergent Literacy, Ages 0-8. Pearson. https://books.google.lk/books?id=D0tAAwEACAAJ

Gloria Ladson. (1995). But That's Just Good Teaching! The Case for Culturally Relevant Pedagogy. Theory into Practice, 34(3,), 159–165.

Gooden, A. M., & Gooden, M. A. (2001). Gender Representation in Notable Children's Picture Books: 1995–1999. Plenum Publishing Corporation, Vol. 45, 89–101.

Gopnik, A., & Wellman, H. M. (2012). Reconstructing constructivism: Causal models, Bayesian learning mechanisms, and the theory theory. Psychological Bulletin, 138(6), 1085–1108. https://doi.org/10.1037/a0028044

Goswami, U. (2008). Reading, complexity and the brain. Literacy, 42(2), 67–74. https://doi.org/10.1111/j.1741-4369.2008.00484.x

Hamilton, M. C., Anderson, D., Broaddus, M., & Young, K. (2006). Gender Stereotyping and Under-representation of Female Characters in 200 Popular Children's Picture Books: A Twenty-first Century Update. Sex Roles, 55(11–12), 757–765. https://doi.org/10.1007/s11199-006-9128-6

Heckman, J. J., & Kautz, T. D. (2012). NBER WORKING PAPER SERIES.

Hutton, J. S., Horowitz-Kraus, T., Mendelsohn, A. L., DeWitt, T., & Holland, S. K. (2015). Home Reading Environment and Brain Activation in Preschool Children Listening to Stories.

Immordino-Yang, M. H., & Damasio, A. (2007). We Feel, Therefore We Learn: The Relevance of Affective and Social Neuroscience to Education. International Mind, Brain, and Education Society and Blackwell Publishing, Inc, 1(1), 3–10.

Jones, S. M., & Doolittle, E. J. (2017). Social and Emotional Learning: Introducing the Issue. The Future of Children, 27(1,), 3–11.

Kendeou, P., Van Den Broek, P., White, M. J., & Lynch, J. S. (2009). Predicting reading comprehension in early elementary school: The independent contributions of oral language and decoding skills. Journal of Educational Psychology, 101(4), 765–778. https://doi.org/10.1037/a0015956

Kidd, D. C., & Castano, E. (2013a). Reading Literary Fiction Improves Theory of Mind. Science, 342(6156), 377–380. https://doi.org/10.1126/science.1239918

Kristensen, L. R. F. (2024). Developing ethical formation through literature and philosophy in school. Journal of Philosophy in Schools, 11(2), 61–78. https://doi.org/10.46707/jps.v11i2.238

Ladson-Billings, G. (1995). Toward a Theory of Culturally Relevant Pedagogy. American Educational Research Journal, 32(3), 465–491. https://doi.org/10.3102/00028312032003465\

Lukens, R. J., Smith, J. J., & Cynthia Miller Coffel. (2013). A critical handbook of children's literature. Pearson.

Mar, R. A., Oatley, K., & Peterson, J. B. (2009). Exploring the link between reading fiction and empathy: Ruling out individual differences and examining outcomes. Communications, 34(4). https://doi.org/10.1515/comm.2009.025

Mccloud, S. (1993). Understanding comics: the invisible art. Harper collins Publishers.

Milner, H. R., & Lomotey, K. (Eds.). (2014). Handbook of urban education. Routledge, Taylor & Francis Group.

Nieto, S. (2017). Re-imagining multicultural education: New visions, new possibilities. Multicultural Education Review, 9(1), 1–10. https://doi.org/10.1080/2005615X.2016.1276671

Nikolajeva, M. (2002). The Rhetoric of Character in Children's Literature. Lanham, Md: Scarecrow Press.

Nikolajeva, M. (2014). Visual Communication (D. Machin, Ed.; pp. 711–728). De Gruyter Mouton. https://doi.org/10.1515/9783110255492.711

Nodelman, P. (1988). Words about Pictures.

Nodelman, P., & Reimer, M. (2003). The pleasures of children's literature. Boston, Mass. Allyn and Bacon.

Nuba, H., Sheiman, D. L., & Searson, M. (Eds.). (1999). Children's literature: Developing good readers. Garland Pub.

Oatley, K. (1999). Why Fiction May Be Twice as True as Fact: Fiction as Cognitive and Emotional Simulation. The Educational Publishing Foundation, Vol. 3(No. 2), 101–117.

Pakpahan, F. H., & Saragih, M. (2022). Theory Of Cognitive Development By Jean Piaget. Journal of Applied Linguistics, 2(2), 55–60. https://doi.org/10.52622/joal.v2i2.79

Pesco, D., & Gagné, A. (2015). Scaffolding Narrative Skills: A Meta-Analysis of Instruction in Early Childhood Settings. Early Education and Development, 28(7), 773–793. https://doi.org/10.1080/10409289.2015.1060800

Questioning Techniques. (2024, May 11). https://thecuriouseconomist.com/questioning-techniques/

Roop Kanwal. (2024). Children's literature as a tool for social change: Teaching values and social awareness. The Scientific Temper, 15(spl-2), 40–46. https://doi.org/10.58414/SCIENTIFICTEMPER.2024.15.spl-2.08

Salisbury, M., & Styles, M. (2012). CHILDREN'S PICTUREBOOKS : the art of visual storytelling. Laurence King Publishing.

Scarborough, H. S. (2001). Connecting early language and literacy to later reading disabilities: Evidence, theory, and practice. In S. Neuman & D. Dickinson (Eds.), Handbook for research in early literacy (pp. 97–110). Guildford Press.

Sipe, L. & Brightman, A.E. (2009). "Young children's interpretations of page breaks in contemporary picture storybooks", Journal of Literary Research, 41,68-103.

Singer, D. G., & Singer, J. L. (1990). The House of Make-Believe. Harvard University Press; JSTOR. https://doi.org/10.2307/j.ctvk12s32

Strouse, G. A., Nyhout, A., & Ganea, P. A. (2018). The Role of Book Features in Young Children's Transfer of Information from Picture Books to Real-World Contexts. Frontiers in Psychology, 9, 50. https://doi.org/10.3389/fpsyg.2018.00050

Trites, R. (2014). Maria Nikolajeva Reading for Learning: Cognitive Approaches to Children's Literature. Barnboken, 37. https://doi.org/10.14811/clr.v37i0.189

Vretudaki, H. (2021). Enhancing Young Children Narrative Skills: The Effects of a Self-regulated Instructional Strategy. American Journal of Educational Research, 9(3), 91–96. https://doi.org/10.12691/education-9-3-1

Walker, C. M., Bonawitz, E., & Lombrozo, T. (2017). Effects of explaining on children's preference for simpler hypotheses. Psychonomic Bulletin & Review, 24(5), 1538–1547. https://doi.org/10.3758/s13423-016-1144-0

Wegenhart, T. A. (2015). Better Reading Through Science: Using Research-Based Models to Help Students Read Latin Better. Journal of Classics Teaching, 16(31), 8–13. https://doi.org/10.1017/S2058631015000021

Zunshine, L. (2006). Why we read fiction: Theory of mind and the novel. Ohio State University Press.

Image References

Used for Visual Research Tools in Chapter 04

Schuster, M. (2025, March 24). Old Bunny Meme. Pinterest. https://de.pinterest.com/pin/1065453224391319892/

Hernandez, M. T. (2025, August 17). Cute Brown Rabbit Photo. Pinterest. https://cl.pinterest.com/pin/325525879337214786/

Burrow Animal Clipart Background Images, HD Pictures and Wallpaper For Free Download | Pngtree. (2023). Pngtree. https://pngtree.com/free-backgrounds-photos/burrow-animal-clipart

Art. (2025, July 22). Rabbit Pictures Art. Pinterest. https://ru.pinterest.com/pin/354025220730696779/

Guzowski, T. (2012, September 29). Rabbit. Dreamstime. https://www.dreamstime.com/royalty-free-stock-photos-rabbit-image27338898

Ulrich, P. (2024, December 17). Hare Photos. Pinterest. https://se.pinterest.com/pin/553239135495578914/

Moore, A. (2019, June 12). Simple Pleasures...all in Bokeh. Pinterest. https://www.pinterest.com/pin/563724078357518976/

Happy Bunny Club (thehappybunnyclub) - Profile | Pinterest. (2025). Pinterest. https://uk.pinterest.com/thehappybunnyclub/

Igi, gi. (2025, January 31). Hare Pictures. Pinterest. https://in.pinterest.com/pin/666603182380152723/

Ialanglengavin. (2023). Pinterest. https://id.pinterest.com/alanglengavin/hares/(2025). Pinterest. https://www.pinterest.com/bioprof40/wild-rabbits/

Pinterest. (2015). Pinterest. https://ar.pinterest.com/jamsinva/bunny-rabbit/

gi, gi. (2025, January 31). Hare Pictures. Pinterest. https://in.pinterest.com/pin/666603182380152723/

Rockliffe, J. (2017, March 27). Flickriver. Pinterest. https://www.pinterest.com/pin/629659591622263539/

R1 Places To Visit ideas | bunny island, rabbit island, cute baby bunnies. (2013, July 23). Pinterest. https://www.pinterest.com/ceciliaras/places-to-visit/

Teresa. (2025, January 24). Rabbit Nose. Pinterest. https://no.pinterest.com/pin/688558230565614969/

Temp. (2025). Pinterest. https://www.pinterest.com/bioprof40/wild-rabbits/

Pinterest. (2015). Pinterest. https://www.pinterest.com/johnnimmo/hare-art/

The Wind That Cries. (2025). Fiction. https://vocal.media/fiction/the-wind-that-cries

Oosterbroek-Dutschun, A. (2018). De Hulzenhof.

Chrizaanmaritz. (2024, September 30). Nursery Painting & Wall Art. Cute & Funny. Pinterest. https://in.pinterest.com/pin/675751119121254430/

zhangjianqiu. (2020, November 11). Wiebke Rauers Illustration. Pinterest. https://in.pinterest.com/pin/798896421396820764/

Nastja Završek. (2025, February 10). Conejos Tiernos. Pinterest. https://www.pinterest.com/pin/473018767131996699/

Ella. (2025, August 31). Maternelle. Pinterest. https://se.pinterest.com/pin/365284219797934293/

Sennett, A. (2025, May 26). Decoupage Printables. Pinterest. https://www.pinterest.com/pin/98938523060774993/

Your profile. (2025). Pinterest. https://www.pinterest.com/pin/436356651400915603/

Whitaker, T. (2025, April 15). Fall painting Decor - Artcorvibes 73. Pinterest. https://in.pinterest.com/pin/842243567850689843/

Bugarín, A. (2025, August 18). Mouse Drawing. Pinterest. https://za.pinterest.com/pin/486811040994487431/

Salac, U. (2025, April 13). Characters. Pinterest. https://kr.pinterest.com/pin/659355201732080997/

Woefenn, E. (2024, November 5). Cute Character Art. Pinterest. https://www.pinterest.com/pin/125467539612617637/

Animal Caricature. (2025, August 30). Pinterest. https://www.pinterest.com/ideas/animal-caricature/938753190144/

cole, mary. (2012, April 21). bunny stories. Pinterest. https://www.pinterest.com/pin/310678074267011184/

Pascuzzi, S. (2025, April 27). Easter Rabbit Art. Pinterest. https://www.pinterest.com/pin/564568503307154415/

Renauld, L. (2017, March 7). Children's Book Illustrations | Hire Top Children's Illustrators, USA. Pinterest. https://www.pinterest.com/pin/521080619371989720/

Faber/May Smith: La course au lapin. (2025). Letzshop. https://letzshop.lu/en/products/faber-may-smith-la-course-au-lapin-7f1e80

Beatrix Potter, & Szekeres, C. (2002). The tale of Peter Rabbit. Golden Book ; Racine, Wis.

Coffey, R. (2025, April 13). Cute Hare 1 Canvas Print. Pinterest. https://www.pinterest.com/pin/21955116929259141/

nazaninxx. (2024, May 30). Animals Hugging Drawing. Pinterest. https://www.pinterest.com/pin/690317449161022748/

KristinFarnsworthart - Profile | Pinterest. (2022). Pinterest. https://jp.pinterest.com/KristinFarnsworthart/

Allyn, J. B. (2023, August 3). Rabbit Ink Drawing. Pinterest. https://in.pinterest.com/pin/235524255520971734/

Pop Art Drawing Ideas: Colorful Inspirations for Everyone - Artcorvibes 52. (2017). Pinterest. https://in.pinterest.com/pin/321655598412329863/

Лабиринт.ру. (2019). Книга: Воспитание на примерах. Зайка обиделся (от 3-х лет) - С. Савушкин. Купить книгу, читать рецензии | Лабиринт. Labirint.ru. https://www.labirint.ru/books/349278/

Children's Book Illustrators | I redesigned the cover of Peter Rabbit □ | Facebook. (2022). Facebook.com; Facebook Groups. https://www.facebook.com/groups/kidlitcommunity/posts/10169822285960215/

Trostinetkaia, A. (2025, April 9). Adorable Fluffy Bunny with Daisy for Spring Crafts. Pinterest. https://in.pinterest.com/pin/382313455889273715/

Stiel, J. (2024, April 27). Guess How Much I Love You "Wishing Upon a Star" Greeting Card. Pinterest. https://www.pinterest.com/pin/1041950063782712692/

Stokes-Kelley, P. (2015, April 8). Oh-oh! Combien de marins... Pinterest. https://www.pinterest.com/pin/29554941281262964/

Hossain, A. (2024, August 6). Bunny Aesthetic Illustration. Pinterest. https://in.pinterest.com/pin/680254718746124182/

Hin. (2025). black crows flying in dark mysterious forest Stock Photo | Adobe Stock. Adobe Stock. https://stock.adobe.com/lk/images/black-crows-flying-in-dark-mysterious-forest/277347534

PIXERS. (2024). Sticker The bird - PIXERS.CO.NZ. Pixers. https://pixers.co.nz/stickers/the-bird-42362123

JaidynPurple. (2022, January 5). Crow At Sunset Wallpaper for desktop + Wallpapers Download. Pinterest. https://www.pinterest.com/pin/733664595567128866/

Raven. (2025). Raven diving towards the pray with its claws forward Stock Photo | Adobe Stock. Adobe Stock. https://stock.adobe.com/lk/images/raven-diving-towards-the-pray-with-its-claws-forward/337310334

Cuervo dibujo de alta calidad vector illustration.Black Raven.Crow. (2024). Depositphotos. https://depositphotos.com/es/vector/raven-drawing-high-quality-vector-illustration-black-raven-crow-489270290.html

Sketchok drawing tutorials. (2022). Facebook.com. https://www.facebook.com/sketchoktuts/posts/learn-how-to-draw-a-crow-in-16-easy-steps-httpssketchokcomp18691/883622787201639/

LadyT. (2024, September 7). 12 Crow Clipart - Vintage Pictures! Pinterest. https://www.pinterest.com/pin/360006563967806531/

Volkan Akmeşe. (2025, April 19). This Video Of A Rabbit/Raven Is Going Viral Because No One Can Tell Which It Is. Pinterest. https://in.pinterest.com/pin/521643569360149178/

Schmidt, S. (2021, January 18). Crows And Pumpkins. Pinterest. https://www.pinterest.com/pin/463730092889158795/

Freitas, G. (2025, February 23). 21 Creative Drawing Ideas to Spark Your Imagination - Shinzoo.com. Pinterest. https://pt.pinterest.com/pin/570057265362284752/

AI. (2025). Angry Wild Boar Images – Browse 6,567 Stock Photos, Vectors, and Video. Adobe Stock.

https://stock.adobe.com/lk/search?k=angry+wild+boar

Wild. (2025). “Wild Pig” Images – Browse 178,929 Stock Photos, Vectors, and Video. Adobe Stock. https://stock.adobe.com/lk/search/images?k=%22wild%20pig%22

AI. (2025). Angry Wild Boar Images – Browse 6,567 Stock Photos, Vectors, and Video. Adobe Stock. https://stock.adobe.com/lk/search?k=angry+wild+boar

AI. (2025). Angry Wild Boar Images – Browse 6,472 Stock Photos, Vectors, and Video. Adobe Stock. https://stock.adobe.com/lk/search/images?k=angry+wild+boar

India is at war with its wildlife – Manu Balachandran. (2016, June 19). BHARATA BHARATI. https://bharatabharati.in/2016/06/19/india-is-at-war-with-its-wildlife-manu-balachandran/

Posterlounge. (2025). Marcel Gross - Wild boar with raven, Yala National Park, Sri Lanka. Posterlounge.co.uk; Posterlounge. https://www.posterlounge.co.uk/p/764821.html

Free Vectors | boar #5576636. (2024). Clipart-Library.com. https://clipart-library.com/clipart/boar-cliparts-92024.html

Sri Lanka ’17_1719. (2025, September 3). Flickr; Sri Lanka ’17_1719 | Wild pig | Jimmy Vangenechten | Flickr. https://www.flickr.com/photos/intowildlife/42293384715

Seekor babi hutan terbang di udara dengan seekor babi hutan di latar belakang | Gambar AI Premium. (2024). Freepik. https://idn.freepik.com/gambar-ai-premium/seekor-babi-hutan-terbang-di-udara-dengan-seekor-babi-hutan-di-latar-belakang_333503241.htm

Pin on laser lrint. (2021). Pinterest. https://www.pinterest.com/pin/18084835998079927/

Van Zandt County Farm Bureau. (2022). Facebook.com. https://www.facebook.com/VanZandtCountyFarmBureau/posts/texas-is-losing-the-war-on-feral-hogswar-on-feral-hogsposted-by-john-mcadamsdesp/2195579277186415/

Khandelwal, S. (2025, January 12). 10 adorable animals known for their graceful hopping skills. Indiatimes.com; Times of India. https://timesofindia.indiatimes.com/life-style/spotlight/web-stories/10-adorable-animals-known-for-their-graceful-hopping-skills/photostory/117167065.cms

Minnsen. (2025, March 20). Bunny Cartoon Character. Pinterest. https://in.pinterest.com/pin/578923727134699922/

Iwona Laczny. (2025, August 15). Download free png of PNG Rabbit hugging large carrot animal cute illustration. by Tung about vintage easter, vintage carrot painting, easter vintage elements png, vintage rabbit carrot, and rabbit.... Pinterest. https://www.pinterest.com/pin/142496775705716185/

Marque (MarqueTodd.com. (2015, September 15). The Beauty of Wildlife. Pinterest. https://www.pinterest.com/pin/156992736987794249/

McNamee, M. S. (2015, October 28). Nine people arrested after gardaí bust illegal hare coursing. TheJournal.ie; TheJournal. https://www.thejournal.ie/gardai-illegal-hare-coursing-tipperary-earlier-2414467-Oct2015/

Black-tailed Jackrabbit (Texas Hill Country) · iNaturalist. (2024). INaturalist. https://www.inaturalist.org/guide_taxa/2160749

WheelerKristi. (2018, September 29). Pin by Pam D. on Animals | Hare, Hare pictures, Animals wild. Pinterest. https://uk.pinterest.com/pin/23643966779756269/

Hayes, L. (2018, September 4). Know Your Target Market. And focus on it. Linkedin.com. https://www.linkedin.com/pulse/dont-chase-two-rabbits-both-escape-li-hayes-

altschach, marion. (2016, April 29). Borja Montoro Character Design. Pinterest. https://at.pinterest.com/pin/293367363208456659/

Free Sunrise Bird Flight Image | Download at StockCake. (2025). Stockcake.com; StockCake. https://

stockcake.com/i/sunrise-bird-flight_967873_1069541

Sunset Hope. (2025). Caravansonnet.com. http://www.caravansonnet.com/2013/02/sunset-hope.html

Free Twilight Rabbit Silhouette Image | Download at StockCake. (2025). Stockcake.com; StockCake. https://stockcake.com/i/twilight-rabbit-silhouette_480064_77721

Page Restricted. (2025). Iamfy.co. https://www.iamfy.co/product/hare-at-sunset-art-print

Morris, J. (2020, July 13). Where do the Bay Area's birds go to sleep at night? The Mercury News. https://www.mercurynews.com/2020/07/13/where-do-the-bay-areas-birds-go-to-sleep-at-night/

TANATPON CHAWEEWAT. (2025). The King of royal black crow standing out between other crows, black birds, nature animals wildlife background, with Generative AI. 123RF. https://www.123rf.com/photo_202678507_the-king-of-royal-black-crow-standing-out-between-other-crows-black-birds-nature-animals-wildlife.html

Free Twilight Rabbit Silhouette Image | Download at StockCake. (2025). Stockcake.com; StockCake. https://stockcake.com/i/twilight-rabbit-silhouette_480064_77721

Free Sunset Rabbit Silhouette Image | Download at StockCake. (2025). Stockcake.com; StockCake. https://stockcake.com/i/sunset-rabbit-silhouette_437594_113528

Rohman, F. (2025, April 9). Rabbit Jumping Silhouette at Colorful Sunset Sky. Dreamstime. https://www.dreamstime.com/rabbit-jumping-silhouette-colorful-sunset-sky-across-field-vibrant-orange-purple-hues-peaceful-nature-image373689446

Elephant and Bird Watching tours in Sri Lanka | Wildlife Tours in Sri Lanka | Eco and Wildlife Tours in Sri Lanka. (2025). Absolutesrilankansafari.com. https://www.absolutesrilankansafari.com/rural-elephants-and-farm-stay-tour-of-sri-lanka.php

Free Sunset Crow Perch Image | Download at StockCake. (2025). Stockcake.com; StockCake. https://stockcake.com/i/sunset-crow-perch_1435747_631231

Blocked. (2025). Depositphotos.com. https://depositphotos.com/photo/night-sky-forest-stars-moon-652352792.html

Free Owl Moonlit Night Image | Download at StockCake. (2025). Stockcake.com; StockCake. https://stockcake.com/i/owl-moonlit-night_1119058_113128

Tree, I. (2017, May 10). Verreaux's eagle owl in tree at dusk. Getty Images. https://www.gettyimages.com/detail/video/verreauxs-eagle-owl-in-tree-at-dusk-stock-video-footage/721934933

Daxa Nilu. (2024). Generate a high quality, realistic seen in cinematic 3d style. Https://Www.seaart.ai. https://www.seaart.ai/ar/explore/detail/ct27jkle878c73bs925g

Bundit Minramun. (2025). Mysterious forest on a moonless, foggy, misty night. Vecteezy. https://www.vecteezy.com/video/57526306-mysterious-forest-on-a-moonless-foggy-misty-night

Enchanting fireflies dancing in a moonlit forest o | Premium AI-generated image. (2024). Freepik. https://www.freepik.com/premium-ai-image/enchanting-fireflies-dancing-moonlit-forest-o_158833104.htm

Enchanting white rabbit in a mystical forest under moonlight magical wildlife scene with moon | Premium AI-generated image. (2024). Freepik. https://www.freepik.com/premium-ai-image/enchanting-white-rabbit-mystical-forest-moonlight-magical-wildlife-scene-with-moon_176415680.htm

Kramer, C. (2025, February 20). The Power of Awareness - The Timeless Wisdom of Breslov. The Timeless Wisdom of Breslov. https://breslov.org/the-power-of-awareness/

Garden Whisperers. (2022). Facebook.com. https://www.facebook.com/GardenWhisperers8/posts/this-is-where-peace-lives-in-the-quiet-glow-of-dawn-and-the-simplicity-of-the-co/1123752356459322/

Horton, J. (2016, February 21). Virus threatens rabbit wipeout. Thetimes.com; The Sunday Times. https://www.thetimes.com/travel/destinations/uk-travel/scotland-travel/virus-threatens-rabbit-wipeout-xv7c2z5w73r

View. (2017, November). SEMINAR. Site Title. https://haiku671.wordpress.com/2017/11/01/seminar-3/

Feral pigs Archives - WOUB Public Media. (2024, June 16). WOUB Public Media. https://woub.org/tag/feral-pigs/

Carrot field carrot crop many carrots agriculture landscape vegetable farm drawing imitation | Premium AI-generated image. (2024). Freepik. https://www.freepik.com/premium-ai-image/carrot-field-carrot-crop-many-carrots-agriculture-landscape-vegetable-farm-drawing-imitation_158702476.htm

Strong wild boar leading his family while looking for food | Premium Photo. (2020). Freepik. https://www.freepik.com/premium-photo/strong-wild-boar-leading-his-family-while-looking-food_6663158.htm

Free Golden Morning Bunny Image | Download at StockCake. (2025). Stockcake.com; StockCake. https://stockcake.com/i/golden-morning-bunny_1530643_1175704

In. (2025). Rabbit Desert Stock Videos – 459 HD & 4K Footage Clips. Adobe Stock. https://stock.adobe.com/lk/search/video?k=rabbit+desert&asset_id=1498996136

Free Sunlit Bunny Profile Image | Download at StockCake. (2025). Stockcake.com; StockCake. https://stockcake.com/i/sunlit-bunny-profile_803858_937371

Eeeegh Agh. (2024, September 3). Hare Reference Photo. Pinterest. https://es.pinterest.com/pin/969822101004809083/

moon. (2025). Moon Rabbit Images – Browse 71,198 Stock Photos, Vectors, and Video. Adobe Stock. https://stock.adobe.com/lk/search?k=moon+rabbit

Hare jumping over the moon Poster. (2025). Redbubble. https://www.redbubble.com/i/poster/Hare-jumping-over-the-moon-by-DebsSketchbook/135612354.LVTDI

Free Owl Moonlit Night Image | Download at StockCake. (2025). Stockcake.com; StockCake. https://stockcake.com/i/owl-moonlit-night_1119058_113128

Sperber, N. (2019, August 2). My inner landscape. Pinterest. https://www.pinterest.com/pin/10555380363973470/

Nguyễn Đức Thuận. (2021, December 26). West Coast Forest. Pinterest. https://in.pinterest.com/pin/810436895453090186/

File:Countryside around Bandarawela - Hill Country - Sri Lanka (14141957703).jpg - Wikipedia. (2014, May 5). Wikipedia.org. https://en.m.wikipedia.org/wiki/File:Countryside_around_Bandarawela_-_Hill_Country_-_Sri_Lanka_%2814141957703%29.jpg

Download Little Baby Bum Bus Ride Wallpaper. (2019). MrWallpaper. https://mrwallpaper.com/owl?p=3

Steuart Holidays. (2018, August 6). Abercrombie & Kent | Luxury Travel & Vacations Worldwide Since 1962. Pinterest. https://www.pinterest.com/pin/124130533465498017/

Adpreet. (2022). Facebook.com. https://www.facebook.com/adpreetindia/posts/vegetable-farming-ideas-/1009114024580022/

Alves, M. R. (2024, December 16). Discover Sinharaja Rainforest: UNESCO World Heritage Site. Passaporte No Bolso. https://passaportenobolso.com/en/sinharaja-rainforest/

Connie. (2011, July 29). Fallen tree. Pinterest. https://www.pinterest.com/pin/463870830340287368/

Keisa Ayu Fauzi. (2025). Two rabbits sitting near their burrow surrounded by fresh oranges in a sunny garden setting. Vecteezy. https://www.vecteezy.com/photo/69221082-two-rabbits-sitting-near-their-burrow-surrounded-by-fresh-oranges-in-a-sunny-garden-setting

(2025). Booking.com. https://www.booking.com/hotel/lk/gileemale-walawwa.en-gb.html?chal_t=1756961628373&force_referer=https%3A%2F%2Fwww.google.com%2F&activeTab=photosGallery

Massive Allocation of Rs. 232 Million for Home Gardening Projects - Newswire. (2024, March 12). Newswire. https://www.newswire.lk/2024/03/13/massive-allocation-of-rs-232-million-for-home-gardening-projectsn/

Booking.com. (2025). Gileemale Walawwa & Estate. Booking.com. https://www.booking.com/hotel/lk/gileemale-walawwa.en-gb.html?activeTab=photosGallery

Podlozny, M. (2025, April 13). LFEEY 10x7ft Old Farmhouse Interior Backdrops for Photography Rustic Style Rural Retro Kitchen Homestead Western Antique Inn Restaurant Room Fireplace Decor Background Photo Studio Props. Pinterest.

Character Design References. (2025). Pinterest. https://www.pinterest.com/pin/556757572660842345/

megawork. (2024, July 21). Generate your own rabbit images with AI. Pinterest. https://in.pinterest.com/pin/86835099518341415/

Russell, G. (2025, August 20). Literature Humor. Pinterest. https://au.pinterest.com/pin/1055531231421962459/

Special References

Referred Children's Books for the Publication

Bailey, J. (2019). A friend for Henry.

Baker, J. (2010). Mirror.

Beaty, A. (2013). Rosie Revere, engineer.

Beaty, A. (2016). Ada Twist, Scientist. Abrams.

Becker, A. (2014). Journey. Walker Books.

Brown, M. W. (1947). Goodnight Moon

Cannon, J. (2007). Stellaluna. Houghton Mifflin Harcourt.

Carle, E. (1987). The very hungry caterpillar. Philomel Books.

Carroll, L. (2018). Alice's Adventures In Wonderland.

Cole, J. (1995). The Magic School Bus. Perfection Learning.

Donaldson, J., & Scheffler, A. (2020). The Gruffalo. Macmillan Children's Books.

Doerrfeld, C. (2018). The rabbit listened. Penguin.

Door Demi. (2012). The empty pot. Square Fish/Henry Holt And Company.

Gaiman, N. (2002). Coraline. Harper, an Imprint of Harpercollins Publishers.

Johnson, C. (2016). Harold and the purple crayon. Harperfestival, An Imprint Of Harpercollins.

Kobald, I. (2014). My two blankets.

Keats, E. J. (1962). The Snowy Day.

Lai, T. (2013). Inside Out and Back Again.

Lewis, C. S. (1958). The Lion, the Witch and the Wardrobe.

Lin, G. (2011). Where the mountain meets the moon.

Lionni, L. (1963). Swimmy.

Lowry, L. (2020). The Giver. Houghton Mifflin Harcourt. (Original work published 1993)

Ludwig, T. (2013). The invisible boy. Alfred A. Knopf.

Martin, B. (2007). Brown Bear, Brown Bear, What Do You See? Macmillan.

McGhee, H. M. (2017). Come With Me. Penguin.

Munsch, R. N. (1980). The paper bag princess.

Munson, D. (2013). Enemy Pie. Zaner-Bloser.

Park, L. S. (2010). A long walk to water.

Peña, M. D. (2015). Last stop on market street. Penguin UK.

Rosen, M. (2005). Michael Rosen's Sad Book. Candlewick.

Rosen, M. (2006). We're Going on a Bear Hunt.

Sendak, M. (1963). Where the Wild Things Are. Story and Pictures of Maurice Sendak.

Seuss, D. (2013). Dr. Seuss's ABC.

Seuss, D. (2013). Green Eggs and Ham. RH Childrens Books.

Seuss, D. (2013). The Cat in the Hat: Read & Listen Edition. Random House Books for Young Readers.

Tullet, H. (2010). Press Here.

White, E. B. (1952). Charlotte's Web.

Willems, M. (2003). Don't Let the Pigeon Drive the Bus! Hyperion.

Williams, K., & Mohammed, K. (2009). My name is Sangoel.

Winter, J. (2011). The watcher: Jane Goodall's life with the chimps. Schwartz & Wade Books.

Virginia Lee Burton. (1969). The little house. Houghton Mifflin.

Williams, M. (1922). The Velveteen Rabbit.

Woodson, J. (2012). Each kindness. Penguin Putnam Inc.

YouTube References

ABC Read to ME. (2017, November 3). Last Stop on Market Street // A READ ALOUD [Video]. YouTube. https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=zk6CWvW_5-s

Alice's Adventures in Wonderland AudioBook + Subtitles English. (n.d.). [Video]. YouTube. Retrieved May 1, 2022, from https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=9LHYnEyItEg

Amandpmstorytime. (2018, December 18). READ ALOUD | My Two Blankets Story For Children [Video]. YouTube. https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=DdEG3s8s9Yw

Daniel Beck. (2020, April 27). Where The Mountain Meets The Moon Chapter 1 [Video]. YouTube. https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=VvqQxGxheeQ

First Grade Party. (2020, August 23). Come With Me- Read Aloud [Video]. YouTube. https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=T5vyLYkkAxk

Kathy Gossen. (2015, September 11). Mirrors [Video]. YouTube. https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=_uSs73p6Bd4

Make Art with Heart. (2023, August 29). JOURNEY by Aaron Becker | Read Aloud [Video]. YouTube. https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=JyBTnJcboWo

Miss Zeglin. (2019, September 3). A Long Walk to Water, Chapter 1 [Video]. YouTube. https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=APtLP-3zj9Y

Mr. Paulson Reads. (2019, January 9). Swimmy by Leo Lionni [Video]. YouTube. https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=BDrR78REU8Y

Press Here By Hervé Tullet READ ALOUD. (2021, September 20). Press Here By Hervé Tullet READ ALOUD [Video]. YouTube. https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=gKAiVDna4O8

Reading in a Virtual World. (2022, February 6). A Friend for Henry - Read Aloud Children's Book [Video]. YouTube. https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=k-LZSCeW-yY

Reading Rocket. (2022, December 7). THE EMPTY POT by Demi : Kids Books Read Aloud [Video]. YouTube. https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=cnOb63ftWGc

Shon's Stories: Reading, Singing & Learning. (2018, September 3). The Rabbit Listened | Virtual Read Aloud | Listening | Shon's Stories [Video]. YouTube. https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=rHPoj53dy8o

StoryTime at Awnie's House. (2019). Kids Book Read Aloud: ENEMY PIE by Derek Munson and Tara Calahan King [Video]. YouTube. https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=FTM8Cccl1xs

The Giver Lois Lowry : Free Download, Borrow, and Streaming : Internet Archive. (2016). [Video]. Internet Archive. https://archive.org/details/TheGiverLoisLowry/page/n19/mode/2up

Together Playtime. (2023, October 26). Paper Bag Princess [Video]. YouTube. https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=nrzkDntaZFo

EACH KINDNESS Kindness & Friendship Read Aloud Book for Kids. (n.d.). [Video]. YouTube. https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=9pTTeEmW_gQ

Steering Committee Members

President – Mrs. P. R. Kariyawasam, Additional Secretary (School Affairs), Ministry of Education, Higher Education and Vocational Education

Vice President – Mr. K. Pathmananthan, Literacy Director/ Country Director (Actg.), Room to Read Sri Lanka

Secretary - Mr. P. A Weerakkody, Secretary, Educational Publications Advisory Board, Ministry of Education, Higher Education and Vocational Education

Coordinator - Mr. Indika Ganegoda, Senior Program Manager (Book Publishing), Room to Read Sri Lanka

Mrs. Subashini Dematagoda, Commissioner General of Educational Publications, Educational Publications Department.

Mrs. Kalani Hemali, Director of Education (Primary Education), Ministry of Education, Higher Education and Vocational Education

Mrs. R.M.K De Silva, Director (Department of Early Childhood Development & Primary Education), National Institute of Education

Mrs. P.G.S.D Bandara, Director, Library Promotion Standardization & Publications, National Library and Documentation Services Board

Mr. H. Sarath Nanda Kumara, Director (Library and Museum), National Institute of Education

Mrs. A.D. Balapatabendige, Deputy Director of Education (Primary Education), Ministry of Education, Higher Education and Vocational Education

Mr. Pradeep Indunil Piyarathna, Deputy Commissioner, Educational Publications Department

Mrs. Prageethika Jayasekara , Deputy Director of Education (Monitoring & Performance Review), Ministry of Education, Higher Education and Vocational Education

Dr.(Mrs) Sumanthri Samarawickrama, Senior Lecturer, Department of Integrated Design, Faculty of Architecture, University of Moratuwa

Mr. Dinesh Kulathunga, President, Sri Lanka Book Publisher Association

Mr. Kapila .S. Wickramasinghe, Vice President, Sri Lanka Book Publisher Association

Ms. Kanchana Priyakantha Director, Sri Lanka Book Publisher Association

Mrs. Manel Wickremasinghe, Senior program Manager, Room to Read Sri Lanka.

Mr. Dinesh Ranasinghe, Program Officer, Room to Read Sri Lanka

Former-Steering Committee Members

Former-Presidents

Mrs. Egodawela, Additional Secretary (School affairs), Ministry of Education
Mrs. S.N Malaviarachchi, Additional Secretary (School affairs), Ministry of Education
Mrs. Udara Dikkubura, Additional Secretary (Co-curricular & Primary Education Development), Ministry of Education

Former-Secretary

Mrs. S.G Subasinghe, Secretary, Educational Publications Advisory Board, Ministry of Education

Former-Committee Members

Mr. K. Thajudeen, Commissioner General, Educational Publications Department
Mr. K. A. D. Punyadasa, Chief Commissioner (Teacher Education), Ministry of Education
Mr. Samantha Indeewara Samarasingha, Former-President, Sri Lanka Book Publisher Association
Mr. Athula Jayakody, Former-Treasurer, Sri Lanka Book Publisher Association
Mr. Lasith Umagiliya, Former-Deputy Secretary, Sri Lanka Book Publisher Association

Creating quality children's books is not just about storytelling, it is about shaping futures.

Fiction Wonderland:
A Comprehensive Guide to Creating Children's Fiction Books

Aligned with Sri Lanka's National Policy for Children's Books, this guide offers a clear roadmap for the country's children's book ecosystem. It supports authors, illustrators, publishers, educators, reviewers, and policymakers with practical steps to ensure that every book produced is developmentally meaningful, culturally relevant, and accessible to young readers.

Structured into five sections and a technical script, the guide covers story craft, illustration and design, inclusivity and cultural representation, and the processes that take a book from idea to print.

More than a reference, it is a call to action: to strengthen collaboration, clarify responsibilities, and raise standards across the sector. Its insights also extend beyond Sri Lanka, resonating with publishing communities across the region that face similar challenges of limited coordination and the need for unified frameworks.

Dr. Sumanthri Samarawickrama is a Senior Lecturer in the Department of Integrated Design, Faculty of Architecture, University of Moratuwa, Sri Lanka. She specializes in Media and Communication Design, with her research and teaching focused on editorial design, typography, and packaging design. She has also played a leading role in national-level initiatives, serving as Editor-in-Chief of the National Policy on Children's Books.

ISBN 978-624-5651-67-2

9 786245 651672